



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



Duke Huon of Burdeaux.

Early English Text Society.

Extra Series, Nos. XLIII, L.

1884, 1887.

BERLIN : ASHER & CO., 5, UNTER DEN LINDEN.
NEW YORK: C. SCRIBNER & CO.; LEYPOLDT & HOLT.
PHILADELPHIA: J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.

THE 39185
ENGLISH CHARLEMAGNE ROMANCES.

Huon de Bordeaux.
The Boke of

Duke Huon of Burdeaux

done into English by

Sir John Bourchier, Lord Berners,

and printed by Wynkyn de Worde about 1534 A.D.

EDITED FROM THE UNIQUE COPY OF THE FIRST EDITION,

NOW IN THE POSSESSION OF THE EARL OF CRAWFORD AND BALCARRES,

with an Introduction,

BY

S. L. LEE, B.A.,

BALLIOL COLLEGE, OXFORD.

VOL. II.

LONDON:

PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY
BY N. TRÜBNER & CO., 57 & 59, LUDGATE HILL.

MDCCCLXXXIV, MDCCCLXXXVII.

82n.6

E 13c

no. 43,50

Extra Series,

XLIII, L.

R. CLAY AND SONS, CHAUCER PRESS, BUNGAY.

THE
ENGLISH CHARLEMAGNE ROMANCES.

PART IX.

The Boke of
Duke Huon of Burdeux

done into English by

Sir John Bouchier, Lord Berners,

and printed by Wynkyn de Worde about 1534 A.D.

EDITED FROM THE UNIQUE COPY OF THE FIRST EDITION,

NOW IN THE POSSESSION OF THE EARL OF CRAWFORD AND BALCARRES,

with an Introduction,

BY

S. L. LEE, B.A.,

BALLIOL COLLEGE, OXFORD.

PART III.

(COMPLETING THE TEXT).

LONDON:

PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY,
BY N. TRÜBNER & CO., 57 & 59, LUDGATE HILL.

MDOCCCLXXXIV.

Extra Series.

XLIII.

R. CLAY AND SONS, CHAUCER PRESS, BUNGAY.

NOTICE.

AN Appendix to this edition will be issued this year, probably in May. It will contain brief Essays on

- 1. Lord Berners' relations with Euphuism, —
 2. Some of the more important legends introduced into the romances,
 3. On the differences in the language between the first and
2 third editions,
- together with indexes of the names of places and persons, and of the obsolete words.

S. L. LEE.

March 6, 1885.



4 E haue harde here before how kynge
 Huon & quene Esclaramonde, when
 they departid fro¹ Burdeaux they lefte
 theyr doughter in the kepyng of the
 good abbot of Cluny, her vncl^e / who
 grew and dayly amended in suche a wyse² that when she
 came to the ³age of .xv. yere, for her excellent^e beauty
 8 her renome was so great in euery countre that there
 was nother kynge nor duke but ⁴that⁴ desyred to haue
 her in maryage / so that the abbot and Barnard her
 cosyn had great busines to giue eche of them theyr
 12 answer^e to be contente / one was the kynge of
 Englonde, another the kynge of Hungarye, and the
 thyrde⁵ was Florence, sone to⁶ the kynge of Aragon /
 But speccially the kynge of Hungarye wold haue had
 16 her / the⁷ abbot answered the kynge of hungaryes
 enbassadours and⁸ to all the other, that vntyll he had
 harde some worde⁹ fro¹⁰ duke huon her father, he coude
 not agre to no¹¹ mariage for her / but yf they wolde
 20 retourne agayne by the feast of saynt Iohnⁿ nexte
 folowing^e, then he wolde be contente to holde a daye
 of communycacyon of maryage in the towne of Blaye /
 wherto the kynge of Hungarye was contente, and
 24 so were all the other enbassadours / and when the day
 came the good abbot toke his way to⁶ Blaye to be
 there agaynst the comynge of the kynges of Englonde
⁴and of ⁴hungarye / and Florence, sone to the kynge of
 28 Aragon / the⁷ abbot lefte the lady Claryet in the
 kepyng of Barnarde her cosyn, who enterely¹² loued
 her / ¹³when the abbot was come to⁶ Blaye, ¹⁴the abbot¹⁴
 made the towne to be hanged rychely for the comynge
 32 of the sayd kynges. And y^e .iii. daye after the abbot

Clariet was left at
Bordeaux in the
care of the abbot
of Cluny.

When she was
fifteen years old
she had every
king and duke in
Europe for her
suitors.

There were the
kings of England
and Hungary,
and Florence, son
of the king of
Aragon.
The king of
Hungary was
especially
importunate.
The abbot wants
to consult Huon,
and defers his
answer to the
Hungarian and
other envoys till
St. John's day.

He invites the
suitors to Blaye
to hear his
decision.

¹ the Citie of. ² sort.

³ Fol. cxlviii. col. 1 (*should be xlix.*). ⁴⁻⁴ omitted.

⁵ other. ⁶ vnto. ⁷ good. ⁸ so. ⁹ newes.

¹⁰ for in text. ¹¹ any. ¹² entirely after loued her.

¹³ and. ¹⁴⁻¹⁴ hee.

The king of
England comes
first, and goes
away hunting:

next arrives the
king of Hungary:

and lastly
Florence.

A traitor of
Bordeaux, named
Brohart, knew
that the abbot
had decided that
Clarlet should
choose a husband
for herself.

Brohart wants
Clarlet for
himself,
and returns from
Blaye to
Bordeaux.

came thether / fyrst came to the towne the kynge of
Engelonge, who anon after *that* he was alyghted and
somewhat rested, he lepte on¹ his horse agayne and
wente a huntynge into the laundes / then after came the ⁴
kyng of hungarye in goodly araye; he alyghted at the
paleys, whereas the abbot receyued hym with great
ioye / then after² ³entered Florence with a noble
company. The abbot did salute them all one after ⁸
another, sayenge howe⁴ he and the hole towne were at
theyr commaundemente, & they thanked hym. There
was a false traytoure borne in Burdeaux, who had
harde all the conclusyon that the abbot had taken with ¹²
these prynces / and that was that they shulde se the
lady / and he that pleased her best shulde haue her in
maryage / this traytoure that harde that conclusyon
thought in⁵ hymselfe that he wolde let that mater yf he ¹⁶
coude, and haue her hymselfe / this traytours name was
Brohart / he departed fro Blaye sore desyryng to
atayne to his false enterpryse; he toke a lytell shyp
and sayled incontynent to⁶ Burdeaux / then in haste ²⁰
he ⁷toke londe⁷ and fayned hymselfe as thoughe he
had great busynes to do; so he came to the paleys
wheras he founde⁸ Barnarde ⁹and y^e lady⁹ lenyng in
a wyndow deuysynge together. Then Broharte saluted ²⁴
the lady¹⁰ and Barnarde al smyng. 'Brohart,' quod
Barnard, 'the mater must be good that I se you come
smylyng / I praye you¹¹ shewe¹² vs¹³ how dothe the¹⁴
abbot of Cluny, and how hath he receyued the prynces ²⁸
that be come to Blay' / 'Barnarde,' quod the traytour,
'know for trouthe *that* in all your lyfe ye neuer saw
suche noblenes as is now in y^e towne of blay, and
therefore, syr, hastely or¹⁵ the mater goeth any further, ³²

¹ vpon. ² afterward. ³ Fol. cxlviii[ix]. col. 2.

⁴ that. ⁵ within. ⁶ vnto. ⁷⁻⁷ went on shoare.

⁸ the faire ladie clarlet. ⁹⁻⁹ omitted.

¹⁰ after Barnard. ¹¹ to. ¹² vnto. ¹³ mee.

¹⁴ good. ¹⁵ before.

- the¹ abbot of Cluny, who is vnclé to my lady here
 presente / he² sendethe you worde by me that inconty-
 nent as sone as nyght comethe *that* preuely my lady
 4 Claryet be made redy and apareyled and dysgyssed lyke
 a man / and you & I to brynge her to³ bley to her
 vnclé the abbot of Cluny / and that tomorowe by⁴
 none ye ordeyne damoysselles to come ⁵after and to
 8 brynge with them all her ryche robes and aparayle
 to aray her therin when tyme shall be, and that we
 take with vs one⁶ of her apareyles to put on her when
 she come there tyll⁷ all her other aparayle comethe /
 12 and the cause why *that* her vnclé sendeth for her now
 so preuely is that she shulde se all them that desyreth
 her in maryage, for out of y^e chaumbre wheras she shal
 be in she shal se them all one after another ⁸thrughe a
 16 lateyse⁸ wyndowe / when Barnarde hard the vnhappy
 traytoure / wenyng⁹ he had sayd ¹⁰trouth,¹⁰ bycause he
 was a man of credens, therfore he byleued his wordes.
 Alas, why dyd he so, for a more¹¹ traytoure ther was not
 20 fro thense to Rome, his father and his bretherne were
 so all / but Barnarde byleued hym bycause he wente
 with the abbot / then Barnarde sayde to³ Claryet /
 'lady, ye must make you redy to departe as sone
 24 as nyght comethe / and ye muste be apareyled as
 Broharte hathe shewed, to the entente that ye be not
 parseyued tyll⁷ ye come to Blaye to your vnclé the
 abbot / 'Barnarde,' quod the lady, 'syn it is the
 28 pleasure of myne vnclé and of you it is reason that I do
 it' / then she went into her chaumbre and aparayled
 her with her preuy demoysselles, & they laughed at her
 when they sawe her in a mans apareyle / and the yl¹²
 32 traytoure dyd so moch that he goté a lytell shyppe and

He tells Barnard,
 who guards
 Clariet, that she
 is to go with him
 to Blaye disguised
 as a man,

and that her
 maids are to
 follow the next
 day with all her
 apparel.

She is secretly to
 see her suitors at
 Blaye.

Barnard believes
 Brohart,

and bids Clariet
 depart.

Clariet is
 disguised.

¹ good. ² omitted. ³ vnto. ⁴ about.
⁵ Fol. cxlviii.[ix.] back, col. 1. ⁶ some. ⁷ vntill.
⁸⁻⁸ out at a secret. ⁹ that all that.
¹⁰⁻¹⁰ had been true. ¹¹ vild. ¹² cruell.

With Barnard
and Brohart she
enters a ship.

Brohart deceives
Barnard.

They pass down
the Garonne.

brought it redy to the posterne of y^e paleys, and he had
gote redy a great stone and tyed therto a corde / then
he came to¹ Barnarde and sayd / 'syr, it is² tyme to
departe, that we maye be at blaye or³ it be mydnyght' / 4
then Barnarde came to the lady, whome he founde
redy to departe, and sayd, all smylynge, 'fayre lady, ye
resemble well to be a gentyll squyre' / bar⁴narde put
his sworde aboute hym, and toke the lady by the arme 8
& sayde / 'come on companion, it is tyme we go' /
Brohart wente on before, and barnarde and the
damoyzell⁵ went after arme in arme, and so went⁶
to the posterne so preuely *that* no man parseyued them / 12
then Brohart entered in⁷ fyrste and toke Claryet by
the hand and led her to the ende of the shyp, ⁸then
Barnarde entered / broharte softly let the stone slyp
into the water and held the cord styll in his hande, and 16
sayd to¹ Barnard, 'syr, I do this bycause the shyp
shall not go to faste tyll⁹ we be paste the medyll of the
streme' / and sayd to¹ Barnard, 'syr, holde you this
cord in your hande tyll we be paste the heye streme / 20
and then we shall drawe it vp agayne.' Barnarde, who
thought none yll, dyd as the traytour sayd / then they
toke the helme in theyr handes, and so departed along
the ryuer of Gerounde. 24

¶ Howe the traytoure Broharte drowned
Barnarde, and of theyr aduentures / and
howe Broharte was slayne. Ca. C.lix.



Hen Brohart sawe *that* they were fare 28
of fro y^e towne, & that y^e nyght was
darke, he came to¹ Barnarde & sayde,
'syr, quyeckely drawe vp y^e stone by
the corde out of the water' / then 32

¹ vnto. ² full. ³ before.

⁴ Fol. cxlviii[x]. back, col. 2. ⁵ Ladie. ⁶ on.

⁷ to the shippe. ⁸ and. ⁹ vntill.

- Barnard stowpyd downe lowe to drawe it vp / then
 Brohart toke barnard by ¹the lege or¹ he was ware, Brohart, by a
 and with all his strengthe he tombelyd ²Barnarde³ ouer wicked device,
⁴the⁴ bourde into the water, wheras he was drowned, the throws Barnard
 whiche was great petye / for a more trewer knyght into the river,
 coude not be founde / when the⁵ lady Claryet saw that and heis drowned.
 Brohart had cast barnarde ouer the⁵ bourde she gaue Clariet cries out,
⁸a great crye, and she came to⁶ Brohart and drew hym and tears
 by the here / when⁷ the traytour saw that y^e lady tare Brohart's hair.
 his here, he toke her by the armes so fersly that he Brohart flings
 caste her to y^e ⁸shyp botom,⁸ & dyd ⁹all to⁹ bete her,¹⁰ her to the ship's
¹²& sayde that her cryes and wepynges coude not ayde bottom, and beats
 her, for whether she wold or not he wolde haue his her.
 pleasure of her / when y^e lady harde the false traytour
 she was in great fere, & began sore to trymble, making
¹⁶her praiers to our lord ¹¹Iesu christ¹¹ and to the vyrgyn
 mary⁹ to defende her fro dyshonour and to brynge her
 out of the handes of that false traytour her enemy /
 then the vnhappy traytour came to⁶ her and sayde /
²⁰that it were better for her to fulfyll his pleasure with He will by force
 good wyll and loue rather then by force, or elles to¹² dishonour her,
 caste her into the ryuer of Geroune / 'O false traytour,' or drown her.
 quod she, 'as longe as thou leueste thou shalte neuer
²⁴haue ioye nor pleasure of my body' / then the false Clariet resists,
 morderer dyd bete the lady, that pety it was to se; ¹³so and Brohart beats
 he lefte her lyenge¹⁴ in a maner ded; when he sawe⁷ it her till she is
 wold be no better he was wery, and so fell on¹⁵ slepe / nearly dead.
²⁸the shyp wente forthe by force of the streme, and The traitor then
 by that tyme it was fayre daye / so fare the shyp went falls asleep;
 that nyght that they were nere to the ende of the
 ryuer of Geroune / and y^e lady sore wepynge behelde Clariet revives;
³²the traytour how he slepte, and sawe¹⁶ by hym a lofe of

1-1 one of his legges before. ² Fol. cxlv[1]. col. 1.³ him.⁴ ship.⁵ faire.⁶ vnto.⁷ that.⁸⁻⁸ bottom of the shippe.⁹⁻⁹ omitted.¹⁰ cruelly.¹¹⁻¹¹ god.¹² he would.¹³ and.¹⁴ lying after maner.¹⁵ a.¹⁶ lying.

she sees him
sleeping with a
loaf of bread at
his side, of which
she stands in
great need.
She weeps
bitterly,
and prays to God
for aid.

The ship enters
the sea,

and is carried to
a little island.
Brohart awakes,

and entreats
Clariet to yield to
him.

But he curses God
when he perceives
that they have
reached a deserted
island.

Clariet leaves the
boat,
and runs up the
rock.
Six thieves lie hid
there.

brede / the famyne that she was in constrayned her to
take and to eat it, for she had suche famyne that
she coude bere¹ it no lenger / then she made her
prayers al² wepyng to our lorde god, requyrynge hym⁴
to kepe and defende her virgynyte and to preserue her
fro that false tyrant who had betrayed her / so fare
wente the shyp *that* it enterid into the see / the wynde
was great, and they had nother helme nor sayle to ayde⁸
them selues with all / then the wynd toke them and
draue them to a lytell port vnder a hye rocke in a
lytell Isle / then Brohart awoke and was glad when he
saw they were aryued nere to the londe / for he knew¹²
ryght well the countre; ³then he sayde to the ladye /
'thou seest well⁴ thou haste no pusaunce to go agaynste
my wyll / the whiche thou must nedes fulfyll / for thou
canste not haue any socoure of any man or woman¹⁶
leuyng, nor al thy defence cannot auayle the, thou
seest well we be in an Isle wheras the see goeth
rounde about it / wherfore I haue great dought that
we shall neuer depart⁵ hens: therfore dysmay you not,²⁰
for as nowe I wyll do the no hurte.' This thefe, when
he saw that he was in this Isle, he began to curse god
⁶and his mother,⁶ and the owre that euer he sawe
Claryet / for the false traytour saw well that he muste²⁴
dye there⁷ for hunger⁷ and rage / for there was no shyp
to enter into the see, therfore he had then no wyl to do
any yll to the lady / the which was by the grace
of god, who wold not that the lady shuld be dys-²⁸
honored / ³when she sawe that they were so nere the
londe, sore wepyng she issued out of the bote, and ran
vp the rocke. Now god defende her, ⁸the same tyme
there was on⁹ the mountayne .vi. theues who laye³²
to spy the marchauntes / and they had a lytell galey

¹ forbear.
⁵ from.

² Fol. cxlv[1]. col. 2.
⁶⁻⁸ omitted.

³ and.
⁷⁻⁷ by famine.

⁴ that.
⁸ for.

⁹ vpon.

- lyynge in a lytell corner of the rocke nere to them, and
 had couered it with boues and grene leues; when
 Brohart saw the ¹damoyzell ryn awaye he cryed as
 4 loude as he coude, and said, 'by god, dame,² your
 fleyng shall not awaye,³ for whether *thou* wylte or not
 this nyght I wyll haue my wyll⁴ of the' / the .vi.
 theues who were on⁵ the mountayne etynge of ther
 8 mete, when they harde Broharte cryenge after the
 damoyzell, they were sore abasshed, and were in great
 fere *that* they had bene spied. Then the damoyzell,
 who ran vpon the mountayne, when she sawe them she
 12 sayd, 'A, syrs, I pray you haue petye of me and ayde
 and soconre me agaynst this false traytoure, this nyght
 passyd he stole⁶ me awaye out of the cetye of Burdeaux,
 'I am doughter to noble duke Huon' / when these
 16 theues harde the damoyzell they rose vp all and thought
⁸it had bene some feyned mater to haue begyled them,
 but when they sawe Broharte folowe after the lady /
 then the mayster of the theues stepte forth and said,
 20 'how is it that thou arte so hardy to come vpon vs /
 thou arte come hether to spye vs, but we shall neuer be
 acused by y⁹ / *thou* arte but yll come to this brydale' /
 when the traytour broharte sawe the .vi. theues he was
 24 sore abasshed, and sawe well how⁸ he shulde be fayne
 to defend hym selfe / then he drew out his sworde and
 strake the mayster thefe ⁹so on⁹ the hed that he claue
 hym to the tethe / ⁷when the other .v. theues sawe
 28 theyr maister slayne they were¹⁰ sorowful,¹¹ then they
 assembeled¹² Brohart on all sydes / and he defended
 hymselfe so well *that* or¹³ he was stryken to the erthe
 he slewe .iiii. of them, and in the meane tyme whyles
 32 they fought / the lady Claryet came to the place

Brohart threatens
her from the boat,

and his voice
rouses the thieves.

Clariet sees them,
and begs them to
have pity on her.

They stop Brohart
in his pursuit of
Clariet.

Brohart draws his
sword, and kills
the master thief.

The other thieves
attack the traitor,
but before they
struck him down,
he killed four of
them in all.

¹ Fol. cxlv[1]. back, col. 1. ² madame. ³ you.
⁴ pleasure. ⁵ vpon. ⁶ did steale. ⁷ and. ⁸ that.
⁹⁻⁹ such a blow vpon. ¹⁰ right. ¹¹ and angrie.
¹² assailed. ¹³ before.

Clariet finds
food and drink in
the thieves' place,
and eats and
drinks.

The thieves make
Brohart confess
his evil inten-
tions.

Then they bind
his feet, and
hang him by
his feet to a tree:
under his head
they light a fire,
and thus he ends
his life.

The two thieves
who are left alive
learn from Clariet
all her story.

They give Clariet
rich apparel,
and admire her
beauty.

wheras the theues had bene, & there she founde mete
and drynke plente / ¹when she sawe the mete she was²
ioyfull, and thankyd god therof, & dyd eate ³and
drynke at her pleasure / and she saw how the theues 4
had cast Brohart to the erth, wherof she was ioyful,
howbeit she knewe not what company she was com⁴ to
no[r]⁵ in whose handes she was aryued in; when the
theues had cast Brohart to the erth / they made hym 8
to shew where he had taken y^e damoyzell / and he
shewed them all the mater, and howe he had taken her
to the entente to haue dyshonored her & to haue had
her to his wyfe, and to haue caryed her into some 12
straunge place vnknownen / when y^e theues hard what
Brohart had sayde / they sayde, 'O thou vntrewe and
false traytoure, there is no tourmente in the worlde so
crewel but that *thou* haste deserued a worse payne, and 16
therfore by vs thy deserte shalbe rewarded' / then they
toke and bounde fast his fete, and hanged hym vp by
the fete on⁶ a tre / then they made a fyer, and vnder
his hede they made a great smoke, & so made hym to 20
dye in great doloure⁷ / thus ended the traytoure
Broharte myserably his dayes / then the two theues
came to the place wheras Claryet was, and they de-
maunded of her estate / and she shewed them all the 24
maner, and how she was taken by y^e traytour Broharte,
and she shewed⁸ them what she was / then the theues
caused her to put of her clothes that she was in, and
dyd⁹ on her other ryche aparayle / ¹when they saw her 28
so aparayled they thoughte¹⁰ no lady nor damoyzell in
the worlde coude pas her in beaute, for she was come
agayne to her beaute, for¹ she thoughte herselfe well
assured bycause she was delyuered fro¹¹ Brohart / 32
when one of these two theues sawe the great beaute

¹ and. ² right. ³ Fol. cxlv[1]. back, col. 2. ⁴ in.

⁵ not in text. ⁶ vpon. ⁷ and paine. ⁸ vnto.

⁹ to put. ¹⁰ that. ¹¹ the false Traitour.

of this damoyse, he sayd to¹ his felawe / ' this nyght I
 wyl haue my pleasure of her' / the other sayd² ³he
 wolde not suffer that / and sayd howe he was y^e fyrste
 4 that ouerthruw Brohart who had stollen her awaye;
 then y^e other drewe out his dager and strake his felawe
 into the body to the ha[r]te⁴ / & when he felte
 hymselfe streken to the dethe / he toke corage on hym
 8 and drew his sworde and stroke the other on the hed to
 the braynes, and so he fell downe dede / and the other
 that was wounded to the deth fel downe in lyke wyse
 by his felaw ded, and so therby the ⁵mayde⁵ Claryet was
 12 ⁶there all alone / when she sawe herselfe so all alone in
 the Isle wheras was⁷ non habytacyon / she began then
 petuously to⁸ complayne, sayeng, ' O ⁹very god,⁹ I pray
 the by thy grace to haue of me pety,¹⁰ and I requyre
 16 the humbely where so euer I go to saue and defende my
 vyrgynyte & ayde me ¹¹to¹¹ come to sauegard.' Nowe
 let vs leue spekyng of the fayre Claryet & retourne to
 speke of the kynges & prynces that were at blaye
 20 abydyng the comynge thether of the¹² lady Claryet.

One of them longe
 to haue his
 pleasure of her:
 but the other will
 not allow that, as
 he was the first to
 kill Brohart.

They fight, and
 both are slain.

Clariet, finding
 herself all alone,
 prays to God to
 pity her.

¶ Of the great sorowe that was made at
 Blaye by the abbot of Cluny and by the
 prynces of the noble citey of Burdeaux for
 24 the fayre¹³ Claryet that was stollen away,
 & of the sorow that was made when they
 sawe Barnarde brought in dede by .vi.
 men. And of y^e ponysshement that was
 28 done to y^e lynage of¹⁴ Broharte. Ca. C.lx.

¹ vnto. ² that. ³ Fol. cli. col. 1. ⁴ hafte in text.

⁵⁻⁶ faire Ladie. ⁶ left. ⁷ no after habytacyon.

⁸ weepe and. ⁹⁻⁹ good Lord. ¹⁰ of me after pety.

¹¹⁻¹¹ that I may. ¹² faire. ¹³ Ladie.

¹⁴ the Traytour.

The abbot of Cluny and Clariet's royal suitors at Blaye resolve to send for her from Bordeaux.



Hen these kynges and prynces were aryued at Blaye, & had spoken with the¹ abbot of Cluny / they concludyd betwene them .iii. *that* the lady should ⁴ be sent for, & he that she wold frely

The abbot admires the kyngs, and especially Florence.

chose shulde be her husband / for eche of them thought themselfe moste fayre / & thought² there coude not be founde .iii. goodlyer yonge princes then they were / ⁸ but specyally Florence, sone to the kyng of Aragon, was most fayrest. And y^e same tyme that they were determynyd to sende to y^e citeye of Burdeaux for the lady Claryet,⁴ came thether the knyghtes, squyers / ¹² ladyes and damoysselles apoynted oy Broharte, thynkynge to haue found there y^e fayre Claryet, and they brought her robes and iowelles to aparaile her withal, as Brohart had deuysed / they cam and lyghted at the ¹⁶ palays. the abbot of Cluny beyng at the gate, & seynge ladyes and damoysselles comynge, thoughte² it had bene his nece, the fayre⁵ Claryet; he wente incontynent to⁶ them / and demaunded where his nece ²⁰ Claryet was / 'syr,' quod the knyghtes / 'we thynke to fynd her here with you / for yesternyghte late the lady departed fro the citeye of Burdeaux to come to you / and Brohart came for her, who with syr Barnarde ²⁴ wente with her, and they commaunded vs that we shulde not fayle to be here with you at this oure' / then they shewed all the maner how Brohart came and⁷ had sayde to⁶ them / and when the¹ abbot of ²⁸ Cluny hard them / he fell sodaynely to the erth in a swoune, so that all that were there present thought² he had bene dede / then at last he reuyued and cast vp⁸ a great crye, and sayd, 'A, my ryght dere nese, I ought ³² to be sorowful thus to lese you in suche⁹ maner, *that*¹⁰

The maids and knights whom Brohart had bidden follow Clariet to Blaye, arrive there.

The abbot thinks Clariet is with them;

but when he learns their story, how Brohart took Clariet from them, he swoons.

¹ good. ² that. ³ Fol. cli. col. 2. ⁴ there.
⁵ Ladie. ⁶ vnto. ⁷ what he. ⁸ out. ⁹ this.
¹⁰ I.

wold to our lorde ¹Iesu chryst¹ that I were vnder the
 erth, for I wolde lyue no lenger in this world / a, *thou*
 false traytour Brohart, thy kyn² dyd neuer good /
 4 O Barnarde, wher is becom your noblenes, yet I can not
 byleue *that* ye be anything culpable' / anon thes newes
 were knowen i[n]³ the town, so *that* all the kynges &
 princes were aduerteyseed of the ⁴mater / ⁵they came
 8 hastily to the paleys wheras they founde the abbot in
 sore wepynges, whome they had slayne &⁶ it had not
 bene for y^e good renowne *that* they knewe to be in
 hym / therefore they forbare hym / then euery man
 12 mounted on⁷ theyr horses & rode toward⁸ Burdeaux,
 wheras they founde the burgesses and the comon people
 in great cryes and wepynges, bewaylyng for⁹ duke
 Huon & the duches Esclaramonde,¹⁰ and¹¹ Claryet
 16 theyr doughter, who was lost and betraied by Brohart /
 when the abbot of Cluny and all¹² the other prynces
 were entered in to Bordeaux and sawe suche sorowe
 made there that¹³ they all fell to wepynge / & as they
 20 were in this sorow there came thether .vi. men bryng-
 yng with them syr Barnarde dede, whom they had
 found drownid in the ryuer of Geroune / if y^e sorowe
 was great before, then it was renewed when they sawe
 24 Barnarde dede ; if I shulde reherse the sorow that was
 made *that* daye in the citey of Burdeaux as well of the
 prynces as of the abbot and comon people, it shuld be
 ouer¹³longe to reherse / then the kynges and prynces,
 28 well aduerteyseed of the lynngage and parentes issued of
 y^e blode of Brohart, and how alwayes they haue bene
 full of treason, they were serchid out in euery plase in
 the citey, as well men as women and chyl dren there
 32 were found out to the nombre of .lxx. persons / they

The kings are
 wrathful with the
 abbot.

All ride to
 Bordeaux, where
 the people are
 weeping for the
 loss of Huon,
 Esclaramonde,
 and Clariet.

Barnard's dead
 body, found in
 the Garonne,
 is brought into
 the city.

Brohart's kindred
 had always been
 full of treason,
 and they are all
 sought out,
 men, women,
 and children, to
 the number of

¹⁻¹ god. ² kindred. ³ *iy in text.*

⁴ Fol. cli. back, col. 1. ⁵ and. ⁶ if. ⁷ vppon.

⁸ the Citie. ⁹ the noble. ¹⁰ his wife. ¹¹ for.

¹² omitted. ¹³ too.

70, and cast into
the Garonne.

The suitors then
leave Bordeaux,

and the abbot
causes Barnard
to be buried.

were all taken and caste in to the reuer of Geroune, to the entent *that* none shulde be lefte alyue of the¹ kynrede, and neuer² to be had in remembraunce / after this³ done y^e kynges and prynces departed out of 4 the citye & rode in to theyr⁴ countrees ryght sorowfull and sore dyspleased for the lesynge of the lady Claryet; and the abbot abode styll at Bur⁵deaux and buryed Barnarde, who was⁶ sore complayned⁷ of all⁸ the 8 people. Now let vs leue spekyng of them and retourne to y^e lady Claryet who was all alone on¹⁰ the mountayne.

¶ How the lady Claryet all alone cam to the 12 see syde, wheras aryued the kyng of Granad in a ship, who toke awaye claryet / and of other maters.

Ca. C.lxi.



Ow sheweth the story¹¹ *that* after y^e 16 theues were slayne & Brohart dede, the lady Clariet abode alone vpon the mountayne with the dede men; she wept petyously, & sayd, 'O 20

¹²very god,¹² in what owre was I borne in / alas what¹³ hap & desteny haue I / it had bene better for me neuer to haue bene borne, for I se wel here I must dye / alas, I wote not whether to go, for in this Isle is nother 24 man nor woman to whome I maye go for any refu¹⁴ge.' thus sore complaynyng y^e lady went downe the mountayne, and by that tyme the shyppe that she came in was floted awaye / and as she loked into the see she 28 saw a great shyppe comynge towards that¹⁵ porte for fresshe water and for wode / ¹⁶when she sawe that she was ioyful, & thanked our lorde Iesu chryst; ¹⁶she

Clariet fears she
must die on the
deserted island.

A great ship
approaches her,
and she is joyful.

¹ that. ² more. ³ was. ⁴ owne.
⁵ Fol. cli. back, col. 2. ⁶ were. ⁷ for. ⁸ omitted.
⁹ faire. ¹⁰ vpon. ¹¹ Historie. ¹²⁻¹³ good Lord.
¹³ ill. ¹⁴ Fol. clii. col. 1. ¹⁵ the. ¹⁶ and.

- thoughte they had bene chrysten men / but they were
 Sarasyns and paynymes / & with them was a kynge
 who was theyr lorde & souerayne, he was kynge of
 4 Granade, and was retournynge into his countre, but he
 had suche fortune on¹ the see that he was constraynid
 to come thether; then they cast theyr ancre and toke
 lond, and the kynge, when he saw the damoysell² on¹
 8 y^e see syde, he demaunded of her what she was and
 of what countre / 'syr,' quod she, 'syn ye wyll knowe
 of myne estate I shall shew you' / then y^e yonge³ lady
 shewed before all them that were there present how she
 12 was doughter to duke Huon⁴ of Burdeaux, and shewed
 all the aduenture that was fallen to⁵ her / when the
 kynge Sarasyn⁶ harde that he was⁷ ioyfull, and sayd /
 'fayre damoysell,² it is happy for you that I haue
 16 founde you, for I haue no wyfe, ye shall be my wyfe
 and lye withe me this nyghte / but fyrste ye muste
 renewe⁸ your law and byleue in¹ y^e lawe of Mahomet,
 on¹ whome I do byleue' / when the⁹ lady harde the
 20 paynyme kyng she sayd, 'god forbede that I shuld leue
 the lawe of Iesu Chryste to byleue ¹⁰on¹⁰ Mahomet,
 I had rather haue all my members drawn one pece fro
 another with wyld horses then to be wyfe to suche a
 24 man as ye be' / when the kynge harde y^e damoysel
 that she set so lytel³ pryce³ by hym he had great
 dyspleasure therat, & lyfte vp his hand and gaue her
 on¹ the cheke ¹¹suche a blowe that y^e blode ran out of
 28 her mouthe & nose, so that she fel to the erth, wherof
 he was sore blamed of his men / and he said to⁵ them,
 'why, syrs, ¹²hard you not¹² how she dyspyssed our
 lawe and set no more by me then yf I were¹³ a boy';
 32 then he commaunded that they shuld take & cast her

It belongs to the
 saracen king of
 Granade, who is
 on board.

He sees Clariet,
 and asks her her
 name and
 country.

He offers to
 marry her, but
 orders her first
 to become
 Mahomedan.

Clariet declares
 she will never be
 the king's wife.

The king in anger
 strikes her on the
 cheek.

¹ vypon.

² Ladie.

³ omitted.

⁴ Huon, duke.

⁵ vnto.

⁶ Sarazin kinge.

⁷ right.

⁸ deny.

⁹ faire.

¹⁰⁻¹⁰ in the law of.

¹¹ Fol. clii. col. 2.

¹²⁻¹² did you not hear.

¹³ had been but.

He bids his men
cast her in the
sea;

but they carry
her on board ship.

When the ship
sails away, the
king sees her on
board, and
threatens to have
his pleasure of
her.

She kneels before
him and begs for
mercy.

She prays to the
Virgin,

and a great storm
rises to aid her.

into the see / and he departed fro her in great dis-
pleasure *that* she answered hym so rudely / then the
sarasyns came & toke the lady rudely and caried her
into the shyp, and so saued her, that¹ the kyng knew 4
not therof / then when the kynge cam agayne to
the shyp they hoysed² in³ theyr ancrs and made⁴
sayle, & had good wynd; then as the kynge walked vp
& downe in the shyp he sawe the damoyzell within the 8
shyp, wherof he was⁵ abasshed, for he ⁶had⁶ thought
that his men had drownid her / then he regarded⁷ her
and thoughte that he neuer sawe so fayre a damoyzell,⁸
& so he desired her with all his hart, and sayde to⁹ 12
her, 'fayre damoyzell,⁸ now ye be here your denyall
shall not auayle you, for this nyght ye shall lye with
me ⁶al nakyd⁶ / when¹⁰ Claryet harde the paynyme
kyng / deuoutly she called on¹¹ our lorde¹² Iesu chryst,¹² 16
& humbely requyryng hym to preserue her virgynyte
& to brynge her out of the handes of y^e sarasyns /
¹³then she kneled downe before y^e kyng, humbely
desyryng hym to haue marcy¹⁴ of her, & said how she 20
was content to folowe his pleasure as sone as he came
into his owne contre / 'wel,' quod the kyng, 'whether
ye wyl or not ye must suffer my pleasure / for I wyl
not depart fro ye tyl¹⁵ ye¹⁶ haue lyen with me¹⁷ one 24
nyght / and that I may holde you in myne armes' /
¹⁸when she vnderstoode hym she began sore to wepe,
desyrynge¹³ the vyrgyn Mary¹² to socoure and ayde¹⁸ her
at that tyme / for otherwyse she saw ¹⁹well she was but 28
lost / therwith there ²⁰rose vp²⁰ so great a wynde and
so horryble that the see that was calme and peasable
began to ryse ⁶and swell⁶ so maruaylously that the

¹ but. ² drew. ³ vp. ⁴ hoysed vp. ⁵ sore.
⁶⁻⁶ omitted. ⁷ looked vpon. ⁸ Ladie. ⁹ vnto.
¹⁰ the faire Ladie. ¹¹ vpon. ¹²⁻¹² god. ¹³ and.
¹⁴ pittie. ¹⁵ vntill. ¹⁶ I. ¹⁷ you.
¹⁸ aide before succour. ¹⁹ Fol. clii. back, col. 1.
²⁰⁻²⁰ arose.

- wawes were as hye as mountaynes, and the wynde¹ so great *that* whether the sarasyns wolde or not it behoued them to abandon theyr shyp to y^e wynde ²and
- 4 wether,² wherof they were in suche fere that the kyng and all other had great doute of the³ dethe; ^{The king and all his men think they will die.}
- 4 theyr sayle was all to torne with y^e wynd, & nere hande the shyp perysshed, they cryed⁵ vp on theyr god
- 8 Mahomet for socour and ayde; the kyng was in such fere that he had⁶ no lyste to desyre the fayre⁷ Claryet of her loue, who was sore afrayde & pale for fere / this tourmente and tempeste endured^{*} all the nyghte / & ^{The king is sore afraid.}
- 12 they were dreuen the same nyght be yonde valence y^e great / and in the mornynge they sawe y^e towne of Tours, to the whiche porte the wynde draue them / ^{The next day the wind drives them to the town of Tours,}
- 8 when the paynmys saw *that* they were aryued there
- 16 they were⁹ sorowfull, for they knew well¹⁰ the towne was christened / they saw no maner how to eschew it, but they had rather to be as sclauens all theyr lyues then to be drownyd in the see / the same tyme ther was
- 20 aryued at the same porte a noble knyght namyd syr Peter of Aragon; ^{where a brave knight, Sir Peter of Arragon, had just arrived.} 8 when he saw the other shyp comynge to the porte by constraynte of the wynde, and sawe well without it were socoured the shyp shuld be
- 24 perysshed agaynst the rocke, wherby they within and all the ryches shulde be perysshed and drowned / then he cryed to the Galeyes that laye in the porte to go and socoure the straung shyp / ^{The Saracens' ship is nearly wrecked, when Sir Peter goes in his galleys to her rescue.} 8 then the maryners
- 28 wente to the see and came to the shyppe.
- 11 ¶ when the Sarasyns sawe that they were in fere to be slayne, then there came two paynmys to the damoyzell to haue taken her and to haue cast her into
- 32 the see. Then she toke the mast of the shyppe in her armes and helde it so faste that they coude not drawe ^{The Saracens fear the Christians will slay them, and endeavour to fling Clariet overboard; but she clings to the mast, and cannot be moved.}

¹ was. ²⁻³ omitted. ³ their. ⁴ for.
⁵ and called. ⁶ now. ⁷ Ladie. ⁸ and. ⁹ right.
¹⁰ that. ¹¹ Fol. clii. back, col. 2,

The Arragonees
enter the ship
and see her
struggling with
the men.

Peter asks the
Saracens how she
came there.

In anger at their
cruelty, he and
his sailors slay
all the Saracens
except the king.

The king tells
Peter how he
found Clariet.

Peter replies that
he must accept
Christ or die.

The king refuses
to abandon
Mahomet,

her fro it / then the Aragonyse began to aproche to the
shyppe, and cast their hokes to ioynne to gether. The
lady in the shyppe had great fere / the whiche was no
maruayle / howbeit she was ioyfull when she knew¹ 4
they that came were chrystened / then the Aragonoys
by the cordes and ropes enterid into the shyppe /
²when Peter of Aragon & his company were entered
into the shyp he sawe the damoyssel³ sore wepyng / 8
then he demaunded of the Sarasyns where they had
get⁴ that prynces / 'ryghte nowe⁵ I sawe howe ye wold
haue taken & cast her into the see and⁶ I had not
come hastely' / then one of them sayd / 'syr, we be of 12
Granade, and fortune of y^e see hath dreuyn vs hether,
we be redy to be your sclauens or els to pay raunsome
at your pleasure.' 'Paynyns,' quod peter, 'all the
golde in y^e worlde shall not saue your lyues / none of 16
you shal scape' / then he commaunded that they
shulde all be slayne, and that none shulde⁷ scape alyue,
the which was done incontynente / all were slayne
excepte the kyng, of whome Peter of Aragone de- 20
maunded whye he wolde haue drowned that noble
damoysell, and where they⁸ founde her / 'syr,' quod
y^e kyng, 'we knowe her not / nor what she is, for we
founde her all alone vpon a rocke in an Isle within the 24
see. And when I sawe the great beaute and bountye
that was in her I couetyd her, and caused her to be put
into my shyppe, thynkyng to ha[ue] hadde my pleasure
of her, but she wolde⁹ in no wyse suffer me / wherfore 28
I was displeasyd withe her' / 'well,' quod Peter, 'ye
shall be slayne and go after your men with out ye wyl
byleue in Iesu chryst and renounce the lawe of
Mahomet' / 'syr,' quod the paynyme, 'I had rather¹⁰ be 32
slayne all quyeke then to leue my holy law and to take

¹ that. ² and. ³ Ladie. ⁴ gotten
⁵ (quoth hee). ⁶ if. ⁷ shall. ⁸ had.
⁹ Fol. cliii, col. 1. ¹⁰ to.

- that byleue that ye ar of' / when Peter hard hym saye
 so he gaue hym with his sworde suche a stroke on¹ the
 hede *that* he claue it to the tethe, and the kynge
 4 fel downe dede, wherof y^e lady Claryet was² ioyfull.
 Then Peter came to³ her and demaunded what she was
 and where the paynyns⁴ founde her / 'syr,' quod the
 damoyzell,⁵ 'I was borne in a parte of fraunce in a
 8 towne named Nautes, in bretayne. ⁶My father was of
 Lisbon, and he had great desyre to se his frendes, so he
 entered into a shyp and two of my bretherne and my
 selfe & dyuers other marchauntes together, & when we
 12 had thought to haue entered into y^e hauen at Lysbone,
 a great horryble wynde toke vs so that we were fayne
 to abandon our shyp and to let it go by the grace
 of god and at the wyl of the wynde and wether / then
 16 we passed the straytes of Marocke, and then our shyppe
 ran agaynste a rocke & brast⁷ all to peces, so that my
 father and all that were in the shyppe were drowned /
 and by the grace of god I sate on⁸ a sacke of wolles and
 20 helde me faste, & then the waues brought me to the
 lond syde, wherof I thanke god / and within an owre
 after this hethen kynge aryued there *with* his company
 by fortune of the se, and so they toke me into theyr
 24 shyppe / and the kynge sore⁹ enforced hymselfe to
 haue had his pleasure of me / and then by fortune
 of another tempest we aryued here, wheras ye haue
 slayne hym and all his.'¹⁰ ¹¹'fayre damoyzell,' quod
 28 Peter of Aragon, 'ye maye thanke god that ye be come
 into myne handes' / 'syr,' quod she, 'I knowe well¹² yf
 ye had not bene I had bene loste for euer / & therfore,
 syr, as longe as god¹³ hath geuen¹³ me lyfe I wyll be
 32 gladd to serue you as the moste lowest chaumberer¹⁴ in

and Peter kills
him.

Claryet tells Peter
a false story of
her misfortunes.

She offers to
serve Peter, who
has saved her,
as a maid of his
household.

¹ vpon. ² right. ³ vnto. ⁴ had. ⁵ Ladie.
⁶ and. ⁷ burst. ⁸ vppon. ⁹ omitted. ¹⁰ men.
¹¹ Fol. cliii. col. 2. ¹² that. ¹³⁻¹⁵ shall giue.
¹⁴ Chamberlaine.

your house, and put my body and honeste into goddes handes and youers' / 'fayre damoysell,' quod Peter, ¹as long as I leue ye shall not lacke / for by the grace of god your body and youre honoure shall be well ⁴saued / and peraduenture ¹maye¹ haue such a husband that ye shall thynke your selfe ²happy / our lorde³ dyd⁴ you a great grace when ye fell into my handes.' Then Peter of Aragon toke the damoysell by the ⁸hande and commaundyd to hoise vp the sayles, and to retourne to ⁴Taragon, a citey betwene Barselone and Valence the great / wheras then was the kyng of Aragon / ⁵so longe they sayled nyghte and daye that at ¹²the laste they sawe the towers of Taragone, wherof they thanked god / and as they aproched ⁶vnto⁶ the citey the kyng of Aragon was in his palais lokynge out at a wyndowe / then he sawe comynge in the see .vi. galeys ¹⁶and a great shyppe, wherof he was abasshed, and maruayled what it myght be / for he knewe them not bycause of the great shyppe / then they *that* knew them came to the kyng and sayde how it was his ²⁰cosyn, Peter of Aragon, ⁷the whiche⁷ is comen home in sauetye, thanked be god. Then the kyng and his lordes with hym wente downe and wente to the see syde, where as they founde the noble man, Peter of ²⁴Aragon his cosyn, and all his companye with hym. Then the kyng enbraced hym and sayd, 'cosyn, ye are ryght hartely welcom, I am ioyfull ⁸of your good aduenture. I pray you, cosynne, shewe me where ²⁸haue ye get this great shyppe that semeth to be so ryche' / then peter shewed⁴ hym all the aduenture, and how he rescued the damoysel out of the handes of the Sarasyns / and he shewed her to⁴ the kyng, and ³²sayde / 'syr, I byleue in this world there is not a

Peter promises to protect her.

He sails with her to Tarragona, where the king of Arragon was staying.

The king learns of his cousin Peter's approach, and goes to the shore to meet him.

Peter relates his adventures.

¹⁻¹ you shall. ² right. ³ god. ⁴ vnto.
⁵ and. ⁶⁻⁶ neere to. ⁷⁻⁷ who.

⁸ Fol. cliii. back, col. 1.

- fayrer, swetter, nor more gracious,¹ nor none that semeth more to be extraute of a hye lynage' / the kynge behelde the damoyzell, and she kneled downe
- 4 before hym / 'fayre damoyzell,' quod the kynge, 'I praye you shewe me what ye be and of what lynage / and fro whence ye come' / the damoyzell,² who was in great fere to name herselfe trewly / for fere lest she
- 8 shulde be in yll handes / ³then she³ caste downe her hede⁴ and began to wepe so that the teres fell fro her eyen, and sayde / 'syr, I requyre you desyre no suche thyng of me at this tyme, for I know not who is my
- 12 parente nor of what lynage I am of' / when the kynge vnderstode the damoyssel and sawe how she wepte he had great petye of her, and comforted her as moch as he myght⁵ / then Peter shewed⁶ the kynge al that
- 16 the damoyzell had shewed hym / before, a[n]d⁷ howe³ 'she was founde by the sarasyns,⁸ whome I haue slayne, she was happy that she fell in⁹ my handes / for by the grace of god I shall se her well maryed and set forthe' /
- 20 then the kynge and Peter wente fro the shyppes into y^e towne, & causid the damoyzell to be brought after them with two lentylnen in to Peters logynge, and as she passed thurgh the towne she was regarded with
- 24 ladyes and damoysselles, and they al praysed her beautye, sayeng one to another that there was neuer a fayrer² borne / nor more lykely to become of a noble blode. ¹⁰Great feast¹¹ was made in the citey for y^e
- 28 comynge home of Peter of Aragon, and of the damoyzell that he had brought with hym; the same tyme Florence y^e / kynges sone had bene on¹² hontynge, & cam home, and when he was in the towne and saw
- 32 the stretes hanged and the ladyes & damoyssels & other makynge so great ioye and feast¹¹ / he was abasshed,

The king asks of Clariet her lineage and country.

Clariet hesitates to tell, for she does not know whether he is friend or foe.

Peter tells the king all he knows of her.

She is taken to Peter's lodging.

All the townspeople admire her beauty,

and there is great feasting made.

Florence, the king's son, returns from hunting, and he wonders at the merry-making.

¹ creature. ² Ladie. ³⁻³ omitted. ⁴ presently.

⁵ could. ⁶ vnto. ⁷ ayd in text. ⁸ (quoth he).

⁹ to. ¹⁰ Fol. cliii. back, col. 2. ¹¹ feasting. ¹² a.

He is told of
Peter's capture of
the Saracen ship.

He goes to Peter's
lodging and sees
Clariet.

Florence is struck
by her beauty,

and Clariet ad-
mires his beauty.

They fall deeply
in love with one
another.

and demaunded of a burges yf there were any newe
weddyng / and ¹what they were¹ that the people made
so great ioye and feast⁴ / 'syr,' quod the burges, 'the
feast that is made nowe and the ioye is for the comyng ⁴
home of Peter of Aragon, who hathe bene so longe out,
for that god hath sent hym good aduenture, for he hath
wonne and conquered the great shyppe of Malyke,²
wherin was y^e kynge of Granada, great ryches he hath ⁸
wonne, and he hath slayne all the sarasyns that were
in the shyppe.' Then Florence restid not tyl he came
to his cosyn, Peter of Aragons logyng, & made hym
good chere, and said, 'cosyn, ye are welcome home, ¹²
and I am ryght ioyous³ of youre good aduenture' /
'syr,' quod Peter, 'I thanke god I haue had good
hap⁴ / &, syr, I shall shewe you one thyng that I
haue wonne wherof I am moste ioyfull.' then he ¹⁶
shewed hym the damoyzell who was sober and sad,
and shewed hym how he wanne her / when Florence
sawe the damoyzell his harte sprange for ioye / and y^e
more he beheld her the more fayrer she semyd. And ²⁰
the damoyzell behelde hym ryght humbely / & she
thoughte⁵ she neuer saw ⁶so fayer a⁶ yonge man before,
nor better made nor formed of all his membres.
Florence that⁷ behelde the damoyssel, by reason wherof ²⁴
the darte of loue strake hym to the harte / wherof the
wounde coude not lyghtely be helyd / I ²⁸maye well
saye that in all the worlde in that tyme coude not be
founde agayne such two⁹ parsones, for the great beaute ³²
wherwith they were garnysshed coude not be dyscryued /
for god & nature had no thyng¹⁰ for gotten in fourmyng
of them / swetely they regarded ech other / at that
tyme yf Florence had knowen that she had bene the
fayre Clariet of Burdeaux he wolde haue maryed her

¹⁻¹ wherefore it was.

² Maliga.

³ ioyfull.

⁴ fortune.

⁵ that.

⁶⁻⁶ a fairer.

⁷ so.

⁸ Fol. cliiii. col. 1.

⁹ such.

¹⁰ nothing *after* forgotten.

incontynent; she was greatly taken in the loue of
 Florence, and so was he with her, then he desyred
 with all his harte to knowe what she was / for his
 4 hart gaue hym that she shulde be come of some noble
 blode, and sayd to¹ hymselfe that he desyred moche to
 know it, and that in all the world ther was no thyng
 he loued so well, & thought that without her loue
 8 he coude not longe endure / thynkyng to desyre her to
 take hym for her louer, and *that* yf she refuse hym
 that shorte shulde be his lyfe / but he² thought to be
 so bold as to speke to her. Thus Florence, taken with
 12 y^e fyre of loue, toke the fayre damoyzell by the lylly
 whyght hande & caused her to sit downe by hym /
 then he drewe her a lytel aparte to the entent *that*
 none shulde here hym / ³then he sayd, 'fayre damoy-
 16 sell, ye be welcome into these partyes / I pray you
 'shewe me what ye be, and of what lynngage' / 'syr,'
 quod the damoyzell, 'lytell shal you wynne when ye
 know the sartayne what I am / but synne it pleaseth
 20 you to knowe it² I shall shewe you / syr, know for
 trouthe I am doughter to a pouer honest man of the
 countre, and in dayes passed was one of the chaumberers
 with the duches Esclaramond of Burdeaux; And, syr,
 24 by great treason I was stollen awaye / wherby syn
 I haue suffered moche pouertye, so that yf god & this
 noble ⁵man, Peter of Aragon, had not rescued me I had
 bene loste for euer / & therfore, syr, synne I am pouer
 28 and desolate / I requyre you in the honoure of our
 lorde⁶ that ye wyll not requyre me of any velany of my
 body and honeste nother in dede nor worde / and, syr,
 I byleue suerly no more ye thynke to do / for I had
 32 rather be hewen al to peces then any creature shulde
 haue pleasure of my body without I were maryed' /
 'fayre damoyzell,' quod he, 'I swere by god that me

Florence asks of
her her history.

She falsely tells
him she is a poor
man's daughter,
and a servant of
the duches
Esclaramonde.

¹ vnto. ² omitted. ³ and. ⁴ to.

⁵ Fol. cliiii. col. 2. ⁶ god.

Florence promises
to protect her
from all dis-
honour.

If his father were
dead he would
marry her.

Clariet begs him
to dismiss such a
thought.

She secretly
regrets that
Florence does not
know her true
rank.

Florence begs her
to take him for
her servant, and
confesses his love.

created that of me nor of any other leuyng man ye shal
not be desyred agaynst your honoure / for I knowe no
man leuyng *that* wolde requyre you of any dyshonour
or saye any thyng that shulde not be agreable to you, 4
but I shall make hym to dye of an yll dethe / and I
wyll that ye know¹ fro hensforth I wyll be your trew
louer / and none shall make departure of vs two / and
yf it were so that my father were dede I wold neuer 8
haue other wyfe but you' / 'syr,' quod the damoyzell,²
'I pray you forbere spekyng of any such wordes / for
it were not mete for the sone of a Kyng so to lowe³
hymselfe as to set his loue vpon so pouer a mayd 12
as I am / ⁴ye set your harte ⁵in to lowe a place⁵ / for yf
y⁶ kyng your father parseyue any thinge *that* ye shuld
set your loue on⁶ me, he wolde sone put me to dethe' /
therwith she caste downe her hede and sayd to her selfe / 16
'O ⁷very God,⁷ yf this yong prynce knew suerly what I
were, yt myght well be that he wolde haue me in
maryage / as yet in all my lyfe I neuer set my loue
vpon any parson but this yonge man whome I neuer 20
saw before, ⁸maketh me to thynke that⁹ I neuer
thought before / so¹⁰ that it maketh my blode and all
my membres to trymble / I am in worse case for his
¹¹loue then he is for me' / therwith she began sore to 24
wepe / when Florence sawe her he was ryght sorowfull,
& sayd, 'fayre damoyzell, I requyre you to take me
for your trewe and faythfull seruaunte / otherwyse
I can not se how I shulde¹² leue longe' / 'syr,' quod 28
she, 'I am wel content to graunt you my loue / for¹³
that your dede and thought be vpon goodnes and
honour / for yf I may parseyue in any maner that your
thoughte be otherwyse ye haue loste my loue for euer.' 32

¹ that.

² Ladie.

³ debase.

⁴ beware how.

⁵⁻⁶ to loue.

⁶ vpon.

⁷⁻⁸ good Lord.

⁸ it.

⁹ which.

¹⁰ omitted.

¹¹ Fol. cliiii. back, col. 1


¹² shall.

¹³ so.

'Fayre louer,' quod Florence, 'haue no doughte therof that euer I shall haue any thoughte of velany agaynste you.' Thus as ye haue harde was the fyrste aquaynt-
4 aunce betwene these two louers, that is to saye, the fayre Claryet doughter to duke Huon of Burdeaux, & of Florence son to y^e kyng of Aragon.

¶ Howe the kynge defended¹ his sone Florence that he shuld not be so hardy² to fal aquaynted withe the fayre damoyssel³ Claryet / and how Florence promysed the kyng, his father, to delyuer into his handes
12 the kyng of Nauerne⁴ presoner, in case⁵ he wyl⁶ be content at his retourne that he may⁷ haue the new found damoyssel / the which thing the kyng promysed / but he
16 dyd it not, for he made the damoyssel to be taken, and had drowned her if Peter of Aragon had not bene, who rescued⁸ her.⁹

Ca. C.lxii.

20  Hen Florence had long deuysed with the damoyssel / he toke¹¹ leue of her
10 and of Peter of Aragon his cosyn, and then he retourned to the kynge
24 his father, and the nexte day he wente agayne to the damoysselles lodgyng / so ofte he resorted thether that¹² brute ran in the palays and also in y^e towne how that Florence was amorous of the
28 damoyssel that Peter of Aragon had brought thether /
13 y^e mater at the last was shewed to kyng Garyn his father / wherwith he was so sorowfull that he was all

The next day
Florence visits
Clariet again,
and so often he
came that all said
that he was in
love with her.

¹ forbad. ² as. ³ Ladie. ⁴ Nauarre. ⁵ that.
⁶ would. ⁷ might. ⁸ and saued. ⁹ from the death.
¹⁰ Fol. cliiii. back, col. 2. ¹¹ his. ¹² great. ¹³ and.

The king, his father, learns the rumour, and angrily swears to slay Clarlet if it be true.

Florence confesses his visits to Clarlet to the king.

The king warns the young man to avoid her.

Florence pleads that it is the part of youth to love,

in a rage, and sayde to¹ hymselfe / 'a, good lord, this new founde damoyzell shall² wyne my sone yf she can and get hym fro me; I knowe well by reason of the great beautye that is in her my sone shall² be⁴ enamoryd of her, but by the lorde³ I beleue on⁴ yf I se that my son other go or come to⁵ her, as it is sayd he dothe, that aquayntauns shall be derely solde⁶ / for with myne owne⁷ handes I shall sle her' / ryght sory⁸ & angery was kynge Guaryn with his son Florence and with the damoyzell / ⁸he sente for his sone / & when he was before hym, the kynge demaunded hym fersly for whense he came / 'syr,' quod Florence, 'I haue¹² bene a sportynge in my cosyn, Peter of Aragons house / and haue passed the tyme there with the newe come damoyssel / the moste fayreste that euer was borne, and⁹ the moste ientylest and best taught, ryghte fayre¹⁶ and swete ar her deuyses.' 'Florence,' quod the kynge, 'I charge the in as moche as thou fereste my displeasure, that thou come no more at her, beware that thou fallest not¹⁰ in amours with¹⁰ her / yf thou do²⁰ thou werte neuer so yll acquainted with any loue, nor there neuër came so yll aduenture to the damoyzell yf she draw the to loue her / for yf I may knowe that thou goest thether any more I shall set her in suche²⁴ a pryson wheras I shall cause her to ende her dayes myserably' / 'father,' quod Florence, 'me thynke ye do great wronge to let¹¹ vs to playe & ¹²to deuyse¹² together in all goodnes & honour, god forbede¹³ that I shuld²⁸ entende any wayes to ¹⁴haue her and¹⁴ disceyue her; dere fater, remember¹⁵ ye haue bene yong, therefore suffer that youthe may pas the¹⁶ tyme in goodnes and honoure with vs as it hathe done with you / now ye³²

¹ within.

² wyll.

³ god that.

⁴ vpon.

⁵ vnto.

⁶ bought.

⁷ Fol. clv. col. 1.

⁸ then.

⁹ and and in text.

¹⁰⁻¹⁰ enamoured of.

¹¹ forbid.

¹²⁻¹² sport.

¹³ defend.

¹⁴⁻¹⁴ omitted.

¹⁵ that.

¹⁶ their.

are a¹.iiii. score yere or more ye ought to thinke of no
 thyng but to serue god, and eat, & drinke, and slepe;
 it ought not to trouble you thoughe our youthe pas the
 4 tyme in good warkes / ye ought to be content *that* we
 loue by amours as ye haue done or² this / for to the
 damoyzell I bere all honoure, ³I wyll loue her how so
 euer yt be taken fayre or fowle / ther is no man leuyng
 8 shall let me as longe as lyfe is ⁴in my body / she is
 fayre and ientyll / and it is sayd how⁵ I am fayre, and
⁶how⁶ that it were a mete copyll of ⁷vs twayne⁸ to be
 ioyned together in maryage, ⁸therfore, father, I praye
 12 you blame no more me nor the damoyssel, for in all
 that I can⁹ I am ¹⁰hers¹⁰ and she is myne.'

as all old men
have done when
young.

He loves Clariet
honourably,

and begs his
father to favour
their union.

¶ when the kynge¹¹ vnderstode his sone, in great
 yre and displeasure he sayd, 'O thou ungarcyous lad,¹²
 16 lytell thou praysest or honourest me in that thou wylte
 do thus agaynst my wyll; knowe for sartayne yf I may
 lyue¹³ tyll tomorowe in y^e mornynge I shall make a
 departure of your two loues' / when Florence hard his
 20 father, he sayde / 'my dere lord and father, and¹⁴ god
 wyll ye shall not do as ye haue sayd / for yf ye do
 with myne owne handes I shall slee my selfe, for I
 wyll not lyue one day after' / when the kyng hard
 24 that he was¹⁵ sorowfull for fere of lesyng of his sone /
 & studyed in¹⁶ hymselfe what to do / then he sayde,
 'fayre sone, take thyne armure and go and seke
 aduentures as I haue done in my tyme, then I shall
 28 mary the to some wyfe, suche one as thou canste finde
 in any countre, thoughe she be neuer so great or noble
 I shall cause the to haue her / yf thou wylte leue¹⁷
 & forsake this newe founde damoyssel / for by her no
 32 welthe nor honoure can come to¹⁸ the / it shulde be a

The king is very
angry at his
words.

If aught happen
to Clariet,
Florence will slay
himself.

The king loves
him too well to
put his life in
peril, and bids
him go abroad
and seek adven-
tures.

¹ about. ² before. ³ and. ⁴ Fol. clv. col. 2.
⁵ that. ⁶⁻⁸ omitted. ⁷ for. ⁸ two. ⁹ doe.
¹⁰⁻¹⁰ her Louer. ¹¹ had well. ¹² Son. ¹³ but.
¹⁴ if. ¹⁵ right. ¹⁶ within. ¹⁷ leue *after* forsake.
¹⁸ vnto.

The king of
Navarre threat-
ens Arragon;

Florence shall
fight against him.

But Florence will
have no wife but
Clarlet.

The king of
Arragon warns
Peter that if
Florence con-
tinues to visit
Clarlet at his
lodging, that she
shall surely die.

A messenger
brings news that
the king of
Navarre has
ravaged Arragon,

great yl¹ to² me³ / that after my dayes it shuld be
said that a new found damoyzell shuld be lady &
quene of my realme / thou knoweste well howe thyne
vnclē, the kynge of Nauerne,⁴ maketh me great warre / 4
for a debate that is lately fallen betwene hym and me /
I know wel now at this moneth of Apryl he wyll come
& inuade my realme /⁵ ther⁶fore, fayre⁷ sone, seke for
some other wyfe and let thys foley pas; then I shall 8
make thee a knyght, and then helpe to ayde & defend
my realme agaynst the kynge of Nauerne⁴ thyne vnclē /
thou arte byg and stronge ynoughe to defend my
londe.' 7 'Father,' quod Florence, 'speke no more to² 12
me, for I wyl neuer haue⁸ other wyfe but this fayre
damoyzell, whome I loue enterely' / 'sone,' quod the
kynge / 'thou abaseste thy selfe ouer lowe, nor there is
no frende nor kynne⁹ that thou haste that wyll kepe 16
any company with thee, but they wyll clene fle fro the;
therefore, fayre⁷ sone, put away fro the this foly /
beware in as moche as thou thynkest to haue my realme
after my disceas, and on¹⁰ the payne to be banysshed¹¹ 20
take not her agaynst my wyll.'

THen the kyng called to² hym his cosyn, Peter of
Aragon, and charged hym that yf Florence his
sone came any more to his logynge that he shulde 24
incontynent¹² shewe it hym¹² / 'for I promyse¹³ by the
faythe that I owe to² our lorde¹⁴ Iesu chryst,¹⁴ yf he
come thether any more I shal cause the damoyzell that
is in your howse to be slayne.' Florence was ryght 28
sorowfull when he hard the pleasure of the kynge his
father; thus as the kynge rebuked his sone there came
in a knyght and kneled downe and sayd: 'syr, I haue
brought you yl tydinges, for the kynge of Nauerne⁴ 32

¹ euill.

² vnto.

³ thee.

⁴ Nauarre.

⁵ and.

⁶ Fol. clv. back, col. 1.

⁷ good.

⁸ no.

⁹ kindred.

¹⁰ vppon.

¹¹ out of my Countrey.

¹²⁻¹³ tell him of it.

¹³ (quoth hee).

¹⁴⁻¹⁴ god.

is entered into your realme, and settethe all your countre
 in flambe and fyre, and nere to your citeye they be
 to the nombre mo then .xxx.M. men, besyde the great
 4 batayle *that* cometh after, wherin ther is a¹ .lx.M.
 men / they exyle your countre, ²they sle men, women
 and chyl dren; they spare nother yonge ³nor olde, it is
⁴nede that ye make haste & to brynge your men
 8 together to resyste your enemyes' / when kyng Gauryrn
 hard the messanger he was⁵ sorowful; then he called
 to⁶ hym his cosyn, Peter of Aragon, who was his chefe
 constable, and sayde, 'syrs, make redy our men to
 12 resyste our enemyes' / then he called to⁶ hym Florence
 his sone, & sayd / 'fayre sone, take thyne harnays⁷ and
 shewe thy vertue agaynst thyne enemyes who wasteth
 my realme. ²Take on⁸ the chefe charg and lede myne
 16 host / for I haue no pusaunce nor strenth to do it, for⁹
 the great age that I am of; I haue leued so longe *that*
 I can no more ryde / therfore defende thou the londe
that thou shalte holde after me, and then doest thou
 20 ¹⁰wysely¹⁰ / 'father,' quod Florence, ¹¹'not and god
 wyll I shall put my harnayes¹¹ on my backe to defende
 your lond without¹² ye wyll geue me in maryage
 y^e fayre damoyssel¹³ in my cosyn, Peter of Aragon
 24 house / yf ye wyll do me that courtoysye and promyse
 me to do it / I shall delyuer into your handes your
 enemye as presoner to do *with* hym your pleasure,
 otherwyse loke not that I shall do anythyng.' when
 28 the kyng saw that his sone wold none otherwyse do¹⁴ /
 then he commaunded all his other men, euery man, to
 arme him¹⁵ & go and resyste his enemyes / the which
 they dyd incontynent; ²they issued out into the felde
 32 mo then .x.M. men, &¹⁶ Peter of Aragon had the ledynge

and is slaying
 with 30,000 men
 all the
 Arragonese.

Florence is
 ordered by his
 father to lead the
 host against the
 enemy;

but he will not go
 unless he is per-
 mitted to marry
 Claret.

The king orders
 his men to set out
 under Peter of
 Arragon.

¹ about. ² and. ³ Fol. clv. back, col. 2. ⁴ great.

⁵ right. ⁶ vnto. ⁷ armour. ⁸ vpon.

⁹ because of. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ as a wise man should doe.

¹¹⁻¹¹ by the grace of god I will put no armour. ¹² except.

¹³ that is. ¹⁴ do *after* wold. ¹⁵ self. ¹⁶ Sir.

They meet the
army of Navarre,

and although they
fight bravely are
forced to retire.

The men of
Navarre pitch
their tents outside
Tarragona.

Florence is ad-
vised again to lead
the army: and on
his refusing,
unless his request
be granted, the
king falsely yields
to him.

The king intends
to drown Clariet
while Florence is
fighting.

of them, and they were not out of the towne two leges
but they encountered theyr enemyes / there were many
speres broken and many a knyght beten to the erth
& slayne, ¹theyr bodyes lyenge without sowles amonge ⁴
the horse fete / ryght valyauntly ²bare hymselfe that
day ²Peter of Aragon. ³ But he [h]ad ⁴not strenthe ⁵
suffycient, but ⁶his enemyes encreasid, wherfore he
was constrayned to recule ⁸backe towards y^e city / ⁸
howbeit or ⁹he entered he dyd great ¹⁰damage to ¹¹his
enemyes / when the Nauernoys saw the Aragonoys
reculed ⁸into the citey, then they pyght vp theyr tentes
and paulyons aboute the towne / ¹when kynge Gauryn ¹²
sawe his men retournyd, then he called his sone Flor-
ence and sayde / 'sone, take thyne harnays ¹³& go ayde
and ¹³defend the londe, the which partayneth to the after
my dysses' / 'syr,' quod Florence, 'that shall ¹⁴I neuer ¹⁶
do without fyrst ye promyse me to geue me the fayre
damoyssel in maryage, by that couenant that I shall
delyuer into youre handes as presoner myne vncl
the kyng of Nauerne' / when the kynge ¹⁵hard hym he ²⁰
mused a lytell, and sayd / ¹⁶'sone, I graunt the thyne
desyre so that thou wylte delyuer me thyne vncl
the kyng of Nauerne to do with hym at my pleasure /
therfore take thyne armure & make the redy, thyne ²⁴
armure is good and thy sworde is with the best, and yf
thou canst do as thou sayste thou shalt haue y^e fayre
damoyssell' / howbeit he sayd to hymselfe preuely that
he had rather ¹⁵lese one of his handes / then a straunger ²⁸
shuld be quene after hym, for as sone as my son ¹⁷shall
be issued out of the citey I shall cause the damoyssell
to be drowned in the see / for I wyll not suffer her to
lyue though I shuld be disherited for it. Then Flor- ³²

¹ and. ²⁻³ did Sir. ³ behaue hymselfe that day.

⁴ gad in text. ⁵ ynough. ⁶ for.

⁷ Fol. cli.[lvi.] col. l. ⁸ retire. ⁹ before.

¹⁰ losse and. ¹¹ vnto. ¹² Armour. ¹³ to. ¹⁴ will.

¹⁵ his father. ¹⁶ My. ¹⁷ (quoth hee).

ence, herynge his father promysynge hym to haue the
 damoyzell, he was ryght ioyfull. But he knew not the
 inward yll wyll of his father, then he sayd / 'syr, then
 4 I requyre you¹ sende for my loue hether / to the
 entent *that* she may gyrd about me² my sworde,
 wherby I shall be the more bolde & hardy when I
 come into the batayle' / y^e kyng ³dyd as his sone
 8 requyred, but the sone knewe not the fathers thought;
 y^e kynge sente two knyghtes for the damoyzell /
 4when she came there she was greatly regarded of all
 them that were there / for they had neuer sene a fayrer,
 12 nor one *that* semed to be extraucte of a hye generacyon /
 when Florence saw her in the palays his harte rose vp,
 and⁵ ran⁶ and clypped⁷ and kyssed her, and the
 damoyzell⁸ suffered hym with⁹ good wyll / wherwith
 16 the kynge had at his hart suche sorow that he had
 nere¹⁰ ronne vpon them, but he forbare it bycause
 he sawe his sone redy to go agaynst his enemyes /
 11he then ayded¹¹ to arme his sone rychely, and in
 20 lykewyse so dyd the¹² damoyssel / when kyng gauryn
 had made his sone redy the damoyzell¹³ gyrt¹⁴ aboute
 hym¹⁴ his sworde / then the kynge drewe it out of the
 shethe and therwith made hym knyght / 4then his hors
 24 was brought to¹⁵ hym / and he lepte lightly vpon hym /
 16his spere in his hand and helme on¹⁷ his hede, and
 shyld aboute his necke. Then Florence sayd to¹⁵ the
 kyng his father / 'syr, I leue with you my loue¹⁸
 28 whome I loue best in all this worlde. I leue her
 in your kepynge, for if our lord god geue me that¹⁹
 grace that I maye retourne, I shall brynge to¹⁵ you myne
 vnckle, the kynge of Nauerne, as a presoner.' The
 32 kynge graunted to¹⁵ his sone all that he wolde desyre /

But for the present Clariet is summoned to gird on her lover's sword.

The beauty of the lovers excites general admiration, but the king sees with sorrow Florence and Clariet embrace.

The king knights Florence with the sword that Clariet had girded on.

Florence promises to capture the king of Navarre.

¹ to. ² about me *after* sword. ³ Fol. cli.[lvi.] col. 2.
⁴ and. ⁵ he. ⁶ vnto her. ⁷ embraced. ⁸ Ladi
⁹ a. ¹⁰ hand. ¹¹⁻¹¹ then he helped. ¹² faire.
¹³ did. ¹⁴⁻¹⁴ *after* sworde. ¹⁵ vnto. ¹⁶ with.
¹⁷ vppon. ¹⁸ Loue. ¹⁹ the.

His father orders
his men to do
Clarlet all honour
until Florence be
out of the city,
when they are to
drown her.

but he shewed¹ not the inwarde intencyon that he was purposed to do. Then the kyng commaunded .x. of his knyghtes to se the gydyng of the damoyzell and to honoure her as moche as they myghte / tyll² his sone⁴ were out of the cetye / and then to drowne her in the see, to the entente that neuermore tydynges shulde be harde of her.

³¶ How florence wente to fyghte with his⁸ enemyes / and howe⁴ Peter of Aragon returned towardes the towne to bryng thether presoners, and how he rescued the⁵ damoyzell Claryet fro drownyng, and how¹² after⁶ kyng gauryn made⁷ the damoyzell to be closed up in⁸ prison. Ca. C.lxiii.



Hen Florence was armed and mounted he toke vp his horse fresly before y^o 16 damoyzell and blessed hym and toke⁹ leue of the kyng and of his loue¹⁰ / and so departed and rode to the gate,

and all that euer¹¹ saw hym sayd how they neuer sawe²⁰ so goodly a knyghte, nor more semyng to be fered / then he issued out of the gate and yode¹² towardes the tentes of his enemyes with .x.M. good knyghtes and hardy: the ladyes and damoysselles went to the walles²⁴ of the citeye to beholde the newe¹³ knyghte / when the Nauernoys sawe hym comynge / ther cam agaynst hym mo then .xv.M. men: & they came downe in a valey by couerte: to haue cut hym the waye betwene the²⁸ hoste and the towne / but the valyaunt knyght,⁴ Peter of Aragon, who was with Florence / spyed them / and so made haste to be afore them: and when he sawe⁹

Florence leaves
the city with more
than 10,000
knights.

Fifteen thousand
men of Navarre
soon set upon
them.

¹ knewe.

² vntill.

³ Fol. cli. [lvi.] back, col. 1.

⁴ Sir.

⁵ faire.

⁶ afterward.

⁷ caused.

⁸ a.

⁹ his.

¹⁰ Loue.

¹¹ omitted.

¹² roade.

¹³ young.

- tyme to set on¹ his enemyes. Florence, who was sore
 desyrous to fulfyll his promyse to the kynge his father,
 toke his spere and incounteryd with a knyght with
 4 suche vertue that he ran hym clene thrughe, and
 2 with drawynge out of his spere the Nauernous fell
 downe dede / then Florence sayd / 'god hath geuen me
 a good begynnynge' / then he drewe³ his sworde and
 8 strake another on¹ y^e helme that he claue his hede to
 the tethe / and the thyrd & fourth he made doulour-
 ously to dye,⁴ he neuer sessed tyll⁵ he had slayne .x. He kills ten of
 of his enemyes / thus under y^e medowes of Courtoys the enemy.
- 12 was on⁶ horyble batayle betwene y^e Nauernois & Ara-
 gonoys / where there was on¹ both partyes suche slauter
 that it was⁷ marueyle to behold it / anone Florence
 sworde was well knowen, for by the forse of his armes
- 16 he brake the great presses, for on¹ whome so euer his None whom he
 stroke light he was other slayne or cast to the erth, meets escapes his
 euery man fered hym so⁸ that none dystyr abyde nor sword.
- 20 in the batayle doynge of marueyls the fayre damoyzell Claryet watches
 Claryet was on¹ the walles of the citey with other him from the
 ladies and damoysselles / regardynge the hye prowes walls of the city.
- 24 had therof was sone retourned¹¹ vnto sorowe a[n]d¹² Claryet watches
 wepynges / for kynge Gaurnyn who coude not for gette him from the
 the mortall hate that he had to the damoyzell. ¹³he¹³ walls of the city.
- 28 with hym, and sayd, 'syrs, this new founde damoy- The king of
 sell withe whome my sone Florence is in hote amours / Arragon calls ten
 she dyspleasethe me so moche that I can not fynde in knights to him,
- 32 her in maryage at his retourne / but as long as he
 leuethe he shall neuer se her more what soeuer fal

¹ vpon. ² Fol. cli. [lvi.] back, col. 2. ³ out. ⁴ and.
⁵ vntill. ⁶ a. ⁷ great. ⁸ much. ⁹ neere.
¹⁰ vnto. ¹¹ turned. ¹² ayd in text. ¹³⁻¹³ omitted.

and bids them
cast her in the
sea.

The knights, with
heavy heart, visit
Clarlet.

She demands
their will.

They tell her she
must die, and
bind her hands.

She begs them to
have mercy on
her, but they are
deaf to her
entreaty.

She is taken to
the seaside by
four men.

therof / therfore go your waye and take and cast her
into the see amonge the greatest wawes that ye can
fynde' / when these knyghtes vnderstode the kyng, who
commaunded them to do ¹this murder, they were ryght ⁴
sorowfull at theyr hertes / but they durste not saye naye,
nor do agaynst his wyl, for yf they had they knew
well² they shulde dye, for³ they knewe well² there
was nother marcy nor pytye in hym / therfore they ⁸
durste make no semblant to the contrary / they fered
so sore⁴ to dysplese hym / then they wente and toke
the damoyzell wheras she was / 'syrs,' quod she,
'what wyll ye⁵ with me, wherfore ⁶take ye⁶ me, let ¹²
me go; yf ye wyll⁷ any thyng with me, shew me' /
they sayd, 'damoyzell, speke no more / for your ende
is come, ye shall neuer se fayre day more:' ⁸when she
saw that she was so taken with .x. men, who went ¹⁶
thretenyng to sle her, she then cast out a great crye,
& desired god ⁸and our lady⁸ to ayde and socoure her /
then they bounde the damoysselles handes with a cord,
in suche wyse⁹ that her whyght tender skynne braste¹⁰ ²⁰
& they bounde her so sore *that* the blode droppyd out
at her nayles / 'syrs,' quod she, 'I crye you marcy /
lytell shall ye wynne to sle me, ye shall do great synne,
syn¹¹ I haue not deserued it:' 'dame,' ¹²quod they, ²⁴
'your wordes can not auayle you / the kyng wyll not
that ye shall make anaunte to haue his sone in maryage /
for ye shal be drowned in y^e see whether ye wyll or
not, your wepyng shall not ayde you' / then .iiii. ²⁸
rebaudes toke and bounde her, and drewe her by the
fayre⁸ here of her hede, & led her towards y^e se syde
to haue drowned her / but often tymes it is sayde that¹³
god wyll haue sauyd can not be perysshed. This¹⁴ same ³²

¹ Fol. clvii. col 1. ² that. ³ and. ⁴ much.
⁵ doe. ⁶⁻⁸ doe you take. ⁷ haue. ⁸⁻⁸ omitted
⁹ manner. ¹⁰ burst. ¹¹ seeing. ¹² Madame.
 ¹³ which. ¹⁴ The.

season Florence was in the batayle, wheras he fought with his enemyes, and¹ Peter of Aragon had take[n]² many presoners, and he came to³ Florence and sayde /
 4 'a, syr, I requyre you let vs retourne to the citey / and be content⁴ with that ye haue done this day: for yonder ye may se comynge all the hole hoste of the Nauernoyse agaynste whome it is not possible for vs to
 8 endure / for they are mo then .lx. thousand men, and they all hateth vs to the dethe / ye haue done ynoughe, ye⁵ ought to be content / yf they take you none can saue your lyfe' / 'cosyn,' quod Florence, 'I pray you
 12 or⁶ I departe, let me iuste ones with myne vncle the kyng of Nauerne, whome I haue promysed to yelde as presoner to⁸ the kyng my father / & therby I shal haue in maryage the fayre damoyssel, my louer,⁷ and
 16 for the loue of that fayre damoyzell I shall make many a Nauernoys to lese theyr lyues.' 'Syr,' quod Peter, 'syn ye desyre your owne dethe / so moche I am sory therof / but I wyl no longer tary here, for it is not
 20 possyble for vs to tary here without we wyl be slayne wylfully / & I haue here many presoners, I will go lede them in to the citey and then I shall retourne agayne to⁸ you / to the entente that yf other you or I
 24 be taken presoner by them we maye be redemed agayne.' Then Peter wente to the citey with all his presoners;⁵ when he was come into the citey / he hard a great noyse abought the market place, wherof he had great
 28 maruayle, and wente thether / and then he sawe there .iiii. fowle glotons⁸ drawynge the fayre damoyzell Claryet towards the see syde to drowne her / when he saw that he was neuer so sorowful in all his lyfe
 32 before / and incontynente⁹ let go his presoners and drew out his sword and cryed to⁸ them that led the

Meanwhile, Peter of Arragon urges Florence to return to the city, since they have done sufficient injury to the enemy for the day: and reinforcements are coming to aid Navarre.

Florence begs for one joust with his uncle, the king of Navarre.

Peter will not tarry, and resolves to lead his prisoners back to the city.

He meets Clariet being dragged to the sea side.

He lets go his prisoners, attacking those who had Clariet;

¹ Sir.² takey in text.³ vnto.⁴ Fol. cvlii. col. 2.⁵ and.⁶ before.⁷ Loue.⁸ villaines.⁹ did.

damoyzell: 'a, ye ¹fowle horson¹ theues, let *that* damoyssel go whom I brought for beyond y^e se: ye dyd neuer such foly in² your lyues,' and therwith he strak so³ y^e fyrst with his sword⁴ *that* his hede flew ⁴ fro the body, and the seconde he claue to the teth / and the .iii. and .iiii. he slew / when the ⁶damoyzell⁶ saw the erle Peter, ryght petuously⁷ she began to crye, and sayd / 'syr, I requyre you haue petye of me, & ⁸ helpe & ayde me as ye haue done or⁸ this tyme, other⁹ lord nor mayster I haue none but you / syr, for god sake vnbynde me and put me out of this payne that I am in' / then Peter wente to the damoyzell and cut ¹² y^e cordes a sonder, wherwith she was bounde: and for the sorow that she was in she fell downe in a swoune: then Peter toke her vp and sayde / 'fayre damoysselle, ¹⁰take comforte in you,¹⁰ I shal ayde¹¹ to saue you;' ¹⁶ the damoyssel¹² wept petuously and sayde to herselfe / 'a, Huon of Burdeaux, my dere fater, the great paines and pouertes that ye were wonte to suffer ye haue left me, now enheryter to the same / alas, I knowe not ²⁰ where you nor my mother is, I byleue I shall neuer se you more' / then Peter of Aragon toke the damoyzell by the hande and led her to his logynge in the towne / then he wente to the palays, wheras he found kyng ²⁴ Guaryn, to¹³ whom he sayd / 'o, thou olde dotynge fole, wherfore or for what cause wolde you haue slayne the damoyzell, and she is none of yours / she is myne, I wan her vpon the see and saued her lyfe, ye can ²⁸ make no clayme to her.' Thus as Peter spake to the kyng there entered into the palais two knyghtes, and they sayde to the kyng / 'syr, before you is the erle Peter, your cosyn, who hathe delyuered and rescued y^e ³²

he kills all the four.

Clarlet begs his protection.

He cuts the cords about her.

Clarlet weeps bitterly in fear.

Peter leads her to his lodging, and visits the king.

He asks him why he would slay Clarlet, and bids him lay no hand on her, for she is his.

¹⁻¹ false. ² all. ³ omitted. ⁴ in such sort.
⁵ Fol. clvii. back, col. 1. ⁶⁻⁸ faire Ladie. ⁷ pitifully.
⁸ before. ⁹ neither. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ be of good cheere, for.
¹¹ helpe. ¹² faire Ladie. ¹³ vnto.

newe founde damoyzell, & hathe slayne the .iiii. men
 that shulde haue drowned her in the see' / when kyng
 Guaryn saw the erle before hym / ¹sayd, ²'how arte²
 4 thou so hardy³ to ⁴haue slayne⁴ my men for doynge of
 my commaundemente' / then he ⁵cryed to his men and
 sayd / 'syrs, I charge you take this velayne here who
 hath done me this offence, for I shall neuer haue ioye
 8 at my harte tyll⁶ I see hym hanged a hye on⁷ yonder⁸
 rocke' / then⁹ men stepte forth to haue taken the erle
 Peter / & when he saw that they aproched nere to¹⁰
 hym, he drewe his sworde and claue the hede of the
 12 fyrst to the tethe, and he slew the seconde, thynde,
 and fourthe / he bette downe¹¹ to the erthe / then the
 other fled awaye so that there was none that durst
 aproche nere to¹⁰ hym / for they were vnarmed and he
 16 clene¹² armed / then he cam to the kyng and sayde /
 'a¹³ false olde dottarde, full of syn and outrage / how
 dare ye thynke to do such an outrage, ye are not
 worthy to bere a crowne; your sone Florence ought to
 20 haue it / for a traytour ought to holde no realme; full
 derely ye shall abyge the yll wyll of the damoyzell' /
 and the more to make hym abasshed he made sem-
 blaunte to ryn vpon the kyng with his sworde / who
 24 for fere of hym ran into his chaumbre and shote fast
 the dore after hym / and the erle Peter stondynge
 without, sore thretened the kyng / then the kyng
 sayde, 'cosyn Peter, I crye you marcy, yf I haue done
 28 yll¹⁴ / I am redy to make a mendes at your pleasure, I
 was sore dyspleasyd with my sone, and therefore I
 thought to be reuenged on⁷ her *that* hathe caused all
 this / I shal make amendes / but by the grace of ¹⁵our
 32 lorde Iesu chryst¹⁵ my son shal neuer haue her in

The king orders
Peter to be
arrested and slain.

But the knight
draws his sword,
and slays all who
would lay hands
on him.

He bitterly re-
proaches the king,

and pretends as if
he would kill him.

The king rushes
from Peter to his
chamber, and
shuts the door.
Peter threatens
the old man from
without, and the
king promises to
do his will,

¹ he. ²⁻³ why wert. ³ as. ⁴⁻⁴ slay.
⁶ Fol. clvii. back, col. 2. ⁶ vntill. ⁷ vpon. ⁸ a.
⁹ his. ¹⁰ vnto. ¹¹ more. ¹² well. ¹³ thou.
 ¹⁴ euill. ¹⁵⁻¹⁵ god.

although he will
not consent to
Clariet's union
with his son.

He pardons Peter
the murder of his
men.

He will keep
Clariet in prison,
and tell Florence
she is drowned;
as soon as Flo-
rence has forgotten
her or married
another she shall
be sent in safety
to a foreign
country.

Peter agrees to
the king's plan.

Clariet is im-
prisoned, but well
cared for.

Florence is to
know nothing of
her whereabouts.

maryage to dye, therefore I wyll neuer consent that a
newe found damoyzell should be herytes of suche a
realme¹ as is² the realme of Aragon.' Then syr Peter
answered and sayde / 'syr, beware, blame her no more, ⁴
be contente with that ye haue done all redy / it may
be *that* this³ damoyzell 'is of as hye a lynngage as is⁵
your sone, wherfore such tyme myght⁶ come that ye
shulde⁶ derely be rewardyd / paraduenture, the damoy- ⁸
sell was stollen away by some yll tyraunte / she hathe
bene yll loged⁷ with you, when ye wolde so crewelly
haue slayne her' / 'cosyn,' quod the kyng, 'the mater
is yl come to pas, for her sake ye haue slayne⁸ of my ¹²
men / the whiche I pardon you / but as for the damoy-
sell I wyll set her in pryson in a towre / out of the
whiche she shall not departe, and I wyll shewe my sone
that she is drowned in the see / and I wyll kepe her in ¹⁶
pryson tyll my sone haue forgotten her, or elles haue⁹
taken a nother wyfe / then I wyll delyuer her & sende
her into some other countre, where as she shall be
better entreated'⁷ / when the erle Peter harde the ²⁰
kyng saye so, he agreed to his sayenge, and thoughte
that aduyse to be good / & was content with that he
had sauyd her lyfe / then the kyng opened his⁸ chaum-
bre dore & so came into the palays / then he sente for ²⁴
the damoyzell / and then she was set in pryson in a
towre / and y^e kyng commaundid to a secrete saruaunt
that he shuld se that the damoyzell shuld lacke¹⁰ no
thyng for her leuyng, and charged hym on¹¹ payne of ²⁸
his lyfe to kepe the mater secrete / and he charged all
tho *that* knewe therof in any wyse to shewe Florence,
his sone, no thyng of her / then he closed vp the dore
with stone to the entent that she shulde not issue out, ³²
& lefte no thyng open / but a lytell wyndow towardes

¹ Kingdome.

² is *after* Aragon.

³ the.

⁴ Fol. clviii. col. 1.

⁵ omitted.

⁶ may.

⁷ entertained.

⁸ many.


⁹ hath.

¹⁰ want.

¹¹ vpon.

the towne of courtoys, wherein her mete was put in¹ /
 other wyndowes there were openyng vpon the feldis,
 the whiche gaue great lyght into the house. Thus the
 4 fayre² Claryet was closed vp in to the towre / where as
 she had good³ leyser to wepe and wayle. Now let vs
 leue spekyng of the damoyzell and speke of Florence,
 who was in the batayle.

8 ¶ How Florence dyscomfyted his enemyes, &
 toke the kyng of Nauerne & led hym into
 the towne, & delyuered hym to the kyng
 his father / and how florence delyuered
 12 hym agane quyte bycause⁴ his father
 shewed⁵ hym that the⁶ damoyssel was
 drowned. Ca. C.lxiiii.

16  E haue well harde here before how the
 erle, Peter of Aragon, departed fro
 Florence and retourned into the citey,
 for he coude not cause Florence to
 leue the batayle, wheras he dyd mar-
 20 uayles for the loue of the fayre² Claryet, whome he
 trusted to wed: he slew so many of his enemyes that
 the feldes were couered with the dede bodyes / when
 the kyng of Nauerne, his vncler, ⁷[s]awe that, he was⁸
 24 sorowfull to se his men so slayne / then he came
 agaynste Florence his nephue, and sayd / 'a, thou
 vnkynd nephue, cursed be thou,⁹ I shall neuer haue
 ioye at my harte as longe as I se the alyue / thou hast
 28 done me this day great damage, I had rather dye an yll
 deth¹⁰ with out I were¹⁰ reuenged vpon¹¹ the / wherfore
 I requyre the to iuste with me / I chalenge thy londe,
 the whiche shall be myne / thou shalte neuer be lorde

Florence does
 marvels on the
 battle-field.

The king of
 Navarre chal-
 lenges him to
 combat.

¹ omitted. ² Ladie. ³ Fol. clviii. col. 2. ⁴ that.
⁵ vnto. ⁶ faire. ⁷ Fol. clviii. back, col. 1. ⁸ right.
⁹ you. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ then not to be. ¹¹ of.

Florence soon
strikes the king to
earth, where he
lies in a trance.

The youth tells
his foe that he
will give him as
prisoner to a fair
damsel.

The king yields,
and rides before
Florence into the
town.

The men of
Navarre do not
rise up in time to
rescue their king.

therof.' Florence answered and sayd, 'I shall not
refuse the Iustes' / then he put vp his sworde, & toke
a great spere / and so ran agaynste the kynge his
vncler / and y^e kynge came agaynst hym / ¹they met ⁴
together so rudely that the kynges spere brake all to
peces / but Florence spere was byge, wherwith he
strake the kynge so rudely that he fell to the erthe
with his fete vpward, & he fell so rudely ² that he laye ⁸
in a traunce, ³so that or he coude releue ³ Florence toke
hym by y^e ventayle of his helme, and sayd, 'Nauer-
noyse, or I slepe I shall render ⁴ you presoner into the
handes of a fayre damoyzell, whom I loue enterly / ⁵ ¹²
in all the worlde there is none lyke her in beautye,
yf ye refuse thus to do, with my sword I shall inconty-
nent stryke of your hede fro the shulders' / the kynge
sayd he was content to fulfyll his pleasure, & to yelde ¹⁶
hymselfe prysoner / then Florence toke his sworde fro
hym, and made hym to mounte on ⁶ his horse / and
made hym to [r]yde ⁷ before hym towards the towne,
and delyuered hym to the keypyng of .x. knyghtes / ²⁰
and Florence rode after with his sworde in his hande al
blody / y^e crye and noyse began to be great among the
Nauernoys / they enforsyd them on all partyes to haue
rescued theyr kyng, but they could not come in tyme / ²⁴
for by that ⁸tyme Florence was within the gates of the
citye, wheras he was well ⁹ receyued.

¶ when the Nauernoys saw how they loste theyr
payne, ¹⁰ and how theyr kynge was entered into the ²⁸
citye they were ¹¹ sorowfull, and came before the barryers
& skyrmysshed, and wan but lytell, and so retourned
with small profyghte and sorowfull for the losse ¹² they
had receyued that daye, for the feldes were couered ³²

¹ and. ² sodenly.

³⁻³ and before he could be recovered. ⁴ deliuer. ⁵ for.
⁶ vpon. ⁷ dyde in text. ⁸ Fol. clviii. back, col. 2.
⁹ right ioyfully. ¹⁰ labour. ¹¹ right. ¹² that.

with dede men / thus they retourned to theyr tentes
 and paulyons, and the Aragonoys entered into the
 citey of courtoys with great ioye / ¹when they were in
 4 the citey, then Florence toke the kyng of Nauerne, his
 vncl, by the hande, and ledde hym to the palays, and ²
 alyghted & wente into the hall, wheras he founde kyng
 Guaryn his father, who had great ioye of his comynge /
 8 when he sawe his sone Florence bryngynge his enemye
 presoner / he enbrased his sone, and sayd, 'My ryght
 dere sone, I am ryght ioyous ³ of your comynge' /
 'father,' quod Florence, 'I haue done so moch by the
 12 ayde of our lord Iesu chryst that I haue taken your
 enemye prysoner, whome I render into your handis to
 do with hym at your pleasure. Now I wyll ye kepe
 your promyse with me syn I haue quyt myne / nowe it
 16 is tyme that ye delyuer to ⁴me the damoyzell, whome
 I shall make quene and lady after your dysces' / when
 the kynge vnderstode his sone he was al in a rage, and
 sayd / 'fayre son, leue thy folly & take suche a wyfe
 20 acordyng to thyne estate, & thynke no more of *that*
 new foundelyng, for knowe for trouthe I haue caused
 her to be caste in ⁵y^e see, wheras she is drowned /
 Thou arte a fole to thynke that I wyll ⁶suffer after my
 24 dysses that a poore caytyfe, newe founde, shulde be
 lady and quene crowned of such a realme / beware in
 as moche as thou thynkest to dysplease me / *that* tho'
 be not so hardy ⁷to speke or to ⁸remembre eny mor
 28 the newe founde damoyssel' / when Florence harde y
 kyng his father saye how the damoyzell was drowned
 in the see, his blod mounted into his face / and
 his harte was so oppressed and so heuy that he had no
 32 power to speke / & suche a marueylous colde swete
 toke hym that there was no wayne nor membre in

The army of
Navarre retires to
its tents, and the
army of Arragon
enters the city.

The king of
Arragon warmly
welcomes Flo-
rence, who enters
the palace with
his prisoners.

Florence demands
Clarlet.

His father bids
him have done
with such folly,
and tells him that
Clarlet is
drowned.

Florence is over-
come at the
words.

¹ and. ² there. ³ ioyfull. ⁴ vnto.

⁵ to. ⁶ Fol. cliv. col. 1. ⁷ as.

⁸ omitted.

He falls to the
ground in a
trance.

He revives, and
curses his father.

He will go to the
place where she
was drowned,
and share her
sepulture.

He invites the
king of Navarre
and his prisoners
to aid him to
revenge himself
on his father.

his body but trymbelyd for sorowe¹ and anger that was
in hym / so that he had no power to sustayne hymselfe,
but fell downe to y^e erthe in a great traunce / ²so²
that euery man there wente³ he had bene dede, and ⁴
euery man complayned for hym / ⁵'specyally y^e kynge
his father was⁵ sorowfull, and wold as then that he had
neuer begonне that mater / when Florence cam agayne
to hymselfe, he sayd / 'O ⁶very god,⁶ the erthe ought ⁸
to be cursed when it sustayneth such a ⁷kyng ⁸tray-
toure⁸ that hathe done suche a case⁹ / great pareyle it
is to be conuersaunt with hym' / then Florence loked
vpon the knyghtes aboute hym, and sayde / 'syrs, ¹²
I requyre you for all the loue that⁸ ye ought of reason
to bere me / bryng me to y^e sam place where as she
whome I loue perfectly was perysshed and drowned /
for other sepulture I desyre none / but the same that ¹⁶
she hathe: for the loue of her it shall please me well
to be vnder couerte vnder the wawes of the se where as
my louer¹⁰ is, to the entente that of me there be harde
neuer more remembraunce' / Then he behelde the kynge ²⁰
of Nauerne his vnclе, whom he had taken presoner, &
sayd, 'syr kynge of Nauerne, thou arte ¹¹my presoner /
but yf thou wylte ayde me to be reuenged of this
treason that my father hathe done, I shall ¹²let the ²⁴
go agayne franke¹³ and quyte' / 'fayre nephue,' quod
he, 'leue that foly and speke no more therof / for
it touchethe moche your honoure / and ye shall be
blamed of all them that here spekyng the of.' 'Syr,' ²⁸
quod Florence / 'what is that ye saye, ye know wel ye
are my presoner, and that it lyethe in me whether
ye shall lyue or dye.' 'Fayre nephue,' quod the
kynge, 'I wyll well agree to your wordes / but yf ye ³²

¹ sorow after anger.

²⁻³ in such sort.

³ thought.

⁴ and. ⁵ right.

⁶⁻⁸ good Lord.

⁷ trayterous.

⁸⁻⁸ omitted.

⁹ deede.

¹⁰ Loue.

¹¹ Fol. cliv. col. 2.

¹² then.

¹³ free.

- wyll beleue me / byleue the kynge youre father, & leue
 to do after your owne wyll' / 'what,' quod Florence,
 'ye know wel that in me it lyethe to stryke of your
 4 hede without ye wyll agre vnto my wyl and pleasure,
 the whiche thyng I wyll do without¹ incontynente ye
 swere the dethe of kyng Guaryn my father / and *that*
 neuer to take peas *wit* hym tyll² ye haue brought hym
 8 to the dethe / on³ this condycyon I shall set you
 in sauegarde / for the traytoure hathe dysceued me of
 the thyng that I loue best in this world.' Then y^e
 kynge of Nauerne sayd / 'fayre⁴ nephue, ye ar as yet
 12 yonge, I can not tell whether youre wordis and promyses
 are stable and ferme or not / for the youth that I se in
 you and also for the great dyspleasure that ye be in ⁵as⁵
 now / ⁶therefore, fayre nephue, I haue great fere that
 16 ye shulde begyle me.' 'Syr,' quod Florence, 'god
 forbede that I shulde be so dysceyuable of my promyse
 to promyse you any thyng and fulfyll it not, what so
 euer shulde fall therof.' At this tyme there were but
 20 fewe parsons in the palays with the kynge / for all the
 lordes and knyghtes were gone in to the towne to theyr
 logynges to refresshe ⁵& to rest⁵ them of theyr trauayle
 & ⁷werynes / therefore the kynge was in his palays with
 24 a small company / y^e which Florence had well espyed /
⁶there ⁸were a⁸ sartayne of Florence knyghtes aboute
 hym, to⁹ whom he sayd, all wepyng / 'syrs, inconty-
 nent go and get me my horse, and also the kynge
 28 of Nauerne his hors redy at the gate' / the which was
 done; when they were come then Florence sayde to⁹
 the kynge of Nauerne his vncl / ¹⁰'if ther be eny
 corage in you to be saue and out of damage¹¹ take this
 32 sword in your hande, and let vs leue this vnhappy
 kynge to vse his dayes in sorowe / and come on and

The king, his
uncle, counsels
him to obey his
father's will.

Florence threat-
ens his life :
unless he swears
the death of the
king of Arragon
in his behalf, he
must die.

The royal prisoner
fears that Florence
will deceive him.

There were few
people about the
palace.

Florence orders
horses for himself
and the king of
Navarre.

He gives a sword
to his prisoner,
and bids him
follow him.

¹ except. ² vntill. ³ vpon. ⁴ Deere.
⁵⁻⁶ omitted. ⁶ and. ⁷ Fol. cliv. back, col. 1.
⁸⁻⁹ was. ⁹ vnto. ¹⁰ good vncl. ¹¹ seruage.

folowe me' / 'fayre nephue,' quod the kyng of
 Nauerne / 'I haue great fere *that* ye wyll begyle me' /
 'syr,' quod Florence, 'thynke it not, but come on¹ after
 me & ye shall se what I wyll do' / then Florence ⁴
 departed and the kyng of nauerne with hym; they
 lepte on² theyr horses / when they were on² theyr
 good horses ther was no man at that tyme in the towne
 abrode to let Florence of his enterpryse / but thus they ⁸
 passed bothe tyll³ they were without the towne / then
 Florence sayd to the kyng his vncler / 'syr, nowe ye
 knowe well that I haue broughte you out of this
 towne, and therefore I requyre you agayn that ye neuer ¹²
 take peas with the kyng my father, tyll³ ye haue
 slayne him' / 'fayre nephue,' quod the kyng, 'that⁴ ye
 requyre me to do I shall fulfyll it, and thus I recom-
 mende you to god:' when the kyng saw hym selfe ¹⁶
 so well deliuered he was ioyfull / & so rode tyll³ he
 came to his hoste, wheras his men receiued hym with
 great ioy, & they demaunded how he was scaped out of
 the handes of Florence / then the kyng shewed all the ²⁰
 maner howe Florence deliuered hym, wherof they had
 great maruayle, and had great ioy of his comyng; ⁵and
 to acomplysse his promyse to Florence his nephue / he
 sente to all his realme of Nauerne, to all his frendes ²⁴
 and alyes⁶ to come and ayde hym. Now we shall leue
 spekyng of the kyng of Nauerne, and speke of Florence
 his nephue.

Outside the town,
 Florence again
 exacts a promise
 from the king of
 Navarre to slay
 his father.

Then the king
 joins his army,

and summons all
 the men of his
 realm to attack
 the king of
 Arragon.

¶ How kyng Guaryn put Floren[ce] his sone ²⁸
 in⁷ a towre in preson / and howe the da-
 moysel scapyd out of the towre and spake
 with Florence, her loue, at an arche vpon
 the gardayne syde, and how they were ³²

¹ omitted.

² vpon.

³ vntill.

⁴ which.

⁵ Fol. clix. back, col. 2.

⁶ other.

⁷ to.

spyed / and how she thought to haue
drowned herselfe. Ca. clxv.



Hen Florence had delyuered the kyng
of Nauerne his vncke, whom he had
taken before in the batayle / then he
returned agayne into y^e cite and so
rode tyll he came to the palayes, wheras
8 he founde the kynge his father, ¹and sayde, as a man
almoste out of his mynde ² / 'O, thou false traytour,
thou hast done so moch thurgh thyne ylues, that I
had rather desyre the ³dethe then the ³lefe' / Then he
12 sayd to the knyghtes that were there presente / 'syrs,
I praye you brynge me to the see and caste me therein
in the same place, wheras my louer ⁴ was cast, for I
wyll not lyue one owre lenger / yf ye do not this I
16 shall sle myselfe withe myne owne handes' / when
kyng Guaryn harde his sone saye so, he was ryght
sorrowfull / and spake fersly to ⁵ his sone, & com-
maunded to take hym and to sette hym in pryson in the
20 towre, in suche wyse that he may be sure of hym / and
sayd, 'well I oughte to be angery in my harte when this
boy, myne owne sone, thus delecthe withe me: but by
the faythe that I owe ⁶to my ⁶lorde, ⁷saynt Iames⁷ /
24 the dyspleasure *that* he hathe done to ⁵ me he shall
derely abyte it / for as longe as he leueth he shall haue
no fote of my londe' / 'syr,' *quod* Florence, 'by you
nor by your londe, nor by any thyng that ye can do,
28 I set not therby a boton, for I had rather dye then
lyue.' There was no man presente but *that* wepte
petuously⁸ for petye / ⁹when Florence sawe them
wepe, he said to ⁵ them / 'syrs, com to ⁵ me, tak of my
32 harnays¹⁰ & put me into the handes of the kynge my

Florence returns
to his father and
reproaches him.

He orders his men
to cast him in the
sea, in the same
place where
Clariet was
drowned.

Florence is
ordered to prison
by the king.

¹ Fol. clx. col. 1. ² wits. ³ thy. ⁴ Loue.
⁵ vnto. ⁶⁻⁸ vnto our. ⁷⁻⁷ god. ⁸ greuously.
 ⁹ and. ¹⁰ armour.

His armour is removed, and his father takes him roughly by the hand.

He leads his son to the great tower.

Florence complains of his hard fortune, and Clariet overhears him, for she was shut up in the same tower.

She scrapes away the bricks in the wall with her fingers and a little knife, and enters the garden that is round about the tower.

father, for I wyll not that any of you shuld haue any displeasure for my sake / lette me bere the blame my selfe syn¹ I haue lost the thyng that I loue best' / then the knyghtes came to² Florence and vnarmed hym ⁴ and delyuered hym to y^e kyng his father / then the kyng toke hym by the hand and led hym forth rudely, and sayd howe he wolde set hym in suche a place out of the which he shuld not com of a longe space. The ⁸ erle Peter of Ara³gon had great sorow, but he durst speke no word / the kyng hymselfe led hym to the great towre, and there lefte hym sore wepyng and makynge great sorow for his louer⁴ that⁵ he had lost / ¹² he made such sorowe that petye it was to here / & when the nyghte came and that he remembered the damoyzell his sorowes began to renewe. And as wel as he made sorow for his louer⁴ / y^e⁶ damoyssel Clariet, ¹⁶ who was in the same towre muryed⁷ vp in pryson, she harde the complayntes that Florence made / and so long she herkenid that at the last she thought⁸ she knew y^e voyce, and sayd / 'O, ⁹very god,⁹ what may ²⁰ this be, who is this that I here thus complayne; me thynke I haue hard or¹⁰ this tyme ¹¹that voice,¹¹ ¹²me thynke it shuld be he that loued me so wel: I wyll not leue serching tyll¹³ I maye knowe the trouthe.' ²⁴ Then y^e noble¹⁴ damoyssel came to the dore that was newly muryd⁷ vp / wherby the mortar was not fully drye, and she scraped with her fyngers and with a lytell knyfe that she had, so that at¹⁵ laste she scraped ²⁸ out a stone. Then she assayed to pull out mo / so moche she dyd with her fyngers and¹⁵ knyfe that she made a great hole in the newe wall / so that she creped out and went in to the gardayne, the which isyued to ³²

¹ seeing. ² vnto. ³ Fol. clx. col. 2. ⁴ Loue.

⁵ whom. ⁶ faire. ⁷ immured. ⁸ that.
⁹⁻⁹ good Lord. ¹⁰ before. ¹¹⁻¹¹ before this tyme.
¹² and. ¹³ vntill. ¹⁴ omitted. ¹⁵ the.

the towre / and then she felte by her a rosyer, vnder
the which she sate her downe / the mone shone bryght,
wherby the gardayne was as lyght as thoughe it had
4 bene clere daye. Then she toke a fayre rose in her
hande, the which smelled swetely, & sayd / ¹ 'O, very
God,¹ I wolde² it were your³ pleasure that my louer
were here by⁴ me, I thynke he be not far⁵ hence / I
8 wysse with hym this swete rose, so *that* he knewe² it
came fro me / I wyll not leue serchyng tyll⁶ I naue
found hym / yf I can not ⁷fynde hym in doloure &
mysery I must ende my dayes' / the same tyme that the
12 damoyzell complayned thus in the gardayne, Florence
who was in the towre / and harde the⁸ damoyzell in
the gardayne, he knew her well by the voyce, and sayd,
'O, very⁹ god, what is it that I here, yonder in the
16 gardayne: 'dere louer,' quod the damoyzell,¹⁰ 'it is she
whome ye do loue so well / I am issued out of the
towre, wher in I haue bene in great mysery / ¹¹I can
not tell what wyll fall therof / comforte me or elles I
20 shall dye here in great sorowe:' when Florence harde
the voyce of his louer¹² / he had suche ioye at his harte
that he forgate all his dolour / when he saw that she
was not dede / then he sayd to¹³ her: 'a, my ryght
24 swete louer¹² whether wyll ye go / for yf the kyng, my
father, know that ye be scaped out of the towre incon-
tynent, he wyll sle you, he wyl haue no petye of you,
and I can not ayde¹⁴ you. ¹⁵Fayre louer,¹⁵ I praye
28 you gather me some flowers, and caste them in at this
wyndowe / I shall pas my dolours the better when I
haue in my handes any thyng that comethe out of
yours' / then the damoyzell gathered roses and Flowers,
32 & dyd cast them into her louer: wher of Florence had

She takes a rose
in her hand, and
declares that she
will find her lover,
whose voice she
has heard.

Florence recog-
nizes her.

He fears that his
father will slay
her when he finds
that she has
escaped.

He begs her to
gather flowers for
him.

¹⁻¹ Ah, good Lord. ² that. ³ thy. ⁴ with.
⁵ from. ⁶ vntill. ⁷ Fol. clx. back, col. 1. ⁸ faire.
⁹ good. ¹⁰ faire Ladie. ¹¹ and. ¹² Loue.
¹³ vnto. ¹⁴ succour. ¹⁵⁻¹⁵ Sweet loue.

The wall of his prison is too thick to allow him to take Clariet by the hand.

One of the watchmen discovers them talking to each other, and warns them to be silent.

More watchmen follow and find the hole in the wall, through which Clariet made her way,

and declare that she has fled away.

In despair Clariet leaves the garden of the tower and climbs a rock by the sea, thinking to drown herself.

great ioye / when he had receyued them fro her, and
 kyst them often tymes : then he came to the wyndowe
 thynkyng to haue taken his loue¹ by the hande, but
 he coude not, ²for² the wall was to thycke, wherof they ⁴
 were bothe sory / the same tyme whyles they were
 thus deuysynge together, the wache men came about, whome
 the kyng had sent thether to spye and knowe if Peter of
 Aragon dyd sende to³ those prisoners any ⁸
 comforte or ayde / ⁴when he came thether he⁵ harkened
 and harde the voyces of thos ⁶two persons, and harde
 well theyr wordes, and wepte for⁷ petye of them : then
 swetely the wache man called to⁸ them, & sayd, 'hold ¹²
 your peas, for yf ye be spyed ye can not scape the
 dethe ; I haue great petye of you both : I pray to⁸ god
 preserue you, for I canne not ²ayde nor² comforte
 you' / Then they held theyr peas and so wente a ¹⁶
 sonder to the entent⁹ they shuld not be harde nor
 sene / then¹⁰ thether came two other wache men, sente
 thether by y^e kyng to se yf any body came to the towre
 to ayde or comfort the two presoners / when they were ²⁰
 come nere to y^e towre they saw the newe made wall
 broken / then they sayde eche to other, suerly the
 damoyzell is fled and hathe broken¹¹ pryson / then
 they cryed out and made a ¹²scrye,¹² and said the ²⁴
 damoyzell is fled out of the towre / when the damoyzell,
 beyng in the gardayne, harde the noyse that the spies
 made she was in great fere and doubte, the which was
 no maruayle, then incontynent as preuely as she coude ²⁸
 she wente fro the towre and wente to the ende of the
 gardayne / wheras there was a hye rocke, & vnder the
 rocke a great water and depe, she clame¹³ vp² vpon the
 rocke and sayde : ' A, Florence, my dere loue, this day ³²
 shall be the departynge of vs two / it must behoue me

¹ Loue. ²⁻² omitted. ³ vnto. ⁴ and. ⁵ they.
⁶ Fol. clx. back, col. 2. ⁷ meere. ⁸ to after god.
⁹ that. ¹⁰ ther came. ¹¹ out of. ¹²⁻¹² great crye.
¹³ did clime.

- to dye for your sake' / she saw in the gardaine a great
 nombre of torches lyght and men sekyng all about
 for her, wherof she was agrayed and not without a
 4 cause / for she knew wel¹ yf she were taken she were
 lost for euer / ryght swetely she called on² our lord god
 and on the ³vyrgyn Mary³ for ayde and comforte, &
 sayd: 'alas, yf I be taken I can not scape fro the
 8 marterdome of dethe, but synne it is thus that we must
 nedis depart for euer, I had rather be drowned then be
 ta⁴ken;' therwith she made the syngne of y^a crosse,
 recommendyng herselfe to oure lorde ⁵Iesu chryst,⁵
 12 and therwith tombeled downe the rocke to haue fallen
 down into the water / but as she fell she fell⁶ in a
 great busshe by the waye / wherby she was prycked in
 dyuers places on her face and handis so that the blode
 16 folowed, wherby she felte such payne *that* she swouned /
 then the noyse ran thrughe⁷ the paleys how¹ the
 damoyzell was scapyd out of the towre / so⁸ that the
 kyng was aduertised therof, ⁹wherof he⁹ was sorowful,
 20 & made promyse that erle Peter of Aragon shulde lese
 all his londes & goodes, as he thoughte that by his
 meanes she¹⁰ scaped the pryson.

She sees men
with torches seek-
ing her below,

and prays to the
Virgin for aid.

She throws herself
from the rock,
but falls upon
bushes, and her
life is saved,
although she
swoons.

The king learns
news of her
escape, and blames
Sir Peter.

- ¶ How the fyrst wacheman found out the
 24 damoyssel, and led her into a great wode
 therby / and after¹¹ the same wacheman
 delyuered out of pryson Florence,¹² and
 shewed hym the place wher the damoyssel
 28 was, and howe florence and claryet entered
 into the see / & how the kyng went after
 his sone, & the wacheman taken. Ca. clxvi.

¹ that.² vpon.³⁻⁵ holy Ghost.⁴ Fol. clxi. col. 1.⁶⁻⁸ god.⁶ lighted.⁷ out.⁹ in such sort.⁹⁻⁹ who.¹⁰ was.¹¹ afterward.¹² Florence *after* deliuered.

The first watchman who had spied Florence and Clariet talking, finds Clariet.



Hus as the brute was in y^e palays for¹ scapyng of the damoyzell / the fyrst wache man that fyrst had spyd y^e .ii. louers together / he² went all aboute 4 in the gardayne to seke³ yf he coude fynde the damoyzell: he sought so moche that he founde the damoyzell, where as she laye in the busshe in great parayle to be drowned / this wacheman⁴ was a 8 wyse man, and as preuely as he coude he issued out of the gardayne and went downe to the water syde, and there he founde a lytell bote & entered into it / and so passed the vyne gardayne as preuely as he coude, so 12 that none harde nor sawe hym: and when he was agaynst the busshe wheras the damoyzell was / then⁵ he spoke to her softly, and sayd, ⁶ 'damoyzell, be not abasshed, for yf I may in any maner of wyse, I shall⁶ 16 ayde you / come downe and enter into this bote, and I shall set you in the foreste, and tary there tyll⁷ I brynge to you Florence, your louver / the whiche I shall do by the grace of Iesu, for yf I can by any maner of 20 menes / I shall brynge hym out of¹ daunger that he is in / bycause I haue alwayes loued hym, and for the goodnes that he hathe done to me I shall nowe rewarde it' / when the damoyzell harde the wacheman / for 24 ioye therof she forgate all her sorowe, and incontynente as well as she myght she issued out of the busshe and went downe the ryuer syde. Then she entered into the bote, & the wacheman set her ouer & lefte her in y^e 28 forest, y^e which ioyned to the water syde / then he toke his leue of her, and sayd / ⁵ 'damoyzell, tary here tyll⁷ I retourne agayne to you.' 'Frend,' quod the damoyzell, 'I praye to⁸ our lord⁸ ye may so spede as 32 to brynge hether my louver, and to set hym out of daunger;' and so he departed and entered agayne into

He promises to take her to a forest, and there bring Florence to her.

She enters the boat in which the watchman has come to her, and disembarks at the forest by the waterside.

¹ the.

² omitted.

³ see.

⁴ Fol. clxi. col. 2.

⁵ Faire.

⁶ will.

⁷ vntill.

⁸⁻⁸ god that.

the gardayne, harkenynge towardes the palays, where as
 there was great brute made for the scapyng of the
 damoyzell; but there was no doubt made of Florence,
 4 bycause the tower that he was in was ¹so¹ stronge and
 thycke. Also the chambre that he was in was not
 towarde the palays, but it laye open agaynst the gar-
 2den; then the sayd wacheman came to y^e wall syde,
 8 where as there was a straye lope³ into Florence chaum-
 bre, and he had two gotes fete in his handes / then he
 callyd Florence, and sayd / 'syr, yf ye wyll be with
 your louer⁴ who taryeth for you in the forest, wheras I
 12 haue lefte her in sa[ue]garde / helpe yourselfe that ye
 were out of this towre / take here this gotes fote and
 do you so moche there within to enlarge the lope that
 ye myghte⁵ issue out / and here without I shall make
 16 the hole wyder' / when Florence vnderstode y^e wache-
 man he was neuer so ioyful in al his lyfe / when he
 hard the man say that his louer⁴ was in sauegarde /
 then they laborid so sore that they made the lope so
 20 large that Florence issued out / ⁶then the wacheman
 brought Florence to the stable, wheras some of the
 kynges horses stode / specyally there was one ⁷there⁷
 coude⁸ be founde ¹no suche¹ / this wacheman, who had
 24 great affeeyon and desyre to do seruyse to this yonge
 lorde, dyd so moche *that* he brought to⁹ Florence his
 harnais,¹⁰ his shyld and his helme, and his sworde and
 a good spere / and so Florence armyd hym and lepte
 vpon the good horse / then the wacheman shewed hym
 the place in the forest, wheras he had left the damoy-
 sell / and then he toke his leue of Florence, who
 sayde, 'frynde, the seruyce that ye haue done me shall
 32 be well rewarded in tyme to come:' then he rode
 forth and lefte not tyll¹¹ he came there,¹² as his louer⁴

The same
 watchman shows
 Florence how he
 may escape.

Florence issues
 forth from the
 tower: he is
 brought by the
 watchman to the
 king's stables,

is armed and
 mounted on the
 best horse.

He reaches the
 forest, and finds
 Clariet.

¹⁻¹ omitted. ² Fol. clxi. back, col. 1. ³ hole.
⁴ Loue. ⁵ may. ⁶ and. ⁷⁻⁷ whose lyke. ⁸ not.
⁹ vnto. ¹⁰ armour. ¹¹ vntill. ¹² where.

She mounts the horse beside her lover, and they ride away.

Men are seen in pursuit.

They coast along the seaside of the forest,

and come to a little port, where a ship is ready to set sail.

The master takes them on board.

The watchman arrives on the shore when they have left, and sorrows much, for he is in fear of his life.

was; ¹when he saw her his ioye was renewed, then he alyghted and kyssed his loue,² & when he sawe that she was so blody he had great petye of her, and sayd / 'dere loue,² it is nedefull that we departe or³ the 4 daye come / therfore make you redy and lepe vp behynle me' / ¹then Florence moun⁴ted and she lepte up behynde hym and so departed as sone as they myght / when they were in the felde the damoyse⁸ lokyd backe to⁵ the citey ⁶ward⁶ / and she saw⁷ great number of men issued⁸ out / then she said to⁹ Florence / 'syr, I se wel¹⁰ we be loste, for I se moche people issued⁸ out of the citey, it is not possyble for us to be sau¹¹d, 12 but that we shall be taken, and specially I can not scape; I se well *that* nowe our loue shall depart / your father is fell and crewell, I knowe well¹⁰ he wyll sle me : ' then the wacheman came rynnynge after Florence 16 for fere that he had of the kynge / but he coude not ouertake Florence / who fled with his loue² behynde hym as fast as he myghte costynge¹¹ the see syde / for Florence knew well the preuy wayes, for¹² he had often 20 tymes vsed the wayes when he was wonte to go a hawkyng or huntyng, so long he rode that he came to a lytel porte, where ther was a shyppe redy to depart / then Florence alyghted and his loue² with 24 hym, & tyed his hors to a tree, ¹then he toke the damoyse⁸ll by y^e hand and came to the mayster of y^e shyp and agreed so with hym that he and his loue² entered into the shyppe / then they hoysed vp theyr 28 sayles and so went¹³ fro the lond / the wacheman came to the see syde trustynge to haue founde Florence there / ¹he was ryght sorowfull when he saw them so far in¹⁴ y^e see : he was in great fere of¹⁵ his lyfe. Then 32

¹ and. ² Loue. ³ before. ⁴ Fol. clxi. back, col. 2.
⁵ towards. ⁶⁻⁶ omitted. ⁷ a. ⁸ issuing.
⁹ vnto. ¹⁰ that. ¹¹ toward. ¹² because.
¹³ sayled. ¹⁴ on. ¹⁵ loosing.


kyng Guaryn came thether with a great nomber, and
 when he sawe the shyp so farre in the see, he sayde /
 'a, good lorde, now haue I loste my sone / for I knowe
 4 well he is gone in yonder shyp and the damoyzell with
 hym / by the faythe that I owe to¹ our lorde Iesu
 Chryste the² wacheman shall lese his hede' / then the
 wache³ man was taken and fast bounde, so that the
 8 blode came out at his fyngers endes, and sayd all
 wepyng, 'a, ⁴very god,⁴ in an yll oure I was ac-
 quaynted with Florence and his louer⁵: also for the
 goodnes *that* I haue done I shall haue a small rewarde,
 12 this day I am lyke to lese my lyfe for loue of my lorde.'

The king of
 Arragon sees the
 ship, and learns
 that his son with
 Clariet is on
 board.

He orders the
 watchman to lose
 his head.

¶ Of the great debate that was in the palays
 for the wachemans sake, whomme the kynge
 wolde haue had to be hanged / and how
 16 the kyng of Nauerne took the citey of
 courtoyse / and how he departed⁶ thence.

Ca. C.lxvii.

20  Hen the erle, Peter of Aragon, sawe the
 wache man taken by whome Florence
 and his louer⁵ wer saued / he was
 sory to se the man so sore be⁷ten and
 entreated⁸ / then he wente in hest to
 24 the kynge, and sayd / 'syr, ye shewe well by your
 workys that ye haue but small reason to suffer thus
 this poore man to be beten, and that ye wolde put hym
 to deth / for the goodnes that he hath done to your
 28 some therin⁹ he hath done but as he shulde do, and
 lyke a trewe seruante; ye ought the better to loue
 hym, ye shall do yll to put hym to deth / I wyl¹⁰ ye
 knowe¹⁰ yf ye put hym to dethe I wyll neuer¹¹ serue

Sir Peter pities
 the watchman.

He pleads for him
 with the king.

¹ vnto.

² this.

³ Fol. clxii. col. 1.

⁴⁻⁴ good Lord.

⁵ Loue.

⁶ from.

⁷ Fol. clxii. col. 2.

⁸ threatened.

⁹ therein *after* done.

¹⁰ that.

¹¹ not.

If he is slain, Sir
Peter will join
the king of
Navarre.

The king of
Arragon is
obdurate.

The watchman's
kindred kneel
before the king,
and implore him
to have mercy.

Sir Peter declares
the man shall not
die unless by
judgment of the
lords and council.

The watchman is
sent to prison,
and the king goes
to his palace,
followed by Sir
Peter and the
knights, who
loved him.

The king orders a
scaffold to be
erected.

Sir Peter orders
the watchman's
friends to go to a
tower and arm
themselves with
the armour they
shall find there.

yon one daye lenger; But I wyll rather go to the
kyng of Nauerne, and¹ to mayntayne his warre
agaynste you' / when the kyng hard hym so to threte
hym, he sware by god he shulde repent it, and how⁴
there shuld no man saue the wachemans lyfe: then the
poore man enbrased the kynges leg & cryed for marcy /
but the kyng sware and made promyse howe he shuld
be hanged without marcy / when the erle Peter harde⁸
that he was² sorowfull / the poore man wepte &
behelde the people that were there assembeled / and
desyred them to praye for his sowle / sayenge howe he
shuld dye for sauynge of his lorde / there were many¹²
of y^e pore mans kyn,³ they knelyd all downe before the
kyng desyrynge hym to pardon hym / the kyng
answered *that* he wold not / when the erle Peter harde
that he sayd to the kyng, 'syr, suerly he shall not dye¹⁶
without it be by iugemente as your lordes and coun-
sayle shal ordayne:' when the kyng hard that he was
sore dysplesyd, and so entered in to the citey and set
the wacheman in pryson / then he wente to his palays, 20
and Peter folowed hym, & acompanied with many
other knyghtes such as loued hym, and in lyke wyse so
dyd the poore mannes kyn³ / when the kyng was in his
palays he commaunded⁴ a scaffold to be made, wheron²⁴
he wolde haue the wacheman to lese his hede / when
his kynsmen harde that they cryed for marcy / but the
kyng wold do no thyng at theyr desyre / when⁵ erle
Peter sawe the yll wyll of the kyng he made a token²⁸
to the wachemannes frendes, who were in nombre⁶ a
.C. and .l., *that* they shuld go to such a towre, where⁷
was great plente of harnays,⁸ and to breke it vp and to
arme them, and so they dyd, and came agayne to the 32
palais; and when the kyng sawe them comynge

¹ helpe.

² verie.

³ kindred.

⁴ Fol. clxii. back, col. 1.

⁵ the.

⁶ about a.

⁷ there.

⁸ Armour.

- armyd / he cryed to his men that they shuld arme
 them and to take them that were so bolde to come in¹
 his presence all armed ; and when euery man was
 4 armed they came agayne to the palays to haue taken
 the wachman and all his kynred / but then² the wache-
 man and his frendes, who were redy in armure, set
 vpon the kyngis men : & also Peter of Aragon and his
 8 company ayded them / so *that* there was great, so great
 a skyrmysshe in the palays that it was petye to se it,
 they cut of armes, legges & hedis, eche of other /
 fynally the kyng and his men were so sore constrayned
 12 *that* of force they abandoned the palays and fled awaye /
 and the kyng fled into his chaumbre for sauegarde.
 Anone the newes ran in the towne that the kyng was
 sore assembelyd³ in the palays and⁴ iopardy of his
 16 lyfe / then all the comunalte wente & armed them /
 and sowned the larom bell, there was suche a noyse and
 brute as thoughe all the world had bene lost / then a
 spye went out and shewed the kyng of Nauerne howe
 20 kyng Guaryn was assembeled in his palays within the
 citey bycause of a wacheman whome⁵ y^e kyng wolde
 put to dethe bycause⁶ he had delyuered out of preson
 Florence and the da⁷moysell his louer :⁸ then the kyng
 24 of Nauerne, ryght ioyous⁹ of those newes, commaunded
 hastily his men to be redy in harnays¹⁰ / for he sayde⁵
 it was tyme then or elles neuer to assayle the citey /
 'great desyre I haue¹¹ to be reuenged of this kinge who
 28 had wedded my syster / whome he hathe slayne, I shall
 neuer haue ioye at my harte / tyll¹² I be reuenged' /
 then euery man armed them / and so assembelyd
 together with baners dysplayed, and so came in good
 32 order towards the citey to assayle it / but when they
 within the towne hard the crye and noyse without,

They return to
the palace and set
upon the king's
men.

Sir Peter aids the
former.

The king is driven
from his palace.

All the city is in
commotion.

News of the riot
is taken to the
king of Navarre.

He orders his
men to assail the
city.

¹ to. ² omitted. ³ assaulted. ⁴ in. ⁵ that.

⁶ in that. ⁷ Fol. clxii. back, col. 2. ⁸ Loue.

⁹ ioyfull. ¹⁰ armour. ¹¹ (quoeth he). ¹² vntill.

At the approach
of the men of
Navarre the strife
in the palace
ceases.

The king of
Arragon and his
lords came forth
to give battle to
Navarre.

But the men of
Navarre defeat
the men of
Arragon, and
enter the city.

The king of
Arragon takes
refuge in a church,
but he is never-
theless taken
prisoner.

He reproaches his
enemy with sacri-
lege in seizing him
in the church.

The king of
Navarre admits
the sin, and pro-
mises to release
him if he will
pardon the watch-
man.

& sawe theyr enemyes comynge towards them / they
wente and shewed it at y^e palays, wherby the stryfe
there seased / & then the kynge and all his lordes, with
all his people, issued out in batayle / then there began 4
a sore batayle, and many a man slayne and maynid /
but there were so many Nauernoys, that whether kyng
Guaryn wold or not, parforce they were fayne to
abandon the vycictory to theyr enemyes / and were fayne 8
to flee into the towne: but theyr enemyes folowed
them so nere that the kynge of Nauerne and his men
entered in with them / then the kynge of Nauerne
commaunded¹ none to² be slayne without they were 12
found in defence / for he sayd he caryd not so he
myght be reuenged of the kynge. Then the Nauernoys
spred abroad in the citey takynge presoners / then kyng
Gauryn fled to the mynster church / then he stode in 16
the church dore to make defence / but it coude not
auayle hym, there was so many of his enemyes that he
fled to the hye aluter for sauegard / but y^e kyng of
Nauerne, who was entered into the church, com- 20
maunded his men to take Guaryn / y^e whiche they
dyd / 'syrs,' ³quod kynge Guaryn, 'ye do me great
wronge to take me in this holy place, whereas euery
man shulde be sauyn / aboue all thynges y^e house of 24
god ought to be refuge for euery man' / then y^e kyng
of Nauerne, who was holden for a good holy man /
heryng what kynge Guaryn sayd, he knew well¹ he
sayd⁴ trouthe, and repentyd hymselfe, and sayd / 28
'fayre brother,⁵ for the offence that I haue committed
agaynst our lorde god ⁶Iesu chryste,⁶ I shall amend it
to the doble / so that ye do pardon the wacheman that
hathe delyuered my nephue Florence out of your 32
preson / I shall then shew you this courtoysye; for the
offence that I haue made I and all my men shall issue

¹ that.

² should.

³ Fol. clxiii. col. 1.

⁴ the.

⁵ Nephewe.

⁶⁻⁶ omitted.

out of this citey without takynge of any presoner or
any maner of goodes / for the loue of my nephue
Florence, whome I loue enterely, and for the goodnes
4 of the people I shall go to my tentes without, and
I wyll graunte you a truce to endure for a moneth / and
I promyse you the monethe ones expyryd / I shall
aproche agayne so nere to this citey / that as long as
8 lyfe is in my body I shall not departe tyll¹ I haue
taken this citey and you, whome I take for myne
enemye / to haue you as my presoner / for I shall neuer
haue ioye at my harte tyll¹ I haue reuengyd the deth
12 of my syster, your wyfe / then kynge Guaryn sayde /
'syr² kynge of Nauerne / of the courtoysye and bountye
that ye shewe³ me I thanke you / and as for the wache
man, I do pardon hym all myne yll wyll / and wheras
16 ye saye *that* ye wyll come so nere my citey to wyn it /
when *that* cometh, by the grace of god & by the helpe
of my trew subiectes I shall do y^e best I can to defende
my selfe and my citey' / then the kyng of Nauerne
20 issued out of 'the church, & lepte on⁵ his horse and
rode to the gate and taryed there tyll¹ all his men were
clene auoyded out of the citey, to y^e entent *that* none
presoners nor goodes shulde not² be had⁶ out of the
24 citey, wherof his men were angry, & specially they
that were poore / the other caryd not greatly bycause
y^e .ii. kynges had bene so long frendes together / wher-
fore y^e warre dyspleasid them, and⁷ were sory that it
28 enduryd so longe / when the kynge of Nauerne saw
that all his men were issued out of the citey / then he
withdrew hym into his tent / then he closyd in the
citey with a sege abydyng tyll¹ the truce were⁸ ex-
32 pyryd. Nowe let vs leue to speke of this warre
betwene these two kynges, & speke of Florence, who
sayled vpon the see with his louer Claryet.

There shall then
be a month's
truce, after which
the war shall
begin again.

The king of
Arragon pardons
the watchman.

The men of
Navarre depart
from the city,

and close the city
in a siege till the
truce should be
expired.

¹ vntill. ² omitted. ³ vnto. ⁴ Fol. clxiii. col. 2.

⁵ vppon. ⁶ caried. ⁷ they. ⁸ was.

¶ How the shyp wherein Florence ¹ and his
louer was in¹ was taken by the sarasyns,
and all theyr company taken and slayne,
and led to the castel of Anfalerne. 4

Ca. C.lxviii.



The master of the
ship in which
Florence had
taken refuge
learns his
history;

he puts himself
and his ship
under Florence's
orders, so that he
may go where his
father may not
find him.

The master offers
to take him to
Marsellies.

He story² sheweth that after *that* Flor-
ence was departed out of his cowntre
with his loue³ Claryet; how be it he ⁸
knew not what she was / so it was
that the mayster of the shyp that he
was in was of Marcyl⁴ / when he
knew that Florence was sone to kynge Guaryn of 12
Aragon, & that he had put his truste in hym, then he
came to⁵ Florence & sayd / 'syr, the goodnes and
honoure *that* I se in you causeth me to say to⁵ you
that⁶ I wolde not do to another; I wel perseyue by 16
you *that* ye are in great dought of y^e kynge your father,
leste he shulde folowe you to get you agayne / ⁷syr, to
the entente that ye ⁸shall be well assured of me and of
my maryners, I put in to your handes my selfe, my 20
shyppe, and all my maryners / and I wyl⁹ they obeye
you as they haue done me, and that ye be maister ouer
vs al. And, syr, neuer thynke that the kynge of
Aragon, your father, shall trouble you / we be¹⁰ farre 24
ynoughe fro hym: by y^e grace of god we shall so
conducte you that we shall brynge you to the holy
sepulture, & after brynge you¹¹ to marcyl⁴ / and then
fro thence ye maye go whether as it plesse you' / 'syr,' 28
quod Florence, 'of the honour and great courtoysye
that ye offer me, I thanke you' / then all they that were
within the shyppe sayde, 'syr, refuse not to be oure
mayster / for yf the wynde had not bene agaynst vs we 32

1-1 was and his Loue.

² History.

³ Loue.

⁴ Marsellis.

⁵ vnto.

⁶ which.

⁷ but.

⁸ Fol. clxiii. back, col. 1.

⁹ that.

¹⁰ are.

¹¹ bothe.

- had bene farre of by thys tyme / syr, haue no doubte
 we shall all obeie you and do as ye commaunde vs, syn
 it is our maysters pleasure' / 'syr,' quod Florence, 'I
 4 thanke you of your offer, god suffer me to deserue it' /
 Florence was ioyfull of the good aduenture that god had
 sent hym. ¹Thus he and his loue² sayled ioyfully in
 the see of Aufrike. So longe they sayled *that they*
 8 paste the Isles of Corse, and Sardayne, & Cesyll, and
 on a wednysdaye betymes they aryued nere to y^e Isle of
 Candy / there ther³ arose vpon them a maruaylous
 great wynd and tempest, so that parforce they were
 12 dreuen to the coste of Barbary; the tempeste was
 so great that euery man was in fere of drownynge / the
 wawes were great & ferfull / the damoyzell was in
 great doubte when she saw the maryners in suche fere :
 16 ¹she called deuoutly vpon our lorde Iesu chryste, desyr-
 ynge hym to haue petye of her and to brynge them to
 a good porte / when Florence perseuyed his loue² and
 all his⁴ maryners ⁵in suche fere as they were ³in³
 20 he comforted them the best he myght⁶ / but it auayled
 not, for the wynde draue them whether they wold
 or not towards Bongy, nere to a citey namyd as then
 Aufalerne, where as they were fayne to caste theyr
 24 ancre in great fere of lesynge of theyr lyues / then ther
 fel on them a galey wherin were a .C. sarasyns / & another
 great shyp wherin were mo then .iiii. C. men, & they
 all fell vpon Florence shyp / when Florence sawe bothe
 28 the shyppe and galey to set vpon his shyp / the
 mayster of the shyp and the maryners began to wepe,
 and sayd to⁷ Florence, ⁸'syr, you & we all ar lost, we
 shall be all sclaues with y^e sarasyns: yonder galey and
 32 shyp ar full of sarasyns, and they are redy comynge to
 set vpon vs' / when Florence hard that, he sayd, 'syr,

They sail in the
sea of Africa,

and arrive there
on the island of
Candia.

Then a storm
drives them to
the coast of
Barbary.

The wind alarms
all the sailors and
Clarlet.

A large galley and
a ship come
towards them.

They are Saracen
vessels.

¹ and. ² Loue. ³ omitted. ⁴ the.

⁵ Fol. clxiii. back. col. 2. ⁶ could.

⁷ vnto. ⁸ Ah.

Florence implores
all to place their
trust in God.

He bids them
fight vigorously
for their lives.

The battle begins
sharply.

Florence works
marvels.

But many of his
men, with the
master of his
ship, are slain.

Bombs are hurled
on Florence's ship
from the shore.

be not abashed / ¹whom god wyll ayde² can not be
perysshed / no mortal man can hurt hym, let vs put our
trust in hym, and take suche grace as he wyll sende
vs / the great nombre of people can not hurt vs yf god ⁴
wyll ayde vs / let vs shewe our selfe lyke men, they be
without lawe and without fayth / and we byleue in
god; ³ let vs arme our selues and shew our selues lyke
men to defende our lyues' / when the mayster and the ⁸
maryners harde Florence, they sayd / 'syr, ⁴in the
saueguard of our lorde Iesu chryst, and vnto⁴ you we
commyt our selues' / then they all armed them / and
euery man stode at theyr defence / then Florence sayde / ¹²
'syr, let vs all thynke that ve nowe do fyght for our
lyues, and therefore let vs not be abashed, euery man
thynke to do his beste that he can / I loue by amours /
beholde her here ⁵by me⁵ by whome I am so moued to ¹⁶
do well / and to defende bothe her & me' / 'syr,' quod
they, 'shame haue he *that* ⁶fayntethe' / then the shyp
and the galey came nere to Florence shyppe; then the
shotte of both partyes flewe so thycke as though it had ²⁰
bene snow: there was a great bataile betwene them,
great hurte was done with castynge downe⁷ of barres
⁸out of⁸ the toppes / two tymes Floren[ce] entered into
the shyppe of his enemyes, wheras he dyd maruellous, ²⁴
and slewe so many sarasyns that the water was red with
the blode of them that were slayne of bothe partyes /
there was an orryble batayle / many of Florence men
were slayne / the good maister was slayne and the ²⁸
most parte of his men. Also fro the lond there were
shot bombardis and gonnes at Florence shyppe, so that
therby, and with the great barres of Iron the shyp was
sore enpayryd, for it was stryken thrughe in a .C. ³²
places, so⁹ that the see enteryd with great abundaunce /

¹ hee. ² saue. ³ by whome we trust to be saued.
⁴⁻⁴ to. ⁵⁻⁵ omitted. ⁶ Fol. clxiii. col. 1. ⁷ out.
 ⁸⁻⁸ from. ⁹ in such sort.

- when the damoyzell sawe that mortall dyscomfyture,
 how there company were slayne and theyr shyp nye full
 of water, & sawe no mo parsones lefte alnye with
 4 Florence but .vi. parsons,¹ she was then in great fere /
 and she thought she had rather enter into the sarasyns
 shyppe then to be drowned in the see / she sawe the
 galeye, the whiche laye ioynynge to the shyppe, she
 8 lepte into the shyppe to saue her lyfe; when Florence
 sawe his louer² in the galey he was nere out of his
 mynde³ for sorowe, and he sawe well⁴ yf he taryed styl
 in his owne shyppe he shulde be drowned / then he
 12 lepte in to the galey whereas his louer² was / and there
 he slewe many a sarasyn, but there were so moche
 people that with force of dartes and speres he was
 borne downe / then they toke and bounde his handes
 16 so sore that the blode ran out at his nayles. Thus
 Flo^brence was taken and all his men slayne and
 drowned excepte some that were taken / then Florence
 wept for petye of them, and sayd / 'a, my father, how
 20 falsely haue you wrought agaynst me / thus by your
 foly I am in great daunger / I shall neuer retourne in
 to my countre without god helpe me' / often tymes he
 beheld his louer² / whome the sarasyns dyd sore bet
 24 and yll entrete⁶ / wherof Florence had suche dys-
 pleasure that he was nere hande out of his wyttes.
 'Alas,' quod Florence,⁷ 'I oughte greatly¹ to be sorow-
 full to se her that I loue best so sore beten and
 28 tormented before my face / O cursed dethe, why
 sufferest thou me to lyue to see this⁸ that my louer²
 shulde be thus delte with, and yet I can not helpe nor
 socoure her,' therwith he wepte, and sodaynely fell in
 32 a swoune amonge the handes of the sarasyns / when the
 damoyzell sawe her louer fallen in a traunce, and sawe

The ship is nearly
shattered: only
six with Florence
are left alive.

Clariet is very
fearful, and think-
ing the ship she
is in will sink,

leaps into the
Saracen's galley.

Florence follows
her in great
alarm, and he is
taken prisoner.

Clariet is beaten
and maltreated.

Florence prays
for death,

and falls down in
a swoon.

¹ omitted. ² Loue. ³ wits. ⁴ that.

⁵ Fol. clxiii. col. 2. ⁶ threaten.

⁷ he. ⁸ day.

Clarlet comes to him, and thinks him dead.

She laments her cruel fate,

and falls down in a trance beside her lover.

Sorbare, the captain of the town and castle on the shore, enters the galley, and pities the lovers, for he was a secret Christian.

Florence and Clarlet are delivered into his hands, and he takes them to the castle.

The other prisoners are sent to various towns, and cruelly ill-used.

hym so pale of colour / she came to¹ hym / and she wente² suerly that he had bene dede, and also the sarasyns sayde the same. Then she cryed out, and said, 'O³ very god,³ why do you consente the dethe of 4 my loue, seynge that we must thus depart for euer, it is no thyng the payne and yll that I suffer / but my sorowe is for the dethe of my loue here before me / I ought to be sorowfull when the moste fayrest,⁴ &⁵ 8 swetest⁶ / & most⁵ ientylest creature of all y^e worlde is thus dede and loste for euer, and the most valyauntest knyght that euer was borne,'⁷ therwith she fell downe in a traunce by her loue /⁷ All that sawe them thought 12 suerly that they had bene both dede without any recouer, and had great petye and compassyon of them / then he that was the capetayne of the towne & castall, who was named Sorbare, cam⁸ into the shyp, and sawe 16 where Florence & his loue⁹ laye one by another as dede, he had great petye of them, for he was a good chrysten man / but he durste not be¹⁰ knowed¹⁰ therof for fere of sleyng / he loued well god, and dyd after¹¹ 20 good seruyce in chrystendome / for by hym the sayd two louers were saued fro the dethe, as ye shall here after¹² / when these .iii. louers were come agayne to themselues / the sarasyns then delyuered them bothe 24 into the capetayns handes /⁷ when Florence saw his swete loue⁹ by hym, he enbracid and kyssed her swetely / the capetayne sorbare, when he sawe the youthe of these two louers, he had great petye of them / 28 but he made therof no semblaunt¹³ / he toke them bothe into the castell with hym, and the other presoners suche as had taken them, brought them into dyuers towers, wheras they were kepte in great mysery / for 32

¹ vnto. ² thought. ³⁻³ good Lord. ⁴ faire.

⁵ omitted. ⁶ sweet. ⁷ and.


⁸ Fol. clxiii. back, col. 1. ⁹ Loue. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ to knowe.

¹¹ afterward. ¹² hereafter. ¹³ semblance.

the sarasyns had no pety of them bycause they were chrystened.

¶ Howe Sorbare the capetayne comforted

- 4 Florence and Claryet / and howe there
aryued .iiii. shyppes with chrysten men by
fortune of the see, and how Florence was
knownen by them. Ca. clxix.

- 8  Hen the capetaine of the castell was
within the castell, and Florence and
his loue¹ with hym / he sayde to
them / 'frendes, I haue great petye of

- 12 you. shewe me what ye be and what

fortune hath brought you hether, syn² ye be³ yonge;

'howe is it that ye wolde aduenture vpon the see wherin
are so many perelles / yf ye shewe me the trouthe ye

- 16 shall lese nothyng therby / for yf I canne I shall set

you in suche a pla[c]e⁵ wheras ye shall be in sauegarde' /

'syr,' quod Florence, 'I shall shewe you all myne
aduenture what so euer fall therof. Syr, knowe for

- 20 trouth⁶ I am sone to kyng Guaryn kyng of Aragon,

and I am departed fro hym in dyspleasure.' Thus

Florence shewed Sorbare all his hole aduenture / and

how he was taken by his father, and howe he scaped

- 24 and his loue¹ also / then he sayd, 'syr, I haue shewed

you the trouthe, I commyt my body and my louers⁷

here into your handes / ⁸In you lyethe our lyfe and

dethe; ye maye do with vs at your pleasure' / and

- 28 therwith he kneled downe / then Sorbare toke hem vp

and sayd / 'fayre sone, be not abasshed, for I haue bene

or⁹ this tyme in as great aduenture / haue no doubte I

shall so order the matter that ye shall be out of all

The captain in-
quires of the
condition of the
fugitives,

and promises
them all assist-
ance.

Florence tells his
history.

¹ Loue. ² seeing. ³ so.

⁴ Fol. clxiii. back, col. 2. ⁵ plate in text. ⁶ that.

⁷ Loues. ⁸ for. ⁹ before.

The captain bids
his servants offer
no hurt to the
damsel,

and tells Florence
how he once
visited Duke
Huon, and saw
his fair daughter.

Florence and
Clarlet are placed
in separate
chambers.

Clarlet laments
her loneliness,
and complains of
Oberon for having
given his realm to
her father.

parayle / but kepe euery thyng secrete to your selfe'¹ /
then Sorbare called to² him .iiii. of his seruauntes and
sayde / 'I commaunde you to³ do no rudenes to³ this
presoner⁴ nor to⁴ this damoyssel / but⁴ lette them haue⁴
brede, fleshe & wyne at theyr pleasure / as I had when
I was presoner at Terascon / fayre sone,' quod Sorbare
to Florence, 'knowe for trouthe⁵ I was ones kynge of
Belmaryn / & ones I fought with Aymery of Narbone, 8
and I was taken by the handes of Reynalt of Beau-
lande / then I was brought to⁶ the citey of Burdeaux,
wheras I sawe a noble prynce namyd duke Huon, who
had wedded a noble lady called Esclaramonde, doughter 12
to the admyrall Gaudes / 'they had a doughter wel-
beloued with⁷ ⁸them / she was the fayreste damoyssel⁹
that euer I sawe,¹⁰ she passed¹¹ not¹² at that tyme vi.
yere of age / and as I harde say syn there came to 16
Burdeaux dyuers kynges and great prynces for to haue
had her in maryage / then I cam preuely to myne
vncle who gaue me this castell to kepe when he sawe
that I had loste all myne owne realme / and bycause 20
I was well entretyd¹³ amonge y^e chrysten men I wyll
that these presoners be well delte withal' / 'syr,' quod
his seruauntes, 'syn¹⁴ it is your pleasure we shall ac-
complysshe the same.' then they toke Florence and the 24
damoyssel and dyd set them in a towre eche of them
in a chaumbre apart, wherof they were¹⁵ sorowfull /
when the fayre damoyssel sawe that she was put fro
her loue she was ryght sory / she began then¹⁶ to com- 28
playne and said / 'a, my ryght dere father¹⁷ and dere
mother Esclaramonde, I maye well hate the acquaynt-
aunce that ye haue had with kynge Oberon / for by
hym I haue lost you both. ye haue forgotten me in this 32

¹ selues. ² vnto. ³⁻³ vse well. ⁴⁻⁴ and.

⁵ that. ⁶ to to *in text*. ⁷ of.

⁸ Fol. clvii [clxv]. col. 1. ⁹ Ladie. ¹⁰ did see

¹¹ was. ¹² aboue. ¹³ entertained. ¹⁴ seeing.

¹⁵ right. ¹⁶ then *after sory*. ¹⁷ Duke Huon.

- worlde when ye leue me in this pryson / a, kynge
 Oberon, thou hast done me great yll & damage when
 thou dydest geue ¹to¹ my father thy realme, whereas is
 4 the citey of Momure,² wheras nowe is the duke my
 father and y^e duches my mother: I haue lost the
 flowre of all my kyn,³ I am sure⁴ I muste⁵ dye in this
 towre for⁶ sorowe. A, false deth, thou dydest me great
 8 yll that thou tokest not me when I was yonge and
 lytell. I yeld myselfe to god ¹and to his dere mother¹
 whom I requyre to haue petye of me / and wolde to
 god that I were in company with my loue Florence /
 12 the capetayne hathe done yll thus to separte vs a
 sonder, for yf I were with hym I shuld the better pas
 the tyme / yf ⁷his father knewe of what lynage I am
 of and whose doughter I am he wolde not haue refused
 16 to haue geuen me his sone in maryage / but he shall
 not know it¹ for me what so euer payne I suffer.
 Florence, who was⁸ in the chaumbre nexte aboue⁹ the
 chaumbre where as the fayre damoyzell Claryet was /
 20 who had well harde the complayntes that she had made
 before, and vnderstode euery worde that she had
 spoken, wherof he was the ioyfullest man at his hart
 lyuynge / for yf he loued her wel before then he loued
 24 her moche better / ²then he loked out at a wyndow
 wheras he saw Sorbare walkyng vp and downe in the
 courte of the castell. Then Florence requyred hym to
 haue petye and compassyon of the damoyzell beyng
 28 in the towre alone / 'frend,' quod Sorbare, 'suffer a
 season.¹⁰ I shall sette you bothe in suche a place or¹¹
 it be nyght that ye shall be bothe ioyfull / be not
 abashed / for the loue of you I shall leue the lawe of
 32 Mahomet, and byleue on¹² our lord Iesu chryst / ¹³when
 it is nyght and euery man a¹² bed / we shall enter into

Florence over-
hears her com-
plaint,

and appeals to
Sorbare to permit
him to rejoin her.

Sorbare renews
his promise to
save them both,
and offers to turn
Christian.

¹⁻¹ omitted. ² and. ³ kindred and. ⁴ that.
⁵ shall. ⁶ with. ⁷ Fol. clvii [clxv]. col. 2. ⁸ aboue.
⁹ vnto. ¹⁰ for a time. ¹¹ before. ¹² in. ¹³ for.

a galeye that lyeth here by: but as for your other men that be presoners abroad in the towne / it wolde be hard for me to get them out of preson.' 'Then I pray to¹our lorde Iesu chryste,'¹ quod Florence, 'to ayd & 4 socoure them in theyr great nede.' Great pitye had Sorbare when he harde Florence so peteously pray for the sauegarde of his men whome he muste leue behind him yf god socour hym not: then Sorbare sawe com- 8 ynge to² the port warde³ .iiii. great shyppes wherein there were a⁴ two thousande pylgremes who were comynge⁵ fro Ierusalem⁵ warde³ fro the holy sepulture / but by fortune of the see & force of y^e wynd they were 12 constrayned⁶ to aryue there / then the capetayne wente vp into the towre to se Florence whome he toke by the hande and sayd / 'frend, yonder ye maye se .iiii. great shyppes full of people comynge hether by force of the 16 wynde / let vs go downe and se what they be and who is theyr capetayne' / 'syr,' quod Florence, 'I am redy to folowe your pleasure / my body & my loue⁷ I comyt to your sauegarde' / then the capetayne sente for 20 the damoyzell, & when Florence sawe her he was ryghte ioyfull and sayd, 'dere loue,⁸ be no thyng afayed / the capetayne and I wyll go downe to the see syde to knowe what people be yonder that comethe in 24 yonder shyppes / and anone we wyll retourne agayne to⁹ you' / 'syr,' quod the damoyzell, 'god be youre gyde' / Sorbare and Florence went downe to the hauen syde / 10 when the shyppes aryued they saw wel¹¹ there 28 was moche¹² people, and parseyued well howe¹¹ they were chrysten men. Then Sorbare saluted them and sayde / 'syrs, ye be wellcome. I praye you¹³ shewe me fro whence ye come, & what ye seke for in these 32

Four great ships conveying 2000 pilgrims to Jerusalem come in sight.

Florence and Sorbare go down to make inquiries of them.

¹⁻¹ god. ² towards. ³ omitted. ⁴ more then.

⁵⁻⁵ at Ierusalem after sepulture.

⁶ Fol. clvii [clxv]. back, col. 1. ⁷ Loues. ⁸ Loue.

⁹ vnto. ¹⁰ and. ¹¹ that. ¹² many.

¹³ to.

partyes, & what ye bë.' Then the chefe mayster of
 them answered and sayde / 'syr, we be of the realme The captain tells
 Sorbare they come
 from France.
 of fraunce, and we come nowe fro Ierusalem fro the
 4 pylgrymage of the holy sepulture: and the force of the
 wynd hath caused vs to aryue here. ¹yf we ought to
 paye anythyng for comynge hether we are redy to pay
 it:' 'syrs,' quod Sorbare, 'syn² this is your aduenture
 8 ye ar hether³ welcome to me / syn ye be here aryued
 it is reason that I be comfortid and ayded by you. ¹I
 say vnto you that I byleue vpon ⁴our lorde god⁴ Iesu
 chryst / but as yet I was neuer chrystened / I shall
 12 shew you, syrs, what ye shall do. yf ye wyl byleue me
 ye neuer came to ⁵so fayre aduenture / ye shall go with
 me into the castell here aboue / in which place I shall
 fornysshe you all with horse & harnays⁶ / then¹ ye
 16 shall abyde in the castell and make no noyse nor shewe
 youre selfe⁷ / then¹ I wyll go to the hauen and
 garnysshe a galey with all thynges necessary / in this
 towre there are many presoners⁸ of⁴ frensshe men who
 20 were taken but late in this hauen, and many were
 slayn, & such as be taken as⁹ presoners in this towne /
 and erly in the mornyng we wyl issue out of the castell
 into the towne and set fyre in dyuers places / then the
 24 sarasyns wyll haue great busynes to rescue and stanche
 the fyre / ¹then we wyll enter into theyr howses & take
 all theyr gooddes and all the presoners and all the ryches
 that we can fynde in the towne we shal put it in to our
 28 shyp: and yf the sarasyns come to asayle our shyppe
 with botes and barges / then lette vs defende our selfe⁷
 as well as we can / and fyrst of all let vs go and take
 all the shyppes *that* be in the hauen' / when the cape.
 32 tayne of y⁸.iiii. shyppes hard Sorbare they praysed
 his aduyse and good counsaile: and they all with one

Sorbare bids them
 welcome.

He tells them of
 the French prison-
 ers in the town,

and how they may
 help him to set
 them free.

¹ and. ² seeing that. ³ after welcome.

⁴⁻⁴ omitted. ⁵ Fol. clvii [clxv]. back, col. 2.

⁶ armour. ⁷ selues. ⁸ presoners *after* men. ⁹ are.

The captain of the
pilgrims inquires
who Florence is.

Sorbare tells him.

The captain
replies that they
are come from the
king of Arragon
to search for him.

acord concluded to do his pleasure / 'syr,' quod Sor-
bare, 'to y^e entent that ye shall byleue me and to haue
of me no maner of suspecte / yf ye wyl haue knowlege
what I am this yong man that ye se here be me can ⁴
enforme you' / 'syr, quod the patron, 'by your vysage
it apereth well that all trouthe is in you, & how¹ that
ye be² a noble man. therefore, syr, ³all we put our
selfe in³ your conducte and grace / but, syr, yf it ⁸
maye be your pleasure to shew vs what yonge lentyll-
man is that we se there by you. ⁴syr, ye shulde do me
a great pleasure, for me thynke I shulde haue sene hym
or⁵ this' / 'patron,' quod ⁶Sorbare, 'syn ye wyll knowe ¹²
it gladly I shall shewe you / syn⁷ he hath dyscouered
hym selfe to me / knowe for trouthe⁸ he is sone to
kyngue Guaryn of Aragon / who by fortune of the see
aryued here ¹there as ye be¹ / and here parforce he was ¹⁶
taken and his men most parte slayn / and with hym
was taken a noble damoyzell who is aboue in my
castell' / when the patron and they that were with hym
vnderstode that it was Florence sone to⁹ kyngue Guarin¹ ²⁰
of Aragon they were therof ryght ioyfull, for they were
all of the realme of Aragon, and sent forthe by the
kyngue to serche for Florence / they thanked ¹⁰our lorde
Iesu chryst¹⁰ of the¹¹ aduenture that he had sent them ²⁴
to fynde Florence there: whome they were sente to
serche for / then they came to Florence and knelyd
downe before them¹² and sayd / 'a, syr, ye ought to
thanke god that we haue founde you. we haue mar- ²⁸
uayle why ye hyde your name fro vs / for we be all
sente fro kyngue Guaryn youre father to serche for you /
for yf god had not sente you this good fortune we
shulde neuer haue hard any tydynges of you / nor haue ³²

¹ omitted.

⁴ truly.

⁸ that.

² are.

⁵ ere.

⁹ the.

³⁻³ we all commit ourselues to.

⁶ Fol. clxvi. col. 1.

¹⁰⁻¹⁰ god.


¹² him.

⁷ seeing.

¹¹ their good.

shewed the kynge your father any thyng to his pleasure.'

¶ Howe Sorbare and Florence & theyr company went in¹ the towne and robbed and spoyled it / and so toke the se with great ioy² and the damoyzell³ Claryet with them, and toke theyr cource to sayle to⁴ the realme of Aragon. Ca. C.lxx.

⁵  Hen the patron & his company knewe and sawe Florence the ioy that they made can not be recounted, nor the chere that they made to Florence when they were entered into the castell / wherof sorbare had great ioy : the same season whyles they made this great ioye and feste⁶ there was in Sorbare's company a sarasyn who vnderstode the language of frenche⁷ / and had well hard the enterpryse that the chrysten men were determyned to do / and also he saw well how sorbare was ioyned to theyr company / then he preuely departed, and hastily he went into the towne and shewed the burgesses and comons of the enterpryse that the chrysten men had concluded to do, & how that Sorbare was become chrysten / when the paynymys⁸ vnderstode that / incontynent they went and armyd them and came to the castell thynkyng to haue wonne it / but they founde there suche defence and resystence that⁹ they dyd there lytell¹⁰ to theyr pro- fyt / yet the assaulte endu¹¹ryd tyll¹² the nexte daye / and at last¹³ were constrayned to withdrawe fro the castel a great space. Florence, who was within, cryed

A Saracen in Sorbare's company overhears the plan to rescue the French prisoners.

The townsmen rise up and attack Sorbare's castle, but to no purpose.

¹ to. ² and triumph. ³ faire Ladie. ⁴ towards.

⁵ Fol. clxvi. col. 2. ⁶ feasting. ⁷ French language.

⁸ Sarasyns. ⁹ that which. ¹⁰ was small.

¹¹ Fol. clxvi. back, col. 1. ¹² vntill. ¹³ they.

As soon as the
Saracens retire,
Sorbare advises
Florence and the
men with him to
issue out and
attack them.

The town is fired,
and many Sara-
cens slain in the
streets.

The prisoners are
rescued.

to them and sayd / 'a, ye false velaynes, ye haue slayne
my men / but yf god suffer me to lyue theyr deth shal
be derely sold¹ / when the paynyns saw that they
coude not atayne to the castel / then they blew the 4
retrayte; and euery man retourned to theyr owne house.
Then Sorbare sayde to Florence and his company /
'syr, I aduyse you all to lepe on youre horses / for now
the paynyns are returned to theyr logynye wery of 8
theyr trawayle, and many of them sore hurte, and they
are in great fere; I knowe theyr condycyons well
ynoughe / and bycause that after trauayle and laboure
a man is febelyd & full of fere / and now eury man 12
is in his owne house and vnarmed to be at theyr ease /
therfore I counsaile that incontynent² Issue out and
set vpon the towne.' Then Florence and all the other
seyd / 'syr, as ye haue deuysed we ar redy to do it / 16
for a more noble counsaile was neuer geuen' / then eury
man made hym redy and ^{so}³ issued out of the castell,
and Florence and Sorbare went before them and
sessyd⁴ not tyll⁵ they were entered into the towne, 20
for ther enter⁶ coude not be defended, for⁷ the castell
ioyned to a corner of the towne: then they made a
great crye and spred abroad in the towne and put in
fyre in dyuers places / and slewe downe the paynyns 24
in the stretes and market places / fynally, they dyd so
moche by force of armes that they brought the towne
vnder theyr subieccyon / and the enhabytauntes therof⁸
slayne, ^{none}³ spared,³ and all the chrysten presoners 28
rescued, who had great ioy when they saw Florence,
theyr lord, whom they thought ^{had}⁹ bene dede / great
ryches that day was wonne in that towne, the which
was geuen and departed to¹⁰ them that had deserued it / 32
& Florence gaue to the chrysten presoners great ryches /

¹ bought. ² we. ³⁻³ omitted. ⁴ rested.

⁵ vntill. ⁶ entring. ⁷ because. ⁸ all.

⁹ Fol. clxvi. back, col 2. ¹⁰ vnto.

- thus when the towne was wonne and the ryches there
of put into theyr shyppes / then¹ they all departed and
set fyre on al the cite / then they went into the castel,
4 wheras the damoyssel Claryet was, who had great ioy
when she sawe Florence her louer / ^{Florence at length} ^{rejoins Clariet,} then² Sorbare, who
had great desyre to departe³ thence, toke all the treasure
and ryches & had it into theyr shyppes, and vytayled
8 them with all thynges necessary / then when it was
daye in the mornynge they departed fro the castell &
wente to theyr shyppes with great ioye / Florence ^{and preparations} ^{for their return}
holdynge his louer⁴ by the hande / sayde vnto her / ^{to Arragon are} ^{made.}
12 'dere louer,⁴ kynge Guaryn, my father, hath sente to
seke for me all aboute bothe by londe and by water /
and these *that* be come here with these shyppes were
sent forthe by the kynge, my father, to serche for me' /
16 when the damoyzell hard how Florence wold brynge
her agayne to his father she had great fere, and said,
'syr, ye knowe ryghte well the great hate and dys-
pleasure that your father hathe to you and to¹ me / for
20 god sake, syr, let vs go some other waye : ' 'dere
louer,⁴ quod florence, 'haue no fere of my father ; for
yf ye ⁵wolde haue⁵ shewed youre name & what ye be
or⁶ this tyme / it had easid vs of moche payne.' 'A,
24 syr,' quod she, 'it is not as ye wene it were' / 'well,'
quod Florence, 'it is suffycient to me as it is' / then
they hoysed vp theyr sayles & so sayled tyll⁷ they were
fare of fro that londe. ²Sorbare was ryght ioyful in
28 *that* he had saued y^e chrysten men / and for the loue
of Florence he forsoke his owne lawe and his countre /
then ⁸he sayde to⁹ Florence / 'syr, my body and
goodes I abandon to you in suche wyse *that* I shall
32 neuer leue you for lyfe nor deth' / 'syr,' quod Florence,
'of the goodnes and trouthe that ye haue shewed me,

Clariet fears the
king of Arragon.

Sorbare promises
never to abandon
Florence.

¹ omitted. ² and. ³ from. ⁴ Loue.
⁵⁻⁶ had. ⁶ before. ⁷ vntill. ⁸ Fol. clxvii. col. 1.
⁹ vnto.

I thanke you, and I shall neuer haue peny worthe, but the halfe shalbe yours.'

Nowe let vs leue spekyng of them saylynge ioyfully on the see towards Aragon / and let vs speke 4 of kyng Guaryn, who was besegid within y^e cite of Courtoys by his brother in lawe, the kyng of Nauerne.

¶ How kyng Huon, kyng of the fayrey, sente two of his knyghtes to the two kynges / and 8 howe he apered betwene them with a great nombre / and of the peas that he made betwene them. Ca. C.lxxi.



The truce between the king of Navarre and King Guaryn is within two days of ending.

A mysterious voice rises from the earth and addresses the combatants.

¶ Ell haue ye harde before howe that after 12 the kyng of Nauerne had taken kyng Guaryn presoner, and that truse was taken for a sartayne space / and then eche of them to shewe theyr powers / 16 so it fell that two dayes before the brekyng vp of y^e trewse, and that theyr aydes and pursaunces were assembled together: the one partye within the cite and the other without with the kyng of Nauerne, who sore 20 thretened kyng Guaryn / bycause he had banysshed awaye his sone Florence, his nephue / and sayd he had rather dye then such an yll kyng ¹shulde not be punysshed / this kyng of Nauerne had assembled 24 suche a nombre of people that the valayes and hylees were couered with men of warre / & y^e nyght before the truse brake vp there was hard in the ayre a ferfull voyse / the whiche when it began to speke / the erth 28 trymbelyd and thondered and lyghtened so that all they that were there assembled / as well they within as without had suche fere that they were lykely to haue ryn awaye / then the voyse began to speke / 32

¹ Fol. clxvii. col. 2.

- and sayde / 'syr, ye that be here in the felde redy to
 fyght of bothe partyes make no haste to ioyn together
 in batayle, for suche ayde and socoure shall be sent to
 4 you bothe that ye shall be all ioyfull' / therwith the
 voyce passed awaye & was hard no more, wherby both
 partyes wer abasshed, and all the nyght they were in¹
 theyr prayers / besechyng ²our lord Iesu chryste² to
 8 ayde and socoure them / kyng Guaryn was sore abasshid
 when he hard the voyce, and sayde / 'O, ³very god,³
 if this⁴ people that is⁵ assembelyd be slayne by my
 meanes and for me / my sowle shall be lost for euer /
 12 Alas, my sone Florence, I was yll counsailed when I
 chasyd you awaye fro me, I dyd great syn when I
 dyd⁶ put you in pryson, I am very⁷ of my lyfe / it
⁸skyllethe not of my dethe⁸ / I am more sory for you,
 16 my dere sone, whome I haue betrayed and dreuyn away
 with out⁹ cause / Alas, by my meanes this realme shall
 be wasted & dystroyed, y^e whiche ye ought to haue
 after me' / therwith he swouned amonge his lordes, so¹⁰
 20 they all thoughte he had bene dede, wherof they sore
 complayned / ¹¹at last the kyng came agayne to hym-
 selfe / then his lordes comforted hym / and so had¹² hym
 to here mas,¹³ and after mas¹³ there apered sodaynely
 24 ¹⁴before hym two goodly yonge knyghtes / the one was
 Gloryand and the other Malabron / they were two
 knyghtes of the fayrey / then they all smyllynge saluted
 the kynge, and sayde / 'syr,¹⁵ kynge Huon of Burdeaux
 28 salutethe the by vs, he is kynge of all the fayrey, ¹¹he
 wyll come to ayd the and to defende thy lond : and ¹⁶he
 wyll that thou knowest / how¹⁰ he is father to y^e fayre
 damoyssel Claryet, whom thou namest the newe founde
 32 damoyssel, and bycause thou hast banished fro the

It promises a
 speedy and a
 peaceful settle-
 ment of the dis-
 pute between
 them.

King Guaryn
 feels remorse for
 having banished
 his son.

Two goodly young
 knights suddenly
 approach him.
 They are the
 fairies Gloriand
 and Malabron,
 and promise the
 King Huon's aid.

¹ at. ²⁻³ God. ³⁻³ good Lord. ⁴ these. ⁵ are.

⁶ omitted. ⁷ wearie.

⁸⁻⁸ is no matter though I die, and. ⁹ a. ¹⁰ that.

¹¹ and. ¹² bad. ¹³ Seruice.

¹⁴ Fol. clxvii. back, col. 1. ¹⁵ Royall. ¹⁶ also.

They tell of the marriage he will make between Florence and Clariet.

The two fairies return to Huon

and remind him of the peril of Florence and Clariet on the sea. Huon promises to go to Courtois with a mighty army.

Huon tells Esclaramonde

thy sone Florence / he wyl come to the to make the
 peas betwene the and thy brother in lawe the kyng of
 nauerne / & he wyl make the maryage betwene thy
 sone Florence and Claryet his doughter' / when kyng 4
 Guaryn harde the knyght of the fayrey he had such
 ioy at his hart that his wyl not what to do nor¹
 saye /² he came to the knyght and enbraced hym, all
 wepyng, and sayde / 'syrs, knowe for trouthe, my 8
 body, my lyfe, and all that I haue I submytte it into
 the handes of y^e good kyng Huon to do therwith at
 his pleasure' / with those wordes the .ii. knyghtes
 vanysshed awaye, no man wyl how nor whether, so³ 12
 euery man had great maruayle / kyng Guaryn and his
 lordes lyfte vp theyr handes to the heuen, makynge
 the syngne of the crosse, recommaundyng themselfe to
 4our lorde⁴ Iesu chryste / and y^e two knyghtes restyd 16
 not tyll⁵ they cam to the citeye of Momure to kyng
 Huon, and shewed hym what they had done & sayd to
 kyng Guaryn / and shewed Huon of the daye of batayle
 that was taken betwene the two kynges, and sayde / 20
 'syr, haue petye of Florence and of Claryet, your
 doughter, who are as nowe on the see in a great tem-
 pest' / then Huon sayd / 'surely they and I shal be
 shortely before⁶ the citeye of Courtois with suche⁴ a 24
 nombre of people that the erthe shall be coueryd with
 them / to the entent that yf any⁷ of these⁸ kynges
 wyll⁴ do contrary to my wyll I shall dystroye hym for
 euer / for shortely I wyll that my doughter Claryet 28
 shal be duches of Burdeloys / ²she is so fayre that
 there is none lyke her, & I shall⁹ shew the great loue
 that I haue¹⁰ to her' / then Huon called to hym Esclara-
 monde, and sayde: 'lady, ye shall se this daye the 32
 thyng that ye¹¹ desyre⁴ sore⁴ to se, that is your

¹ or. ² and. ³ that. ⁴⁻⁴ omitted. ⁵ vntill.
⁶ Fol. clxvii. back, col. 2. ⁷ either. ⁸ those two.
⁹ wil. ¹⁰ beare. ¹¹ much.

doughter Claryet / to whome I gyue her in¹ gyfte, that she shall be byloued of euery man, and I wyll that fro hense forthe she shall gyue largely gyftes & rewardes
 4 to ladyes, damoysselles, knyghtes, and squyers; for I wyll that fro henseforth she haue her pleasure with out sufferynge of any more yll or parell, for she hath suffered ynoughe / this daye was fayre and clere, and
 8 with in y^e citey of courtoyse there was moche² people assemblid / and they were in great deuocyon / some made masses³ to be song, and some were confessed and ordered them selues towards the batayle. Then kyng
 12 Guaryn commaunded euery man to lepe on⁴ theyr horses redy armyd / then⁵ the kyng hym selfe mounted⁶ and so⁶ issued out of the citey / and commaunded his constable and marshalles to ordayne .iii. batayles in the
 16 name of god⁷ and saynt Gorge.⁷ Kyng Guaryn had assemblid a great nombre of men, he had mo then .l.M. men / there ye myght haue sene ladyes & damoysselles and burgesses / that wepte for fere of theyr
 20 frendes, husbondes / fathers, and bretherne,⁷ whome they sawe goynge to⁸ the batayle warde⁷ / ⁵they went all to y^e walles / ⁷and the⁷ colleges & churches⁹ with theyr crosses and baners went¹⁰ on processyon praying⁹
 24 for the good spede of theyr kyng and of theyr frendes. Now let vs leue spekyng of these two kynges, who were redy in the feldes renyd in order of batayle, the one agaynste the other / and let vs speke of kyng
 28 Huon / who called before hym all his lordes of the fayrey / there was the fayre esclaramonde, and Gloryand, and Malabron, and many other knyghtes of the fayrey / then kyng Huon sayde / 'syrs, ye all know well that
 32 by the wyll of god / kyng Oberon whyles he leued gaue me all his realme / and sygnory and pusanee

how she shall soon see their daughter Clariet.

King Guaryn with his army issues forth from the town of Courtols.

Huon calls all his fairy lords about him.

¹ the. ² many. ³ Service. ⁴ vpon. ⁵ and.

⁶⁻⁶ then they. ⁷⁻⁷ omitted. ⁸ towards.

⁸⁻⁸ to pray to God. ¹⁰ Fol. clxviii. col. 1.

He bids them
prepare for war.

that he had ouer all the fayrey of the worlde / therby
then I may haue all my commaundementes fullyllyd /
then syn god hath geuen me this gyfte / I wyll not
suffer the manslaughter and murder *that* is lyke to be 4
betwene the two kynges of Aragon and Nauerne /
therefore I wysshe myselfe with two .C.M. men wel
armyd and rychely besene¹ and all mounted on good
horses / and also I wysshe to haue as many on fote² / 8
furnysshed with bowes and crosbowes. Also I wysshe
a .C.M. to be aparayled in gownes of cloth of gold and
sylke / and also I wysshe for my doughter Claryet,
whome I haue lefte a longe tyme in payne and mysery, 12
wherof I repente me / for myne entencyon is to mary
her to Florence, son to kyng Guaryn of Aragon, the
whiche Florence is so fayre : so hardy and so humble
and curtoyse that in all the worlde there is none lyke 16
hym / I wysshe hym & al his company and Sorbare
with him to be at the hauen of courtoyse. Also I
wysshe my tente in the medow betwene the hostes of
the two kynges, and I wyl that my tent be suche that 20
there be none lyke it in all the worlde, and on³ the top
'therof I wyll there be pyght a dragon of fyne golde' /
kyng Huon had no soner made his wysshe but he and
all his company were there as he had deuysed. when 24
the kyng of Nauerne sawe so moch⁵ people and so
many tentes and paulyons so nere hym / and that he
sawe the ryche and pusaunt paulyon of kyng Huons
with the flambynge dragon / he was greatly maruayled.⁶ 28
Then he called his lordes and knyghtes and sayd / 'syr,
behold what people are yonder before us logyng, me
thynke I neuer sawe so many together in all my lyfe /
I wote not what it maye⁷ be, I am in doubte' / then he 32
called to⁸ hym two knyghtes, and said / 'syr, go

He orders a won-
drous tent for
himself.

Suddenly the
fairy band, with
Huon at its
head, is trans-
ported to the
scene of the war-
fare between King
Guaryn and the
king of Navarre.

¹ by seeming. ² on fote *after* crosbowes. ³ vppon.

⁴ Fol. clxviii. col. 2.

⁵ many.

⁶ dismayed.

⁷ should.

⁸ vnto.

- thether and knowe what people they be & what they
 means: or¹ whether they be frendes or enemyes, and
 who is chefe ouer them.' 'Syr,' quod y^e two knyghtes,
 4 'we wyll not go thether, for we knowe not whether
 they be oure enemyes or not' / when the kyng of
 Nauerne vnderstode *that* those knyghtes nor none other
 wolde go thether he was sorowful / as the kyng was
 8 thus deuysynge / thether came the two knyghtes of the
 fayrey, Gloryand and Malabron / then Gloryand sayd /
 'syr,² kyng of Nauerne, kyng Huon of Burdeaux hath
 sent vs to you, and commaundeth you that ye make peas
 12 betwene you & kyng Guaryn, for he wyll gyue his
 daughter Claryet to your nephue Florence, who is the
 fayrest lady of y^e world' / when the kyng of Nauerne
 vnderstode the³ two messangers sente fro kyng Huon,
 16 he was ryght ioyful / and commaunded all his lordes to
 go with hym to kyng Huon / they obeyed his com-
 maundement and rode with hym tyll⁴ he came before
 the ryche paulyon of kynges Huons / wheras they
 20 alyghted and were wel receyued; then the kyng of
 Nauerne saluted kyng Huon / who sayde, 'syr, ye be
 welcome' / ¹then y^e kyng of Nauerne knelyd-downe
 before kyng Huon & sayde, 'syr, I am redy to ful-
 24 fyll your pleasure:' then Gloryand toke the kyng of
 Nauerne by the arme and reysyd hym vp / and set hym
 downe by kyng Huon and Esclaramonde: then kyng
 Huon sente for kyng Guaryn / who incontynent came
 28 to hym accompanied with a .M. knyghtes / ¹when he
 was come he saluted kyng Huon and sayde, 'syr, ye
 be⁶ welcome into my countre of Aragon, the whiche I
 offer to you to do therwith at your pleasure / and, syr,
 32 all that ye haue commaunded me to do by your two
 knyghtes I am redy to accomplysshe,' and there he
 shewed 'all wepyng⁷ to kyng Huon / the occasyon

The king of
Navarre's knights
fear to approach
the new-comers.

Gloryand and
Malabron come
to him,
and bring com-
mands from Huon
to make peace
with King
Guaryn.

With all his lordes
he goes to Huon's
tent,

and offers to do
his pleasure.

Huon sends for
King Guaryn.

Guaryn also pro-
mises to submit
to Huon, and
rehearses the
causes of the war.

¹ and.² omitted.³ these.⁴ vntill.⁵ Fol. clxviii. back, col. 1.⁶ are.⁷ 1-7 after Huon.


Huon tells him
how Claret is
his daughter,
and will marry
Florence.

of the warre, and of his sone Florence, who for the loue
of a new found damoyzell was put in pryson, wherof
he repented him, for he said¹ 'there was not a fayrer
damoyzell in the worlde, & for the loue of her ⁴
Florence, my son, is departed fro me, & I thynke
I shall neuer se hym more.' 'Syr² kyng Guaryn,'
quod Huon, 'know for trouthe¹ shortely ye shall se
them both come hether to me / for I wyll mary them ⁸
together: the damoyzell is my doughter, and ³hathe
to ³ name⁴ Claryet / and I wyll ye knowe she is
noble and issued of a royall lynage / ⁵none more noble
in this countre / she hathe bought her desteny ryght ¹²
derely' / when kyng Guaryn knew that the noble
damoyssel was doughter to kyng Huon, and *that* he
wolde make a maryage betwene her and his sone
Florence, and that they shulde come thether shortely / ¹⁶
he was neuer so ioyfull in all his lyfe before: then he
knelyd downe before kyng Huon, and cryed hym
marcy, ⁶and sayde / 'a, syr, howe maye it be that in
myne old dayes suche a grace may come to me, as to ²⁰
haue againe my dere sone / & that the noble damoyssel
whome I haue done so moche yll vnto shall be his
wyfe.' Then kyng Huon rose vp and sayd / 'syr⁷
kyng, haue no doubte but that ye shall haue your sone / ²⁴
for I canne not so sone wysse for hym / but they shall
be ⁸with me⁸ where soeuer they be in the world' / wher
of all they that were presente had great maruayle /
'syr,' quod the quene Esclaramonde, 'when shal the ²⁶
owre come that I myght⁹ se my dere² doughter
Claryet / ¹⁰syr, ye knowe well¹ I ¹¹am come¹¹ hether
with you for none other cause: 'dame,'¹² quod Huon,
'ye shall se her shortely.' 32

Queen Esclara-
monde longs to
see her daughter.

¹ that. ² omitted. ³⁻³ her. ⁴ is. ⁵ there is.
⁶ Fol. clxviii. back, col. 2. ⁷ noble. ⁸⁻⁸ both here.
⁹ may. ¹⁰ and. ¹¹⁻¹¹ came. ¹² madame.

¶ How Florence and Claryet aryued &¹ theyr
company, and came to kynge Huon, and of
the great ioye that was made at theyr com-
4 ynge / and there² they were wedded together
and the peas confermyd betwene y^e two
kynges. Ca. C.lxxii.

8  Hen kynge Huon sawe the q[ue]ne
his wyfe wepe his harte tendered and
sayde / 'a, my dere daughter Claryet,
great petye I haue of you and of
Florence the hardy. I wysse you

Huon is touched
at Esclaramonde's
grief for the ab-
sence of Clariet,

12 bothe and all your company here at the porte on the
see-syde / as rychely aparayled as euer was quene or
prynces departynge out of theyr house to be maryed /
& that with you there be ladyes and damoysselles

and expresses his
wish to see her
and Florence
richly apparelled
in his presence.

16 rychely aparayled: and of the fayrest *that* be in my
realme of the fayrey': he had no soner made his wysse
but that shyppes and galeys aryued at the porte: &
anone Florence and Claryet were in the medow rychely

Straightway they
arrive in ships,
amid melodious
music.

20 acompanyed with trompettys: tabours:⁴ harpes:
vyalles: and lutes and all other instrumentes, the
which sowned so melodiously that it semyd to all the
herers that they were rauysshed into paradyse, & also

24 there were ladyes and damoysselles & knyghtes of the
fayrey syngynge ryght swetely / the herers semyd⁵ to
be aungelles of paradyse / and they were aparayled
richely,⁶ garnished with precyous stones, so that with

28 y^e sonne strykyng⁷ on⁸ them: they shynyd⁹ in such
wyse that who souer had sene them wold haue thought
that god and all the court of paradyse had bene there
assembelyd / thus Florence came with .iiii. M. men

3000 men bear
Florence com-
pany, and Clariet

32 makynge great ioye. After¹⁰ came rydynge y^e fayre

¹ there with. ² how. ³ Fol. clxix. col. 1.
⁴ omitted. ⁵ thought them. ⁶ and. ⁷ shining.
⁸ vpon. ⁹ glittered. ¹⁰ him.

follows riding on
a rich palfrey,

with two fairy
ladies, Morgan
and Oriand.

After these come
Transelyne and
many damsels of
fairy-land.

Huon and Esclara-
monde go to meet
Florence and
Clariet.

Huon and his
wife kiss their
daughter.

Claryet on¹ a ryche palfrey ambelynge, so fresshely
harnaysyd² and rychely aparayled that in all the worlde
there was none suche: the harnays³ hangunge full of
4belles of syluer⁴ / makynge so swete a noyse that 4
maruayle it was to here them: yf I shulde dyscryue
the beautye & ryches that was on her palfrey, it shulde
be to longe to reherse / this lady Claryet⁵ was acom-
panied with .ii. notable ladyes of the fayrey / the one was 8
Morgan, and the other Oryand⁶ / who came syngynge
after Claryet. Then after came the lady Transelyne
with many damoyseles of ye fayrey / great ioye there
was made: ⁷then kynge Huon sayd to Esclaramonde 12
his wyfe / 'dame,⁸ it is tyme that ye depart, for I se
yonder comynge to⁹ vs ¹⁰warde¹⁰ my doughter Claryet
and Florence' / when Esclaramonde harde that she was
ryghte ioyfull for the great desyre that she had to se 16
her doughter: the quene went forth hyely¹¹ acom-
panied / then kynge Huon & the other .ii. kynges with
all theyr companies, with baners dysplayed with great
ioye & treumphe wente to mete Florence and Claryet: 20
ye may well thynke that kynge Guaryn had great ioye
of the comynge of his sone, and sawe suche an assemble
mete there together to receiue him. he deuoutly thanked
our lord ¹²Iesu christ.¹² Thus these kynges & prynces 24
wente to mete these .ii. yonge parsons rychely acom-
panied / so⁷ great ioy had Claryet when she saw the
quene her mother before her that⁷ she wepte for in-
warde ioye that she had / & when the quene sawe her 28
doughter she enbrased and kissed her often tymes, and
of a great season none of them coud speke to other,
¹⁰theyr hartes were so ouer come¹⁰ for ioye / then kynge
Huon came & toke his doughter out of the quenes 32
armes / and kyssed her mo then .xx. tymes / Then

¹ vpon. ² garnished. ³ armour. ⁴⁻⁴ siluer bels.

⁵ Fol. clxix. col. 2. ⁶ Glorianda. ⁷ and. ⁸ Madame.

⁹ towarde. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ omitted. ¹¹ nobly. ¹²⁻¹² god.

- kyng Guaryn came to¹ Florence & sayd, 'dere sone, I haue sore² trespassed agaynst you / in that wrongfully .I put you into my presone / ³I complayne greatly to
 4 you of your vncle the kyng of Nauerne who hath wasted your countre' / 'syr,' quod Florence, 'I requyre you⁴ pardon my vncle / ⁵reason is⁶ that I shulde be content that peas⁷ be made betwen you / and, syr, I
 8 requyre⁸ you⁴ gyue me this damoyssel in maryage.' 'son,' quod kyng⁶ Guaryn: be in suerte⁹ ye shall haue her & none other / for a more noble lady can not be founde in this⁶ .x. realmes' / 'syr,' quod Florence,
 12 'I thanke you' / ³thus these .ii. companyes ioyned together / and the kyng of Nauerne came to his nephue Florence, and enbrasyd hym and sayd / 'fayre nephue, of your retourne I am ryghte ioyous'¹⁰ / 'syr,' quod he,
 16 'I am well plesed with the peas that is made betwene my father and you' / Thus they rode tyll¹¹ they came to the tentes & there alyghtyd / then kyng Huon called the other two kynges and sayde / 'syrs, howe
 20 saye you, wyll ye abyde by myne aduyce and put into myne handes the dyscorde that hathe bene betwene you?' / they answeyrd⁹ they were content to do as he wold haue them. Then kyng Huon sayd / 'syrs, then
 24 my wyll is that peas and acorde be betwene you and all yours' / and they lyberally agreed therto, wherof kyng Huon was ioyfull. Then kyng Huon desyred Florence to shewe his aduenture, and how he was rescued by
 28 sorbare. Then Florence shewed al his aduentures: ³y⁶ other kynges were ryght ioyfull to here it, and all other that harde it, and¹² greatly prayesd¹³ Sorbare for his dede: and¹⁴ honorid hym greatly⁶ and made hym great
 32 feaste¹⁵ and chere / and caused hym to be chrystened.

King Guaryn asks pardon of his son Florence.

Guaryn promises that he shall marry Claret.

The king of Navarre also comes up and embraces Florence, his nephew.

The two kings make peace.

Florence recites his adventures.

Sorbare is greatly honoured and is baptized.

¹ vnto.² much.³ and.⁴ to.⁵ it is.⁶ omitted.⁷ Fol. clxix. back, col. 1.⁸ desire.⁹ that.¹⁰ ioyfull.¹¹ vntill.¹² dyd.¹³ praise.¹⁴ moch.¹⁵ feasting.

Huon gives
Florence and
Claret three
cities.

The marriage is
solemnized with
much festivity.

Then kyng Huon sayd to the .ii. kynges, 'Syr, I wyll that presently eche of you do pardon other¹ all yll wyll.' 'Syr,' quod they, 'we are redy to do it,' & so eche of them enbrasyd other / wherof kyng Huon had 4 great ioie, and so had all other lordys and knyghtes that were there assembelyd / ²'syr² kyng Guaryn,' quod Huon / 'incontynent I wyll *that* your sone Florence haue ³my doughter in maryage / and I geue 8 them the citeye of Burdeaux / Blames / & Geronyl, and all the apendantes therto belongynge' / when kinge Guaryn hard the offer that kyng Huon⁴ made to his sone Florence he thankyd hym ⁵with good harte,⁵ and 12 so dyd all the other lordes / who alowed greatly that maryage. ⁶Kyng Guaryn, ²when he² saw the honour, loue, and courtoysye that⁷ Huon dyd to Florence his sone, he knelyd downe and sayde / 'syr, my chylde 16 and yours I comytte into your handes / vse them at your pleasure' / then by consente of bothe fathers they were fyaunsed⁸ and spoused together all in one daye / the fest and solempnyte of this maryage endured 20 .viii. dayes / the kyng of Nauerne gaue to⁹ Florence his realme of Nauerne to possede¹⁰ and enioie after his discease : of the festes and iustes and tournays that was made that .viii. dayes I make no mencyon therof, for it 24 were ouer longe to reherse / then kyng Huon gaue his doughter ²Claryet² .xxx. somers charged with gold & great ryches / wherby the ioie encressyd of all partyes / then the lordes and the other people of Aragon came to 28 kyng Huon, and all wepyng they desyryd hym to haue petye and compassyon of them / and *that* he myght fynd some meanes *that* they myght haue some recompense for y^e great hurtes & damages *that* they had 32 receyuyd by reason of the warre betwene these .ii.

¹ of. ²⁻² omitted. ³ Fol. clxix. back, col. 2. ⁴ had.
⁵⁻⁵ hartely. ⁶ When. ⁷ Kinge. ⁸ wedded.
⁹ vnto. ¹⁰ possess.

kynges, wherby they were nere dystroyed by the
 Nauernoyes / when quene Esclaramond hard y^e people
 complayn / she enbrased her husband and sayd / 'syr,
 4 I requyre¹ you for y^e loue of our² chyldren / to haue
 petye of this people who requyrethe for ayde / for in
 you is all theyr trust' / 'dame,'³ quod Huon, 'I shall
 incontynent shew what grace⁴ I shal⁵ do for the loue of
 8 you.' then kyng Huon commaunded all the peopel to
 knele downe,⁶ then he sayd / 'syr, all ye *that* be here
 assembelyd, to y^e entent *that* ye shall not thinke *that*
 the thyng that I wyll do shuld be any wychehafte or
 12 yllusyon / but that it is by y^e wyll of our lorde Iesu
 chryst / the gyfte that kyng Oberon gaue me or⁷ he
 dyed, the which was all the pusaunce & dyngnyte that
 he had in all the fayrey of the worlde / therfore knowe
 16 that by the pusaunce and dyngnyte that our lorde⁸ Iesu
 chryst⁸ made kyng Oberon my predyscessor to gyue
 me / I will that this realme of Aragon, wheras it hath
 had damage by reason of the warre, so that the realme
 20 is sore brent⁹ and wastyd, ⁶I wyll that it be agayne in
 the same case as it was before any warre began, and
 that all castelles and houses brente⁹ or beten donne be
 better .iiii. tymes then they were before / and I wyll
 24 that fro hensforthe euery man serue god & thanke hym
 of this grace that he hathe sente you' / then he lyfte
 vp his hande and blessyd all the people with the syngne
 of the crosse / ⁶as sone as he had done his blessinge
 28 euery thyng was as he had deuysed thurgh¹⁰ all the
 realme. Thus was y^e wyll of ¹¹our lorde¹¹ Iesu chryste
 at the instaunce and prayer of¹² noble kyng Huon.

Huon miracu-
 lously restores all
 the damage that
 the war has
 wrought in
 Aragon.

He blesses all the
 people.

¶ Howe kyng Huon and quene Esclaramond
 32 departed, and howe he gaue great¹³ gyftes

¹ desire. ² your. ³ Madame. ⁴ Fol. clxx. col. 1.

⁵ will. ⁶ and. ⁷ before. ⁸⁻⁸ god. ⁹ burnt.

¹⁰ out. ¹¹⁻¹¹ omitted. ¹² the. ¹³ rich.

to¹ the two kynges, and to al other lordis
and ladyes, & damoysselles / and of the
sorowe that was betwene the mother and
the doughter at theyr departynge. 4

Ca. C.lxxiii.



Hen kenge Huon had made his prayers
to our lorde ³Iesu chryst,³ and that his
bone⁴ was graunted, he thankyd god / 8
suche festes, iustys and tournays as
was made there duryenge the fest /
was neuer sene nor harde of in no⁵ cronycle here
before / then kyng Huon made hym redy to departe / 12
⁶he gaue gyftes or⁷ he departed to them that were
there, & specyally to Sorbare, to whome he recom-
maunded his doughter Claryet, and desyred hym not to
leue her / 'syr,' quod Sorbare, 'the great loue that I 16
haue to you constrayneth me neuer to forsake her nor
them that shall come of her, as long as lyfe is in my
body' / when que[ne] Esclaramond vnderstode the
departynge of her lorde Huon / & sawe that she must 20
leue her doughter, she had great sorowe at her harte,
and so all wepyng she came to her doughter, and
sayde / 'ryghte dere doughter, ye ought greatly to
thanke our lorde god ³Iesu chryst³ in *that* he hathe 24
cast you out of so many parayles, & nowe to haue great
honoure, & to be exalted lyke a ryche & ⁵pasant lady /
therefore, always set your harte on god, & serue⁹ & loue
him ; be lyberall to them *that* be poore / nor mocke no 28
parsones¹⁰ / nor be no iangler agaynst your husbond /
nor harken to non yl sayers,¹¹ fle fro flaterers / loue
your husbond, kepe youreselfe alwayes trewe / to the
entente *that* none yll reporte be made of you. Marke 32

Huon prepares to
return to fairy-
land.

Esclaramonde
weeps at leaving
her daughter.

She gives Clariet
good advice.

¹ vnto. ² Fol. clxx. col. 2. ³⁻³ god. ⁴ request.
⁵ any. ⁶ and. ⁷ before. ⁸ omitted.
⁹ feare. ¹⁰ body. ¹¹ lyers.

wel this doctryne / for I can not tell yf euer I shall se
 you agayne or not.' when the fayre Claryet hard her
 mother, sodaynely she began to wepe, and sayd /
 4 'O my ryght dere lady and mother, y^e departyng
 of you & of the kyng my father fro me oughte sore to
 greue me, syn we haue ben together so lytel¹ a seson² /
 for your ³departyng is to me so greuable that yt
 8 ys great payne to me to bere it' / then the mother and
 the doughter clyppye and kyssyd ech other mo then
 .xx. tymes, and oftener wold haue don &⁴ kyng Huon
 had not bene / for then he toke his doughter Claryet
 12 in his armes and kyssyd her often tymes, tenderly
 wepyng, By cause he knewe well he shulde neuer
 se her after⁵; then he lyfte vp his hande and gaue her
 and her husbonde his blyssyng, and shewyd them
 16 many fayre ensamples and doctrynes. Then the noble
 quene Esclaramonde knelyd downe & prayed kyng
 Huon, hyr husband, that he wold counsell and aduer-
 tyse them what they shuld do. 'dam,'⁶ quod Huon,
 20 'ryse vp, for suche petye I haue of them and of you
 that nere hand my harte faylethe me / ⁷I tary here
 ouer⁸ longe / ⁹I muste nedys departe; come hether my¹⁰
 doughter and kysse me / and sone Florence, with you I
 24 leue my doughter / kepe her well as longe as god wyll
 suffer her to be with you' / then kyng Huon toke leue
 of the two kynges, who were ryght sorowfull of his
 departyng / and he desyeryd then alwayes to be good
 28 louers together / and so toke his leue, and sayde, 'I
 wysse myselfe and¹¹ my quene, and all my company,
 to be in my palays of Momure' / he had no soner
 spoken the word but that he was there / and sodaynly
 32 he¹¹ vanysshed fro the two kynges, wherof they and all
 other were greatly abasshyd, so that they wyst not

Huon tenderly
 takes leave of his
 daughter.

He wishes himself
 and his company
 in his palace of
 Momur, and they
 suddenly vanish
 away.

¹ small.² time.³ Fol. clxx. back, col. 1.⁴ if.⁵ agayne.⁶ Madame.⁷ and.⁸ too.⁹ for.¹⁰ deere.¹¹ omitted.

The King of
Navarre takes
leave of King
Guaryn.

Soon afterwards
Guaryn dies,

and Florence is
crowned king.

Claryet becomes
the mother of a
fair daughter.

what to saye, ¹they had thought it had bene but a dreme, but by the ²reason of the great giftes and riches that he had lefte behynd him amonge them. Then after al these thynges done the kyng of Nauerne toke ⁴leue of kyng Guaryn, and departed ; and his nephue Florence rode with hym .iiii. ³leges, and then retourned to courtoyse, to Claryet his wyfe, and there they taryed two monethes in great ioy and solas. Then after ⁸a sartayne space kyng Guaryn, who was ⁴sore agyd⁴ and auneyente, toke a sykenes, wherby he passyd out of this world / for whose dethe Florence his sone, and Claryet, wept many a salt tere. Then he was buried ¹²with great solemnyte / ¹then by all the lordes and peers of the realme Florence was chosen & crowned kyng, and Claryet quene / great solempnyte and ioy was made at theyr coronacyon. Thus with great ioye ¹⁶& gladnes Florence and Claryet were together, so that at the laste Claryet was great with chylde / wherof Florence and all the noblemen and comons of the realme were ioyfull, & thankyd our lord ⁵Iesu chryste.⁵ ²⁰and when the tyme came the quene was brought a bedde of a fayre doughter, wherof bothe father and mother were ⁶ioyfull / the whiche ioye within a whyle after tornyd to sore wepyng & great heuynes, as ye ²⁴shall here after.⁷

¶ How quene Claryet was brought a bed of a doughter / at which delyueraunce the quene dyed / and howe when the yonge ²⁸damoyzell cam to the age of .xv. yere, the king her father wolde haue had her in maryage, wher with al his lordes were sore trowbelyd. Ca. C.lxxiiii. ³²

¹ and. ² omitted. ³ Fol. clxx. back, col. 2.
⁴⁻⁴ verie old. ⁵⁻⁵ god. ⁶ right. ⁷ hereafter.



¹ Hen kyng Florence was aduertysyd *that*
his quene was delyuered of a doughter,
he thankyd god / the chyld was borne
to the christenyng in to the chefe
church, and was namyd yde; the ioy
of the comyng of this chyld cost derely to the quene
her mother, for by reason of the payne that she enduryd
⁸ she departed out of this lyfe, and so dyed / y^e chylde
was brought to kyng Florence; ²when he sawe her he
was ioyfull, and demaundyd how her mother dyd / and
they thought that the mater coude not be hyden
¹² nor kepte secrete, they sayd / 'syr, your quene is
departed to god' / when the kyng harde that he
fell downe in a swoone, so that euery man fered he had
bene dede / ²when he came to hymselfe he sayd / 'a,
¹⁶ my ryghte dere louer,³ in an yll oure ye were borne;
for your sake I had forgotten all payne, and thought to
haue liued in rest with you / me thynke ye be rauysshed
& stollen awaye fro me / a, false deth, *thou* arte hardy
²⁰ to take fro me that thyng that⁴ I ⁵louyd best / the
most fayrest, most trewest, and most⁶ swetest creature
leuyng' / then his lordes came and comforted hym;
the cryes, complayntes, and wepynges rose thrughe⁷
²⁴ the citey, all ladyes, and damoyselles, &⁶ burgesses, and
maydens, and all the comons made great lamentacyons;
that nyght the quene was wachyd, & the nexte morn-
yng, with great cryes & wepynges, the quene was
²⁸ borne into y^e chefe church; her obsequy was done
notably, and so layd in a rych sepulture / y^e sorow *that*
the kyng made was neuer none such sene / the kyng
was vysyted by y^e lordes of his realme, but they coude
³² not cause hym to take any solas, but alonly to go now
and then to se his dere doughter, y^e lady yde / and
euer when he sawe her his sorowe renewyd / ²she was

The child is
named Ide.

Clariet dies at her
birth.

Florence grieues
much for her.

Clariet is buried.

¹ Fol. clxxi. col. 1.

² and.

³ Lone.

⁴ which.

⁵ Fol. clxxi. col. 2.

⁶ omitted.

⁷ throughout.

Ida is brought up
in much luxury.

At fifteen years of
age her beauty
surpassed that of
all other women.

Her father falls in
love with her.

He proposes to
his lords that he
should marry
again.

He calls all his
lords to him in
council.

wel norysshed and broughte vp, and when she came to
the age of .xv. yere she was beautyfull / wyse, and
sage, for she was brought vp with .iiii. noble ladyes,
and ordered as it apartayned to a kynges chylde / ¹her 4
father, kyng Florence, lound her so well *that* he coude
neuer be satysfied with lokyng vpon her / oftentymes
he kyssed her holdyng her in his armes, he wolde
neuer mary agayne for loue of her / so moche grew and 8
encreased this noble lady² yde, that she came to the age
of .xv. yere complete / the fresshe beautey & bounte
that was in her, yf I shulde dyscryue it, it shuld³ be
ouer long to reherse, but I dare wel say *that* in beauty 12
as then she passyd all other women of y^e worlde / for
god & nature had employed al theyr study to forme
her / ther was neuer⁴ man *that* saw her but *that*⁵
lound her, & so dyd her father; so *that* on a day the 16
kyne had his lordes aboute hym / ⁶the one of them
was Sorbare,⁵ whome the kyng lound derely / ¹the
kyng, seyng his ⁶doughter yde growe and encrese
in all vertues / he sayde to his lordes / 'syrs, it were 20
good *that* there were some wyfe found out for me /
whome I wyll mary yf any suche can be found in all
condycyons lyke to her that I had before' / when
his lordes harde the kyng they were ioyful in that the 24
kyng wolde mary agayne / Alas, they knewe not the
kynges inward entencyon / but shortly after they⁷
knew it, wherby moche yll and myschefe came after,⁸
and many a man slaine, and many a churche brente,⁹ 28
as ye shall here after¹⁰ / Then the kyng wrote and
sente to all hys lordys and knyghtes of his realme
to com to his court at a daye assyngnyd; ¹when they
were al com to the palays ther they founde the kyng, 32

¹ and. ² omitted. ³ would. ⁴ any.

⁵⁻⁶ and Sorbare was amonge them.

⁶ Fol. clxxi. back, col. 1. ⁷ the kyng. ⁸ afterward.

⁹ burnt. ¹⁰ hereafter.

who humbly reseyuid them, and made them great
 fest,¹ & had them to dyner withe hym / when the
 dyner was done / the kyng and all his lordys went
 4 in to a gardeyne, were as y^e kynge wolde kepe hys
 counseyll; ² when they were all there and the kynge
 set in his sete, he sayde / 'syrs, ye know well I haue
 no mo children but a doughter, who hathe bene desyred
 8 in maryage by dyuers kynges and prynces / but I
 wolde not consent to mary her / nor I thought not to
 mary myselfe for³ loue of her mother, whome I so
 derely lound / but now I am ⁴ in wyl to be maryed
 12 and to take a wyfe / so⁵ she be semblable to her that is
 departed / and therefore I haue sente for you to shewe
 you my wyl and pleasure.' when his lordes hard hym
 they wer ioyfull, & sayd / 'syr, knowe for trouthe
 16 there is no woman leuyng in chrystendome that⁶ yf ye
 wyll haue her, ye shal, yf she be neuer so fayre or so
 hye ⁷ a parage⁷ / & therefore, syr, thynke in your selfe
 whether ye wyll that we shall go to get you a wyfe.'
 20 ⁸ 'Syrs,' quod the kynge, 'in this matere ye shall
 not nede to take ⁹ great payne⁹ / for y^e wyfe that I wyl
 haue is not far¹⁰ hence; it lyethe in me to haue her yf
 I lyst' / 'syr,' quod the lordes, 'wyl it please you
 24 to name her that shal be so happy' / 'syrs,' quod
 y^e kyng, 'it is my doughter yde whome I wyl take to
 my wyfe, for the great loue that I had to her mother' /
 when the lordes hard that they regardyd¹¹ eche other /
 28 blessing them selues of the orryble and detestable
 wordes of the kyng, and beheld¹² him maruylously.
 Then Sorbare, who was of the kynges preuy counsaile,
 began to speke, and sayde / 'a, syr, god forbede that
 32 suche a shame shulde come to you / for it is worse then

The lords approve
 his proposal to
 marry a second
 time.

He announces his
 intention of
 wedding Ide.

The lords are
 horror-stricken,

and Sorbare
 reproaches him
 for meditating so
 unnatural a crime.

¹ feasting. ² and. ³ the. ⁴⁻⁴ minded to marie.

⁵ that. ⁶ but. ⁷⁻⁷ of Lyneage.

⁸ Fol. clxxi. back, col. 2. ⁹⁻⁹ any paines. ¹⁰ from.

¹¹ beheld. ¹² looked on.

Florence grows
wrathful.

Ide is summoned
by her father.

bogery¹ to hym that wyll polute his owne proper
blode² by hymselfe engendered / ye shulde not be
worthy to syt in a chayre royall / ³ye ought to be the
myrrour & ensample to other men how they shulde 4
lyue / wyll you then breke the law that god hath geuen
vs / put fro you that crewelte, ye shall fynde no man
wyll prayse you in your so doynge or thynkynges /
when the kyng hard sorbare he beheld hym sore,⁴ and 8
sayd / 'sorbare, knowe for trouthe but that I fynde⁵
myselfe moche bounde to⁶ you, I wolde stryke of thy⁷
hede / and there is no man that speketh to the con-
trary / but I shal put hym to dethe.' Then all the 12
lordes together sayde to the kyng / 'syr, do as ye
lyst⁸ / Sorbare hathe sayd as a noble man ought to do,
for yf ye do otherwyse ye ar not worthy to bere a
crowne' / & so helde theyr peas; they durst speke no 16
more for fere of him, & also bycause they thought
suerly⁹ the deuyll was within hym to mosyon¹⁰ such
a¹¹ mater / when y^e kyng hard the wyl of his lordes /
hastely¹² he sent for his daughter / who came with 20
a smyl¹³ynge countenaunce, not knowynge¹⁴ the vn-
reasonable wyll of the kyng her father / ³when she
came before hym she knelyd downe / the kyng toke
her vp & set her bytwene his armes, and kyssed her 24
more then .xx. tymes / the lady knewe no thyng
¹⁵y^e kynges¹⁵ entencion none other wyse but that she
thought he dyd it but as a father ought to do with his
chylde. the lordes then¹⁶ sayd softly one to another / 28
'A, vnhappy kyng, his thoughtes be farre vnlyke to
his daughters / for yf she were here alone he wolde dys-
honest¹⁷ her, althoughe he¹⁸ be her¹⁹ owne father²⁰' /

¹ heathen.

² Daughter.

³ and.

⁴ angrily.

⁵ hold.

⁶ vnto.

⁷ your.

⁸ please.

⁹ that.

¹⁰ any.

¹¹ omitted.

¹² hastily after Daughter.

¹³ Fol. clxxii. col. 1.

¹⁴ of.

¹⁵⁻¹⁶ her father's.

¹⁶ then after chylde.

¹⁷ dishonour.

¹⁸ she.

¹⁹ his.


²⁰ daughter.

y^e kyng, seynge his doughter yde so excellent fayre, he sayde to hymselfe¹ without he hadde his doughter in maryage he shulde dye for² rage / ³the kyng behelde
 4 her, and made her to syt downe by hym, and sayde.
 'my dere doughter, ye are as an orpheline on the mothers syde / wherfore I haue great petye of you that ye haue lost her / and ye resemble so moche your
 8 mother / that I thyncke when I se you in the face that I se her before me, wherfore⁴ I loue you the better, and therefore⁵ it is my wyll to take you to my wyfe,
⁶for other then you I wyll none wed.'⁶

He tells her his wicked desire.

12 ¶ Of the great sorow that the damoyssel⁷ yde made when she harde her father how he wolde haue her in maryage / and howe by the meanes of a noble lady and Sorbare,
 16 she departed at midnyght, & went at the aduenture that god wolde sende her.

Ca. C.lxxv.

20  Hen y^e damoyssel⁷ hard her father her fresshe red couloure ⁹in her face⁹ became pale & wan, ³she cast downe
 her loke to the erthe, & sayd, 'a, my ryght dere fader, take hede what ye
 24 say, for yf ye be hard of them *that* be here presente / ye shall be greatly blamed.' Then the damoyssel⁷ wold haue resen vp to haue gone fro her father, but the kyng toke her by the hand, and sayd, 'My doughter,
 28 make no daunger nor refuse to folowe my wyll / for ye sle me for the loue that I bere you' / then all the lordys knelyd downe before the kyng, and helde vp

Ides grows pale at the words.

The lords kneel before Florence,

¹ that. ² with. ³ and. ⁴ and therefore.

⁵ for this cause.

⁶⁻⁶ for I will haue none other in mariage. ⁷ Damsell.

⁸ Fol. clxxii. col. 2. ⁹⁻⁹ omitted.

and implore him
to have pity on
himself and on
his daughter.

But Florence is
obdurate.

Ide resolves to
escape from her
father.

theyr handes / and desyred the kynge for his owne
welthe and honour that he wolde haue petye of hym-
selfe & of his daughter, and that he wold neuer thynke
to do suche a dede / for yf he dyd he shulde neuer be 4
set by after: when the kynge harde his lordes how
they resoned with hym to haue tourned his mynde / he
answered as a man full of felony¹ ²and Ire, and sayd,
that in the dyspyte of them all, whether they wolde or 8
not, he wolde haue her to his wyfe / and that yf there
were any so hardy³ to speke to hym to the contrary, he
wolde cause them to dye a shamefull dethe / and he
sore rebukyd them / when the damoyzell hard her 12
father so speke to⁴ his lordes and knyghtes / then she
saw well y⁵ dysordynate⁶ loue of her father / then⁷ she
began to wepe, and sayde, 'O very⁸ god, I shall be
shamyd & lost for euer yf he take me to his wyfe / for 16
both of vs cannot scape without dampnacyon' / then
she thought in⁹ herselfe that yf she coude in any wyse
scape she wyll¹⁰ fle a waye so farre of that there shuld
neuer¹¹ tydynges be harde of her. Then the kynge 20
sente her into her chambre with her maydens, who
were sorowfull and dyscomforted when they harde of
that mater / for the kynge had commaunded them to
kepe her well / and to ordayne a bayenge¹² for her, 24
bycause y¹³ next day he wold mary her / when the
damoyssel yde was in her chaumbre she callyd to her
an auncyent lady, who had bene her mastres,¹³ then she
voyded all other out of her chaumbre, and made 28
semblaunte to slepe / and when she sawe that all other
were gone she knelyd downe and held vp both her
handys before the lady, and all wepyng sayd / 'a, my
ryght dere lady and mastres,¹³ I com to you as a poore 32

¹ villany.

² Fol. clxxii, back, col. 1.

³ as.

⁴ vnto.

⁵ inordinate.

⁶ and.

⁷ good.

⁸ within.

⁹ would.

¹⁰ any.

¹¹ rich bed.

¹² mistresse and.

¹³ Mistresse.

orphelyn without father or mother / my mother is ded
as ye knowe well / but he that shulde be my father
wold be my husbond / y^e whiche is a thyng that the
4 erthe oughte not to bere nor sustayne them that wolde
lyue in suche maner, and therfore, dere mastres,¹ coun-
sayle and ayde this poore dyscomforted orphelyne, and
helpe me that I myghte be out of y^e syghte of hym
8 that ²ought to be my father / for I had rather go into
a³ farre counstre and⁴ to lyue in pouerte / then to ende
my dayes withe hym in doynge of such a dede, and at
the end to be dampnyd and loste.' when the olde
12 lady, who was ryght noble & sage, harde the petuous⁵
complaint of the damoyssel yde, whom she had norysshed
& brought vp, she answeyd and sayde / 'my ryghte
dere doughter, for the great loue that I bere you I
16 shall ayde and counsayle you and brynge you out of
this doughte / as somtyme dyd my brother, Peter
of Aragon, to the lady Claryet your mother / he rescued
her out of the handes of the sarasyns wheras⁶ she was
20 in ioperdy of her lyfe / for all your father I shal not let
to ayde you.' when the damoyzell yde hard the good
wyll of the lady how she wold ayde her / all wepyng she
kyst her ⁷mouth and eyen,⁷ and sayde / 'a, my ryght
24 dere mother / y^e goodnes that ye do to me god rewarde
you⁸ / for it lyeth not in me' / then the old lady
issued out of her chaumbre and lefte the lady yde sore⁹
pensyue, and went into Sorbares chaumbre / who was
28 as then in the palays, for he was of the kynges preuy
counsayle / ¹⁰when he came to his chaumbre & found
the lady there, he demaundyd what aduenture had
brought her thether / y^e lady drew hym apart and
32 shewyd hym the request and prayer of the damoyzell
yde / wherof Sorbare, for the great petye ⁷that⁷ he had

She takes counsel
with the old
mistress of her
chamber.

The old dame
goes to Sorbare's
chamber,

and tells him of
Ide's desire of
escape.

¹ Mistresse.

² Fol. clxxii. back, col. 2.

³ some.

⁴ there.

⁵ pitifull.

⁶ when.

⁷⁻⁷ omitted.

⁸ for it.

⁹ verie.

¹⁰ and.

He offers her
man's apparel, so
that Ide may
disguise herself
therewith and
run away.

of her he¹ began to wepe, and auoyded his chaumbre /
the better to speke with the lady at his ease / then²
they deuysed together of dyuers thynges, and at last³
concludyd / for the saluacyon⁴ of the damoysselles 4
body, that this aunycyente lady shulde bere to her the
aparaile of a man, and that at the oure of mydnyght
she shulde araye⁵ her therewith / and then shew her² let
her go out of the palays and come to the stable, were 8
as she shall fynd me redy with the best horse that her
father hath redy for her to lepe on.⁶

The old dame
makes all arrange-
ments, and shows
them to Ide.

¶ when the aunsyent lady vnderstode Sorbare, she
was ryght ioyfull, and *thought* his counsayle good / 12
²then she departyd and made redy al the aparayll
belongynge to a man / then she came to the damoyssell
ydes chambre, and shewed her the conclusyon that was
taken betwene her and Sorbare / when the damoyssell 16
harde that she had great ioy at her hart, ²she clypped
and kyssed her / y^e lady was glad when she sawe her
somewhat recomforted,⁷ and sayd / 'fayre lady, y^e
kyng your father hathe ordayned for you⁸ a bayne,⁹ 20
therfore go thether & bayne⁹ with other damoysselles,
to the entent that the kyng do not suspecte any thyng /
and when ye haue bayned¹⁰ you a sartayne space lette
your bed be made redy / and when ye are in your 24
chaumbre go to youre bed / and then commaund me
and all the damoysselles to go and bayne⁹ vs / and I
shall kepe them there so longe a space *that* they shall
haue good lyst to slepe / and I shall leue here by youre 28
beddes syde all your mannes aparayle / ²aray you
therin, and then gyrt this sworde abought you / & put
on your sporres / & when ye are out of the palays go to
the stables, where ye shall fynd a hors redy for you.' 32
Then they went in to the bayenge¹¹ chaumbre¹² in her

¹ omitted.

² and.

³ they.

⁴ sauegard.

⁵ Fol. clxxiii. col. 1.

⁶ vppon.

⁷ comforted.

⁸ for you *after* bath.

⁹ bath.

¹⁰ bathed.

¹¹ bathing.

¹² and she.

smoke redy to go into the bayenge¹ / ²all the other
 damoysselles were ioyfull when they sawe her come
 thether / for they went³ she had been gone to slepe
 4 for⁴ the dyspleasure that she had at her hart; then
 they ⁵said one to another / 'it semethe that our lady
 is well apaysed of her sorowe, me thynke to morowe
 she shall be lady and quene; ²she shal be wyfe and
 8 doughter to y^e kynge her father, the which is a thyng
 vnresonable' / then they came to her and bayned⁶ her,
 and festyd her as moche as they myght / when the
 lady yde thought it was tyme to departe, she sayde to
 12 her mastres⁷ and to the other damoysselles / howe she
 had bayned⁶ her ynoughe, and that she wolde go into
 her chaumbre to slepe / and bad all the other to go &
 bayne⁸ them / and that there shulde no mo go with her
 16 but two of them to bryng⁹ her to bed, & she sayd
 to her mastres⁷ that she shuld go and brynge her with
 the other¹⁰ damoysselles / the whiche thyng they dyd
 gladly¹¹ / the damoyssell departed and went into her
 20 chaumbre wrapped in a mantell of scarlet / when
 y^e two damoysselles had brought her a¹² bed they toke
 leue of her, & departed and closed the dore after them,
 and then they went and bayned⁶ them with other /
 24 and when the damoyssell yde felte herselfe all drye /
 she rose and arayed her in the mannes aparayle as well
 as she coude / and toke the sworde and gyrt it
 about her / & dyd on her sporres / ²then she wente
 28 to a great lowe wyndowe on y^e gardayne syde, and
 there she lepte out into y^e gardayne as preuely as she
 coud, and so wente ¹³all alone¹³ by the wall syde tyll¹⁴
 she came to the posterne / then she wente out towardes
 32 the stabyl / ²when she came there she founde redy¹⁵

Her maidens
attend Ide while
bathing.

But she soon
leaves them for
her chamber.

Ide when left
alone dons man's
apparel, and girts
a sword at her
side.

She leaps from the
window into the
garden, and goes
to the stable,

¹ bathing. ² and. ³ thought. ⁴ because of.

⁶ Fol. clxxiii. col. 2. ⁶ bathed. ⁷ Mistresse. ⁸ bath.

⁹ haue.

¹⁰ omitted.

¹¹ ioyfully.

¹² to.

¹³⁻¹³ along.

¹⁴ vntill.

¹⁵ redy after horse.

where a horse is
made ready for
her by Sorbare.

there¹ a hors in Sorbares hande / and at the arson² of
the sadyll a bag full of brede and flesshe, and two
botelles of good wyne / then the damoyzell toke the
horse, & without any worde spekyng she lepte vp ⁴
quyckely; then Sorbare, all wepyng, sayde, 'My
³dere doughter, god be thy gyde and bryng the to
sauегarde / go thy waye and kepe the way on⁴ thy
lyfte hande / ⁵folowe the see syde' / 'Syr,' quod she, ⁸
'the goodnes that¹ ye haue shewed me god rewarde
you, in to whose sauегarde I commende you' / thus
departed this noble lady yde to eschewe and flee fro the
yll dyshordenate⁶ wyll of her fater / ⁵she entered in ¹²
to the forest, kepyng no hye waye / and so she rode
.iii. dayes alonge the wode tyll⁷ she thought well that
she was farre fro her countre. Nowe let vs leue
spekyng of her tyll⁷ ⁸tyme be⁸ to retourne to her ¹⁶
agayne, and let vs speke of kyng florence her fater.

She makes for the
forest.

¶ How kyng Florence was sorowfull when he
was aduerteysed of his doughters depart-
yng, who was aparayled lyke a man, and ²⁰
how shee came into almayne, and how she
found sartayne theues in a forest, and how
she came to Rome to the emperour lyke a
squyre. Ca. Clxxvi. ²⁴



⁹ **W**E haue harde here before in this hystory
howe kynge florence of Aragon wold
haue his owne doughter, the damoy-
sell yde in maryage agaynst the wyll ²⁸
of all his lordes and people; after that
he had spoken with her and commaundyng the bayne¹⁰

¹ omitted.

² pommell.

³ Fol. clxxiii. back, col. 1.

⁴ vpon.

⁵ and.

⁶ dishonourable.

⁷ vntill.

⁸⁻⁸ we haue occasion.

⁹ Fol. clxxiii. back, col. 2.

¹⁰ bath.

to be orderyd for her to the entente¹ the nexte daye to
 take² her in maryage / the nyght aprochyd, and after
 supper the kyng wente to his bed / ³then the nexte
 4 mornynge betimes tidynge was brought to y^e kyng
 how the kyng of Nauerne was come to se hym / the
 kyng wente to mete with⁴ him, and made hym great
 chere, and so came together to the palays / and then
 8 incontynent it was shewed the kyng how his daughter
 was fled away, wherof y^e kyng was so sorowfull and
 angry that no man durste speke a worde to hym, ⁵he
 went in to his daughters chaumbre: there he found the
 12 ladyes and damoysselles that had y^e kepyng of her;
 y^e kyng wolde haue ryn vpon them and⁶ the kyng of
 Nauerne had not bene, who letted hym and blamed hym
 moche when he knewe the cause of her departynge /
 16 and what y^e kyng wolde haue done / then came the
 horse keper to the kyng, and sayde / how his good
 horse was stollen awaye the same nyght. Then the
 kyng as a man desperate commaunded on all sydes
 20 men to ryde after,⁷ and who soeuer coude brynge his
 daughter agayne or elles sure tydynge of her he
 promysed to gyue hym a .M. florences of gold / there
 were many that for loue of that mony rode forthe, to
 24 the nombre of .iiii.C.; they rode dyuers wayes, but
 there was none of them that coude brynge any newes⁸
 of her / and so retorned to y^e kyng, who was sorowfull
 when ⁹he coude here no thyng of her / great wepynges⁹
 28 there was¹⁰ in y^e city for¹¹ goynge awaye of the damoy-
 sel / for¹² fere that she had of her father, & rode vpon
 the good horse / in the daytyme she wolde rest her in
 the wodes, and in the nyght she wold ryde forthe.
 32 Thus she passyd all the prouynces of Aragon / ³then

The king of
Navarre comes to
visit Florence.

Florence is told of
his daughter's
sight.

In his wrath he
would have slain
her maidens, had
not the king of
Navarre pre-
vented him.

He sends messen-
gers after Ide.

¹ that. ² haue. ³ and. ⁴ omitted. ⁵ if.

⁶ her. ⁷ tidings. ⁸ Fol. clxxiii. col. 1.

⁹ lamentations. ¹⁰ made. ¹¹ the.

¹² because of the.

From Arragon
Ide goes into
Lombardy, and
thence to Ger-
many.

She tarries at
Basle.

Men are going to
Rome to aid the
emperor against
the king of
Castille.

Ide offers her
service to a
German soldier.

she passed into Lombardy. of her iorneyes and ad-
uentures I wyll make no mencyon, because she founde
no thyng by the waye to let her; she rode so longe
that she aprochyd to y^e countre of almayne / ¹when ⁴
she came there her mony fayled her, wherby she was
constrayned to selle her hors for money to lyue with
all, and so wente afote / and at y^e last came to the
citye of Basyle, and ther she taryed a season, and ther ⁸
dyspendyd her money / so longe she laye there that she
harde howe the emperour of Rome sent for men all
aboutght to ayde and socoure hym agaynst the kynge of
castell, who made him great warre / when she sawe ¹²
that many noble men were goynge to Rome to socour
the emperour she was ioyfull, and sayd to her host that
yf she had horse and harnays² she wolde go with
other into the warre / and thought in³ her selfe that ¹⁶
she wold gladly be aquaynted with the emperoure
of Rome, who was named Othon / ¹she thought yf she
myght she wolde take counsayle of hym / ¹she dyd so
moche that she fell in a quayntaunce with some of the ²⁰
almayns / so that they were glad to se her / she semid
to them to be so fayre¹ a yonge squyre / then an
Almayne *that* was there sayd to⁴ her / 'frende, come
hether to me and shewe me what thou art' / 'syr,' ²⁴
quod she, 'I am to hym that my seruyce may please /
for I desyre nothyng but to serue some noble man /
but⁵ late I was in Aragon, and there I seruyd ⁶a lord
that is dede / wherfore I am come hether for the ²⁸
dyspleasure that I haue of his dethe / ¹I can well
serue a genttelman / and kepe his horse, and yf nede
be to dryue his sompterhors / & if I come in batayle or
in scyrmysshe with my mayster, I thynke he shall ³²
haue worse then I in his company' / the Almayne,
herynge her so⁷ speke, sayde, 'fayre sone, that thou

¹ and.

² armour.

³ within.

⁴ vnto.

⁵ of.

⁶ Fol. clxxiii: col. 2.

⁷ to.

sayst procedethe of a good corage / therfore good must
 come to the yet, I pray the shewe me thy name' / 'syr,'
 quod she, 'I am called yde' / 'brother,' quod the
 4 Almayne, 'I retayne¹ y^e to² my seruyse, take hede of
 my horse' / 'syr,' quod she, 'I am redy to do you the
 best seruyce that I can' / ³y^e Almayne had her to his
 logging. Thus she then serued ⁴and she⁴ was wonte to
 8 be serued, for she fered yf it shulde be parseyued that
 she were a woman it shulde⁵ be to her trobyl / therfore
 she kepte herselfe close and secrete: ⁶she was⁷ .iii.
 dayes with her mayster after that the other company
 12 were gone ⁸to romeward,⁸ ⁹her mayster myght not
 departe so sone as the other dyd, for his busynes was
 not redy / ⁶then thre days after they departed to go to
 Rome / and she was harnaysted¹⁰ after the coustume
 16 of the countre. she serued so wel her mayster that he
 praysed her, and¹¹ so long they rode that they came and
 aproched nere to the countre of rome, so that on a daye
 they entered into a great darke forest / wherin laye in
 20 a busschement a¹² .vii. score spaynardys, lyenge there to
 abyde theyr aduenture; they lay in a darke valey, and
 when they saw the Almaynes ¹³them escryed¹³ them to
 the dethe, and ran vpon they. Then yde, who rode
 24 before her mayster, couchyd her spere and strake a
 spanyarde there ¹⁴clene thrughe the body, and with the
 drawynge out of ¹⁵her spere the spanyarde fell downe
 dede, of the whiche course her mayster praysed her /
 28 then y^e spanyardes ran in amonge the almayns, who
 ryght valyantly defended them,¹⁶ but theyr defence
 could not auayle them / for fynally¹⁷ they were all
 slayne, so that none scapyd alyue / but alonly yde,
 32 who dyd bere her so valyauntly that she slewe .iiii. of

Her master is
 bound for Rome,
 and Ide goes with
 him.

On the journey
 Spaniards in
 ambush attack
 them.

Ide and her com-
 panions defend
 themselves vali-
 antly, but all the
 Germans but her-
 self are slain.

¹ entertain.² into.³ so.⁴⁻⁴ that.⁵ wold.⁶ and.⁷ continued.⁸⁻⁸ towardes Rome.⁹ but.¹⁰ armed.¹¹ omitted.¹² about.¹³⁻¹³ they despised.¹⁴ therwith.¹⁵ Fol. clxxiii. back, col. 1.¹⁶ selues.¹⁷ at the end.

She rides on
alone, and falls in
with a gang of
thieves.

She begs meat and
drink of them.

They attack her.

the spanyardes, but when she sawe that her mayster
and all his company were slayne / with her sworde
in her hande all bloody she fled awaye, and rode out of
the way and toke a lytell pathe, the whiche brought 4
her to a rocke, and there she alyghted, and taryed in
the wode all¹ nyghte tyll² the nexte mornynge / she
had so great hunger and thyrste,³ for she had rydden
all⁴ day without mete or drynke / then⁵ in the mornynge 8
she loked all about⁶ and saw in an herber⁷ a⁸.xxx.
theues syttyng at a table etynge and drynkyng at
theyr pleasure; ⁹ when the damoyzell sawe them, for
the great rage of hunger that she suffered constrayned 12
her in such wyse that she forgate all fere and went to⁹
them / when the theues sawe her one of them sayd to
his felaws, 'I se yonder comynge a ¹⁰yonge¹⁰ squyre
mounged on¹¹ a good horse / the which shal be ours' / 16
⁵ when yde aprochyde to them she humbely saluted the
company, and sayd, 'Syr, yf it may please you to let
me eat and drynke with you I wyll pay for my scot'¹² /
'frende,' quod one of them, 'is there any man that 20
hath bene your gyde in this forest?' 'syr,' quod yde,
'god hathe bene my conduct, and none other' / then
one of the theues stepte forth and toke her horse by
the brydell, and sayd to his company, 'syr, laye on, 24
stryke hym downe, he shall neuer eate nor drynke
more; ¹⁰ as for¹⁰ his horse shall not scape me' / when
she¹³ sawe ¹⁴ that she was so¹⁰ taken she was in great
fere, ⁵ she durst make no countenance to defende her 28
selfe / there were so manye theues vpon her / she
thought to humble herselfe, which should be more
profyt, & sayd, 'Syr, why make ye that haste to sle
me / lytel shal ye wyne therby nor lese,¹⁵ hold here 32

¹ that. ² vntill. ³ that she was neere hand famished.

⁴ the. ⁵ and. ⁶ her. ⁷ harbour. ⁸ about.

⁹ vnto. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ omitted. ¹¹ vpon. ¹² shotte.

¹³ the Damsell. ¹⁴ Fol. clxxiii. back, col. 2. ¹⁵ looze.

- my sword, I yelde me¹ into your handes, and I praye She yields to them,
 you in the honoure of ²our lorde² Iesu chryst³ gyue me
 some mete and drynke / for I ⁴haue suche hunger⁴ that
 4 I am ⁵ nere dede for famyne⁵ / then the mayster thefe
 sayde, 'squire, haue no fere to be stryken, thou shalte
 haue no more hurte then myselfe, but thou shalt haue
 all that thou lackest; go thy waye & sytte downe
 8 and eat and drynke at thy pleasure' / 'syr,' quod and they offer her meat and drink.
 yde, 'I thanke you' / then the damoyzell sate downe
 with them, & dyd eate and drynke at her⁶ pleasure /
⁷when they had all eten and were resyn vp, then the
 12 theues began to stryue amonge themselfe, sayenge to
 theyr chefe mayster how he had done yll, that he
 wolde not suffer them to sle the squire / then another
 answered, & sayd how there shuld no hurte be done to⁸
 16 hym, bycause he was so fayre a yonge man and so
 courtoys / and sayd⁹ it shuld be great damage to
 sle hym / ¹⁰better it were¹⁰ to kepe hym styll with Many of the thieves wish to make Ide a member of their band.
 them, and to lerne hym to stele and to mourder men /
 20 and yf he wyll not do so¹¹ it were¹² reason to sle hym.
 ¶ when yde vnderstode the theues she was in great
 fere, and callyd vpon oure lorde ¹³Iesu chryste,¹³ pray-
 enge hym humbly in her great nede to succour and
 24 aide¹⁴ her / then the chefe mayster demaunded what The chief of them asks her name and history.
 was her name / then she answered in great fere to be
 slayne, and sayd, 'syr, my ¹⁵name is yde, & I am of the
 realme of Fraunce; and we were in company whan we
 28 departed out of our countre a¹⁶ forty gentyl men / we
 were goinge to haue serued the emperour of Rome, who
 hath now warre with the kynge of spayne / and we
 found in our way a¹⁶ seuen score spayniardes in a She tells how she is on her way to serve the emperor of Rome.

¹ myselfe. ²⁻² omitted. ³ to. ⁴⁻⁴ am so hungry.⁵⁻⁵ almost famished. ⁶ their. ⁷ and. ⁸ vnto.⁹ that. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ and that it were better. ¹¹ then.¹² good. ¹³⁻¹³ god. ¹⁴ aide before succour.¹⁵ Fol. clxxv. col. 1. ¹⁶ about.

The chief bids her
join them.

She refuses
stoutly.

The chief insists
on wrestling with
her; if he throws
her, he will seize
her horse and all
her clothes.

He demands that
her horse shall be
set beside her,
and that the
thieves should
draw aside.

busschement lyeng in ¹the botom of ¹a valey / ²they
set on ³vs and slewe all my company, none scaped but
myselfe / and therefore, syrs, I pray you let me haue
agayne my horse and my sworde, and shew me y^e way 4
to Rome / it shall ⁴be a great almes dede to shewe me
that courtoyse.' 'Nay,' quod the mayster thefe, '*that*
wyll we not do / but thou shalte tary with vs, and
lerne to be a thefe and a murdrer; ⁵yf thou wylte not 8
thus do / with my swerde I shall stryke of thy heed.'
'Syr,' quod yde / 'ye wolde haue me to a thyng that
I was neuer accustomed to do, nor none of my lynage /
nor I haue none intencyon to do any suche workes / 12
therefore I pray you let me haue my horse and my
swerde, than ye do me great curtoyse / and whan I am
mounted on ³my horse / yf one of you wyll defye me,
and yf I defende not my selfe from hym / than stryke 16
of my heed / I haue boughte my mete and drinke very
dere if I shuld lose my horse' / than the mayster thefe
said, 'bycause I se thou arte so hardy I wyll wrastell
with the / on ³the ⁶couenaunt that yf thou cast me 20
thou shalt be one of vs ⁷/ & yf thou be cast to the
erthe / than I wyll haue thy horse and thy swerde /
and dyspoyle the of all thy clothes' / Than yde sayd,
'I am content thus to do / so that ye withdrawe ¹backe ¹ 24
your men fro me / and set my horse by me, and
my swerde tyed to my sadle bowe / for it is ¹sayd in ¹
a comen prouerbe / that a man is taken for a foole that
putteth his trust in a thefe' / whan the ⁸theues herd 28
that they coude not forbare laughynge / and they had
great desyre to se this wrastelynge betwyxt them /
than they withdrew abacke / and set his hors ther by
hym / than the noble damsell yde quykely toke the 32
thefe / who thoughte to haue borne her to the erth /
but she drewe hym so sore to her *that* he coude scant

¹⁻¹ omitted. ² so. ³ vpon. ⁴ would. ⁵ and.
⁶ this. ⁷ our companie. ⁸ Fol. clxxv. col. 2.

haue any breth / and therwith she cast hym soo rudely
to the erth against a stone that he was therwith in
a swone / and with the fall all his teth brast¹ in his
4 mouth.

Idē throws the
thief in the tussle,
and he falls so
heavily on a stone
that he swoons.

¶ Whan yde sawe the thefe in that daunger quickly
she wente to her horse and mounted vp / than she
drewē out her swerde, and said, 'A, ye horson² thefes /
8 youre treason shall not auayle you / for ye haue
all thought vyolence and treason agaynst me / go &
helpe your maister who lyeth yonder / I thinke he
shall euer remembre this wrastlynge bytwene vs. ³I
12 haue now no dout of you all / tho ye were a hondred
mo / for yf I may⁴ I shall make you all be hanged
& strangled' / than the quyckest and⁵ lyghtest thefe
amonge them stept forth and toke hym by the brydell
16 of his hors / ³whan she saw that / she lyfte vp her
swerde & strake the thefe on⁶ the hande / so that the
hande flew fro his body and hanged styll vpon her
brydle / than he ranne awaye thinkynge to dye for⁷
20 payne of his hande / ³than she dasht in amonge the
thefes / they had no wepen aboute them to defende
them withal / but they were there to their foly,
nor they had no fere of that / that⁸ fell / nor they
24 byleued not *that* suche a yonge squier shulde haue
had suche hardinesse⁹ & force; ¹⁰she fought fyersly
amonge them, and cut of armes and shulders, & claue
some to the brayne / she dyd so¹¹ that she slew fyue ¹²of
28 the thefes or¹³ she departed / and whan she sawe time
to departe / she sporred her hors / for by that tyme the
resydue of the theues had gette¹⁴ weapons / and they
folowed her to haue slayn her or her hors / than
32 she departed with the sporres / her hors was good /

Idē mounts her
horse, and bids
the thieves look
to their chief.

A thief seizes her
bridle, but she
strikes off his
hand with her
sword.

She drives her
horse among
them,

and uses her
sword vigorously
upon them.

After slaying five

she spurs on her
horse and escapes.

¹ burst.

² vilde.

³ and.

⁴ can.

⁵ the.

⁶ vpon.

⁷ with the.

⁸ which.

⁹ hardness.

¹⁰ then.

¹¹ much.

¹² Fol. clxxv. back, col. 1.

¹³ before.

¹⁴ gotten.

He arrives at
Rome, and salutes
the emperor.

He asks her
history.

She tell of her
recent exploits.


therfore anone she was ferre fro them / than the theues
saw they lost but there payn¹ to folow any further,
therfore they let her goo / whan yde sawe that she was
scaped their handes / humbly she thanked our lorde 4
²Iesu chryst, ²desyrynge him to ayde and conducte her
into some sauegarde / ³she rode so long that she issued
out of the great forest / of her iourneys and lodgyng I⁴
make no mencyon / but she spedde so in her Iourney 8
that she ariued at the noble cite of Rome, and she toke
vp her lodgyng nere to the palayes / wheare as the
emperour was deuysynge with his lordes of the feates
of the⁵ warre / than yde wente thyther / & kneled 12
downe and saluted themperoure and all his lordes.
When the emperoure and the Romaines that were
there saw the goodly yonge man who so humbly
had⁵ saluted them / they gretly⁵ regarded him⁶ for the 16
beaute that they saw in him. Than the emperour said
to⁷ hym / 'fayre son, shewe me what ye be and
fro whence ye come, *that* thus cometh hyther to me.'
'Syr,' quod yde / 'I am a squier that came now straye 20
fro Almayne / wheare as I haue serued a certayne
tyme / and lytell there I haue wonne, whear of I am
sory / and but late⁸ I was in a⁵ place / wheare diuers
Spanyardes and other were in company, and they al⁵ 24
had great desyre to make warre / and they wente to the
kyng of Spayne, your enemy / but or⁹ they hadde
ferre gone / they that were in my company met with
them / and there we foughte ¹⁰together and slewe 28
y^e moost parte of them, and there I was a lytell hurte /
and now, syr, I am come to you to serue your grace / if
my small seruyce may please you / & in the best wyse
that I can I shall serue you trewly.' 32

¹ labours. ²⁻² god. ³ and. ⁴ wyll. ⁵ omitted.

⁶ much. ⁷ vnto. ⁸ lately. ⁹ before.

¹⁰ Fol. clxxv. back, col. 2.

¶ How the damsell yde was retained¹ with
 the emperour of rome / and how the lady
 Oliue, his doughter, was in ²amours with²
 4 yde, wenyng she had ben a man / & how
 the kyng of Spaine came before the cite
 of Rome, and how the noble damsell yde
 tooke the kyng of Spaine in batayle and
 8 dyscomfyted him. Ca. C.lxxvii.

12  Han themperour herde yde speake / he
 well³ behelde her, and saw how she
 was byg and great / and thought *that*
 he neuer saw⁴ in⁵ his lyfe before
 so fayre a yonge man / and as the
 emperoure was talkyng with yde / theare came to
 them Olyue the emperours doughter. Than all the
 16 lordes rose vp at her comyng / than⁶ she sate downe
 by her father / & beheld greatly the yonge squier / and
 greatly⁷ she praised her⁸ in her corage, bycause of the
 meruaylous great beaute that was in her / wenyng
 20 ⁹to her⁹ that ¹⁰she had bene a man / this Olyue was so
 fayre, so swete, and so meke, that for her bounte and
 humylyte she was ⁹wel⁹ byloued of euery man / then
 the emperour demaundyd of yde what was her name &
 24 fro whence she came. 'Syr,' quod she, 'my name is
 yde, and¹¹ was borne at Terascon, ⁶I am kyn to duke
 Nayms of Bauyer, & to Aymery of Narbon, and to
 Gyllerme the scotte / but by the kynsmen of Ganelon
 28 I was chasyd and banysshed out of my countre, and syn
 I haue endured moche payne and pouerte.' Then the
 emperour sayd / 'frend, thou art of a good kynryd / I
 retayne¹² the in my courte / for the bounte *that* I

The emperor
 admires her
 fairness.

Olyue his daugh-
 ter beholds Ide,
 and praises her
 prowess.

Olyue, like all who
 see Ide, never
 doubts that she is
 a man.

Ide feigns her
 early history.

The emperor
 takes her into his
 service,

¹ entertained.

²⁻³ enamoured of.

³ were *after* beheld her.

⁴ he neuer saw *after* lyfe.

⁵ all.

⁶ and.

⁷ much.

⁸ him.

⁹⁻⁹ omitted.

¹⁰ Fol. clxxvi. col. 1.

¹¹ I.

¹² entertaine.

and bids her
attend his daugh-
ter Olive.

All at the court of
the emperor
praise and love
hde.

thynke¹ be in the, and also for thy good lynage.
'Syr,' quod yde, 'god geue me grace that I maye
do you suche seruyce that it maye be to youre plea-
sure' / 'doughter Olyue,' quod the emperour, 'for y^o 4
loue of you I haue reteyned² this squyer to serue you' /
'father,' quod Olyue, 'I thanke you / for he³ semethe
that he is come out of a good house⁴ / and I had
no seruaunt of⁵ a longe⁶ season, that better contentethe 8
me' / then the emperour sayd to⁷ yde / 'my frend,
serue me well, behold here my doughter, whome I loue
enterely, ⁸to whome I delyuer you to serue her; I
haue no mo chyldren but she, & therfore serue her 12
trewly as a man ought to do that is come of suche
a lynage as ye ⁹be come of⁹ / yf ye serue her wel and
trewly, ye had neuer in all your lyfe before so good
aduenture' / 'syr,' quod yde, 'I shall do so moche that 16
by the grace of Iesu¹⁰ that⁵ you & she shal be wel
content / and, syr, there is no thyng but¹¹ lyghtly
I can do it to serue a noble man, and in the warre
I shal defende my selfe I trust as well a nother, and 20
also I can serue at a table before a kynge or a⁵ quene.'
'frende,' quod the empe¹²rour, 'yf ye can do thus as ye
saye ye are well come hether, and ye shall fayre y^o
better / and I am ioyfull of youre comynge to serue me, 24
ye shall neuer haue nede to go out of my seruyce' /
when yde harde y^o emperoure humbly¹³ she thankyd
hym / ⁸thus was yde retaynyd² with the emperour /
whereas she dyd so moche by her good seruice that the 28
emperour and his doughter, & all they of the courte
louyd and praysed her, and the damoyzell Olyue often
tymes gladly regardyd yde, and began in her harte sore
to loue her / and yde, who parseiued her, prayed 32

¹ to. ² entertained. ³ it. ⁴ stocke.
⁵ omitted. ⁶ great. ⁷ vnto. ⁸ and. ⁹⁻⁹ are.
¹⁰ god. ¹¹ but *after* lightly. ¹² Fol. clxxvi. col. 2.
¹³ humbly *after* she.

to¹ our lorde ²Iesu chryste² that he myght³ so dele *that*
 she be not acused nother of man or⁴ woman / she gaue
 almes often tymes to pore men, and she visyted gladly⁵
 4 holy church; she demenyd herselfe in suche wyse that
 of euery man she was byloued and praysed / often
 tymes she prayed to ²our lord Iesu chryst² for kynge
 Florence her father, for all that she was chasyd & fled
 8 out of her countre by his occasyon and cause / yette she⁶
 prayed euer¹ to god that she myght be agreed with
 hym. Thus this damoyssel yde was in this daunger
 seruyng the emperour and his doughter Olyue the
 12 space of two monethes / & on a day she was in
 the palays with the emperoure / and thether came
 in great hast a messanger, and came and saluted the
 emperour, and sayde / 'syr, knowe for trouth / ⁷y^e
 16 kynge of Spayne, with great pusaunce, is entered into
 youre empyre of Rome, and wasteth all before hym
 with fyre and sworde / ⁸many a Romayne he hathe
 slayne / and he hath sworne by his lawe that or⁹
 20 a moneth be passed he wyll be with in your citey
 of Rome with all his pusaunce, and he saythe that he
 wyl haue his pleasure of your doughter, & to make you
 to ¹⁰dye of ¹a shameful deth by cause ye haue refused
 24 to gyue¹¹ your doughter in maryage / syr, it were¹²
 better for you that he had wedded¹³ youre doughter,
 then so many men shulde haue been slayne, and so
 many townes brente¹⁴ & destroyed / & castelles beten
 28 downe / syr, go quykly agaynst hym and defende
 youre countre, or elles ye shall se hym shortely pyght
 vp his tentes & paulyons before this citey' / when the
 emperour hard the messanger he studyed a great
 32 season, and loked vpon yde, and sayde / 'frende,

She prays for her
wicked father.

News is brought
the emperor of
the approach of
the king of Spain
with a great and
victorious army.

The invader
declares he will
have his pleasure
of Olive, and will
slay her father.

¹ omitted. ²⁻³ god. ³ would. ⁴ nor. ⁵ the.
⁶ alwayes. ⁷ that. ⁸ and. ⁹ before.
¹⁰ Fol. clxxvi. back, col. 1. ¹¹ him. ¹² had been.
¹³ married. ¹⁴ burnt.

The emperor
takes counsel
with Ide.

Ide asks for fight-
ing men, and
promises to lead
them against the
enemy.

The emperor con-
fers knighthood
on Ide.

counsaille me, for I thought ful lytell that these men
of war wold haue come vpon me, and nowe they waste
and dystroye my lond.' 'Syr,' quod yde, 'trowble not
your selfe for it; comferte youre selfe and reioyse your 4
lordes & saruauntes, and let me haue men to fyght with
them, and I wyll loke vpon them or¹ they come any
nerer / and by the grace of god I shall cause them to
bye derely the dystruccyon that they haue made in 8
youre countre yf god saue my lyfe and my ²good²
sword'³ / when y^e emperour hard the valyant corage of
yde, he praysed hyr moche in his harte, and sayd /
'frend, your reason pleaseth me well / and therefore I 12
shal do you that honour as to make you a knyght,
wherby your prowes and hardynes shall encreas' /
'syr,' quod yde, 'of the honour *that* ye wyll do to me
I am ryght ioyful / and thanke you therof' / then the 16
emperoure came to⁴ yde and gyrte aboute hym a good
sworde & a ryche / it was so good that there was none
lyke it in goodnes, nor⁵ sharper, nor harder / ⁶then y^e
emperoure gaue her the necke stroke of knyghthood, 20
and sayde / 'yde, remembre this order, the whiche ye
haue receyued this daye / and I praye ²to² god⁷ it
maybe to the encreas of your honour, and euer ⁸beware
that your thoughtes be not lyght nor vauerynge, but 24
be⁹ sage and dyscrete, and atemperate, and be hardy in
baytell, and cast away fro you all fere² and drede² / and
when ye haue wonne any goodes or ryches / kepe them
not locked in your cofers / but ¹⁰depart with¹⁰ them to 28
poore knyghtes, the whiche shall encrease and exalte
your honoure / and alwayes loue¹¹ holy church; yf ye
do thus ye can not fayle to come to great honour, &
euer shew youre vertue ageynst your enemyes' / 'syr,' 32
quod yde, 'by the grace of ¹²our lord Iesu chryst¹²

¹ before. ² omitted. ³ hold. ⁴ vnto. ⁵ neither.

⁶ and. ⁷ that. ⁸ Fol. clxxvi. back, col. 2.

⁹ rather. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ distribute. ¹¹ the. ¹²⁻¹² god.

I shall so do that ther is no spaynyarde But that shall
 wysse themselfe¹ to be on the other syde of the see' /
 then eueryman arayed them in the paleys & in the
 4 citye / ²then trompettes and tabors and hornes began
 to sowne in the citye, so that all the cheualry and
 comunalte of the citye were redy armyd / then they
 came all before the palays and presentyd themselfe
 8 to the emperour / who dyd commaunde them that daye
 to folowe & obeye the commaundement of yde, whom
 he commytted that day to³ be as chefe capetayne, and
 sayde, 'syrs, loke ye do as moche for hym as ye wolde
 12 do for me, ²ye knowe well⁴ I am old and feble, and can
 bere armure no lenger / nor I am not able to ryde as I
 myghte haue done or⁵ this tyme / wherfore I desyre
 you, & also commaunde you all on payne of youre
 16 lyues to do euery thyng⁶ that he commaundethe in the
 stede of me as well as thoughe I dyd commaunde you⁷
 myne own parsons, for he that dothe the contrary,
 he shall lose his hede without any other redempcyon.'
 20 Then they all sayde they wold so do syn it was
 his pleasure. Then the noble emperoure causyd yde to
 be rychely armyde, and then delyueryd ⁸hym his owne
 hors, who was so good *that* his lyke coude not be
 24 founde in no⁹ countre / ¹⁰yde mounted vp quickly
 with helme and shyld and a great spere / then² yde
 toke leue of the emperour and of the lady Olyue, and
 so rode thurgh the citye of Rome with all his host;
 28 and when they were without the citye yde ordeyned
 .iii. batayles / y^e two fyrst batayles were led by two
 great lordes / and the thyrde yde dyd gyde it,¹¹ and thus
 with baners dysplayed¹² anaunsed forthe towardes theyr
 32 enemyes / y^e spanyardes thought suerly all had bene
 theys / bycause they sawe of all the waye that they

He bids his
 soldiers obey all
 Ide's commands.

He gives Ide his
 own horse.

Ide takes leave of
 the emperour and
 of Olive.

She puts the men
 in battle array,

¹ himself. ² and. ³ doe and. ⁴ that. ⁵ before.

⁶ as.

⁷ in.

⁸ Fol. clxxvii. col. 1.

⁹ any.

¹⁰ then.

¹¹ omitted.

¹² they.

had come no maner of defence made agaynst them / but it is an olde sayenge / *that* many thynges remayneth of such folysshe thoughtes / as it dyd with the spany-
 yardes / for they thought suerly ¹the citey of Rôme was 4 won ; but yf god ayde and socoure the damoyse yde and her cheualry, she shuld take fro them or it were nyght theyr hope to haue any vycory / she rode by her bataylles and encoraged her men, and mouyd them to 8 do valyauntly, ²thus they aprochyed towards the enemyes : great crye³ and noyse there was when the batayles encounteryd together / the shot flewe so thyeke of both partyes that it semed to be snowe and 12 hayle / yde encountered with a knyght, nephue to the kyng of Spayne / he receyued suche a stroke, that for all his armure ydes spere wente clene thrughe his body / so that the knyght fell to the erthe with his fete 16 vpwarde, and so dyed myserably amonge the horse fete / then yde sayde, 'of god be thou cursyd ; in an yll owre thou camste hether to recey[ue] suche an offerynge. I chalenge fro you all the empyre of Rome' / then she 20 sayde to herselfe, 'good lord god, humbly⁴ I re⁵quyre the this day⁶ ayde and socoure me this⁷ poore fugy-tyue' / therwith she sporred her horse ⁸with the sporres⁸ / and with the same spere she slewe another 24 great baron of Spayne, and so slewe with the same spere dyuers other / and when the spere was broken / ⁸then⁸ she drew out her ⁸good⁸ sworde, the whiche the emperoure had geuen her / then she came to a notable 28 duke of Spayne, vnclie to the kyng, to whome she gaue suche a stroke with her good sworde that she claued his hede to the tethe, and so⁹ fell downe dede / then she dassed into the thyckest presse / and euer dyd chese 32 out of the greatest parsonages, and slew many of them,

and they meet the Spaniards.

Ide kills the nephew of the king of Spain.

She wields her sword in the thickest parts of the fight with deadly force.

¹ that. ² and. ³ ioy. ⁴ humbly *after* require.
⁵ Fol. clxxvii. col. 2. ⁶ to. ⁷ a.
⁸⁻⁸ omitted. ⁹ he.

- for she thought the mo that were slayne of the great men, the more shulde her enemyes be afracyd, therefore she chese out suche one after another / and also the
- 4 Romaynes fought valiantly / so that by the hyge prowes of yde and of the good cheualry Romayne¹ that was with her / made the Spanyardes abasshed, and caused them to fle away / and had neuer retourned
- 8 agayne and² the duke of Argonne, with .thre.M. knyghtes in his company, had not bene, who made them that fled to retourne agayne / then there began agayne a ferse batayle, and many a man slayne /
- 12 the Romayns dyd valyauntly by the ayde and comforte of theyr capytayne; she rode into the thyckeste of the prese & bet downe the Spanyardes on al sydes, that petye it was to se / Great was the noyse, petuously
- 16 cryed out the hurt men lyeng among the horse fete, which were beten downe to the erthe / then the kyng of Spayne came in to the batayle with his sworde in his hande, and encounteryd with a great lorde
- 20 of Rome, whiche was cosyn to y^e emperour / y^e kynge gaue³ hym suche a stroke on⁴ the helme that he claue his hede in to y^e braynes / and then the kynge slewe another / then yde, who saw that, was sorowful, and
- 24 sayd, 'I ought lytell to be prayسد / without I reuenge the deth of this .ii. lordes slayne by y^e kynge of Spayne' / ⁵she rode to the kynge and gaue hym suche a stroke on⁴ the helme / that all the sercles with stones
- 28 and perlys flew downe to the erth, and strok a waye a part of his coyfe and⁶ here and skynne, and yf the kyng had not tornid his hede ⁷elles his hed⁷ had bene clouen to the tethe, and the sworde glente⁸ & lyght on⁴
- 32 the horse necke and strake it clene asonder, and so the hors fell downe dede, & the kynge to the erthe, wherof

The Spanyards
begin to flee
before her;

but the king of
Spain comes into
the battle

and slays the
emperour's cousin.

Ido rides up to
him, slays his
horse, and fells
him to the
ground.

¹ of the Romanes.

² if.

³ Fol. clxxvii. back, col. 1.

⁴ vpon.

⁵ then.

⁶ omitted.

⁷⁻⁷ it.

⁸ glaunched.

the spanyardes where sore afayed,¹ thynkyng the kynge
 His guards flee, kynge had bene ded² / so they fled awaye & lefte him
 there lyeng on the erth in a traunce, so³ that he coude
 and Ide makes him prisoner while he lies in a trance. nother se, nor⁴ here, nor speke one word; then the
 damoyzell yde toke hym and delyuered him to two
 noble lordes of the emperours courte, and when he
 reuyued he was made to swere and promise to be a trew
 The king is taken before the emperor by two lords. presoner / those two lordes wente with the kynge
 of spayne into the citey of Rome, and presentyd hym
 to⁵ the emperour fro yde / wherof the emperour thankyd
 god *that* he sente yde thether to serue hym / then
 the kyng was set in a strong towre, and yde was
 without⁶ doynge maruayles in armes, so that euery man
 was abasshed therof / ⁷so that⁷ y^e spanyardes made
 Ides prowess wins the battle. hym⁸ way / fynally, by y^e hys prowes of the damoyzell
 yde, the kynge of Spayne was taken, and all his
 men dyscomfyted; happy was he that myght scape to
 saue his lyfe / long endured y^e chase,⁹ wherin many
 were slayne and taken / then yde and her company
 retorned to the¹⁰ tentis and pa¹¹uylyons, and there they
 founde great ryches, the whiche was broughte out
 Olive loves Ide for her courage. of Spayne / ⁷the whiche⁷ was geuen and departed¹²
 to them *that* had deserued it / great ioye was made in
 the¹³ citey of Rome / for the batayle was well sene
 ouer the walles, and specyally the lady Olyue had well
 regarded the hys prowesse of yde / wherby she louyd
 her so in her hart that she smyled for ioye, and sayde
 to herselfe, ¹⁴'yonder yonge knyght I do gyue my
 She had loved none before. loue / the whiche I neuer before grauntyd to any man
 leuyng / but it is good ryght and reason that I graunt
 my loue to yde' / suche¹⁵ wordes Olyue sayde to
 herself.

32

¹ abasshed. ² slaine. ³ in such sort. ⁴ omitted.⁵ vnto. ⁶ still. ⁷⁻⁷ and. ⁸ her.⁹ the chase *after* endured. ¹⁰ their.¹¹ Fol. clxxvii, back, col. 2. ¹² distributed. ¹³ noble.¹⁴ to. ¹⁵ like.

¶ How y^e emperoure of Rome receyuid hyely
the noble damoyzell yde, and of y^e honour
that was made to¹ her / & how the em-
perour made her constable of his empyre /
and how the kyng of Spayne was delyuered
out of pryson, and made homage to¹ the
emperour. Ca. C.lxxviii.

8 **A**fter that the bataile was done and
fynysshed, and the botye departed³ /
yde with great triumphe, acompanyed
with lordes and knyghtes, enteryd
12 into y^e citey of Rome / ⁴the emperour
was enformed of the comynge of yde
and of her valyaunt dedis, by whom the batayle was
wonne,⁵ and howe that none coude endure agaynst her,
16 wherof y^e emperour had suche ioye at his harte that he
wyst not what to do; ⁴he thanked our lorde ⁶Iesu
chryst⁶ that the mater wente so to hys honoure and
glory / therwith yde came to the palays, wheras she
20 was receyued with great ioye with all the colages of y^e
citey / and when the emperoure sawe her he rose and
enbrasyd her, and sayde / 'my trewe frende yde /
of your comyng I am ryght ioyous,⁷ for this day ye
24 haue done suche honoure to our empyre that y^e ought
to be honoured for euer, and bycause ye haue done vs
suche seruyce we wyll⁸ ye shall be the myrour for
al other knyghtes to encorage them to do wel / we
28 therefore make you our fyrst chaumberlayne and hye
constable of all our empyre Romaine, and all my
londes and syngnoryes I abandon to be at your com-
maundement in all thynges that ye thynke resonable to
32 be done / for I wyll and commaund that all my lordes

The emperor
receives Ide with
great joy.

He makes Ide his
first chamberlain
and high
constable.

¹ vnto. ² Fol. clxxviii. col. 1. ³ distributed.
⁴ and. ⁵ obtained. ⁶⁻⁶ god. ⁷ ioyfull. ⁸ that.

The king of
Spain is brought
before the
emperor.

The emperor
sentences him
to death.

The king in
alarm offers to
make abject
submission,
and implores
mercy.

do obeye you.' 'Syr,' quod yde, 'of this honour
I thanke you / god gyue me the grace that I may
all wayes parseuer to do that thyng that shall be to
you agreable and profytable to your countres and ⁴
syngnoryes' / then the emperour sente for the kyng of
spayne out of pryson / ¹when he was come he knelyd
downe and sayde / 'syr, I requyre you haue petye of
me' / the emperour answered fersly, and sayd / 'kyng ⁸
of Spay²ne / for what cause are you come out of your
countrie of spayne thus to dystroy and waste myne
empyre; ye haue slayne many of my lordes and
knyghtes, who neuer dyd you any dyspleasure; and ¹²
besyde *that*, ye haue brente³ many of my townes, and
beten downe my castelles, wherof I am sory, seyng
that nother I nor none of myne dyd you neuer⁴ dys-
pleasure / and bycause that all yll⁵ oughte to be ¹⁶
punysshed, and all good dedys rewarded / or⁶ euer I
drynke any wyne I shall cause your hede to be streken
of, for any mans spekyng to the contrary I shall not
fayle to do it' / when the kyng harde that he was in ²⁰
great fere / & prayed humbly ⁷that he wold⁷ haue
petye of hym, and sayde how he was redy to make
amendys of all his trespasses / and to repayre agayne
al the yll damages done by hym and⁸ caused to be ²⁴
done within the empyre, and therwith to do homage
and feaulte to⁹ hym, and to holde the realme of spayne
of hym, promysynge also yf any war were made
agaynst the emperour / he to¹⁰ come and socoure hym ²⁸
with .xx.M. men at his owne proper costys and dys-
pence,¹¹ and to be with hym agaynst all men *that* wolde
trouble hym / then the emperoure sayde / 'syr¹² kyng of
Spayne, knowe for trouthe that for all youre promyse ³²
and wordes I wyll do but lytell for it, for ye shall not

¹ and. ² Fol. clxxviii. col. 2. ³ burnt. ⁴ any.
⁵ euill. ⁶ before. ⁷⁻⁷ him to. ⁸ or. ⁹ vnto.
¹⁰ would. ¹¹ charges. ¹² omitted.

- scape¹ me' / then the damoyzell yde stept forth and
 sayde to the emperoure / 'syr, I haue often tymes hard
 say that he that humbleth hymselfe and cryethe for
 4 marcy / reason then² requereth *that* he shulde haue
 marcy graunted hym, and therefore, syr, I requyre you
 to receyue this kyng to your grace, and pardon his
 trespas, seyng the offers that he hathe offeryd to do /
 8 ³he shal⁴ become your lege ⁵man, and holde his lond
 of you / and amende the damages that ye haue suffered /
 he that reason offereth ought to haue reason / well⁶ ye
 ought to thanke god syn suche a man as he is puttethe
 12 hymselfe into your handes' / when the emperoure
 vnderstode yde, he sayde / 'frende yde, your wytte
 and courtoysye is to be alowed / and by cause I knowe
 that the counseall that ye gyue me is resonable, I wyl
 16 do as ye wyl haue me / take⁷ him, and by you he shall
 be delyuered' / 'syr,' quod yde, 'I thank you' / when
 the kyng of spayn sawe that he shuld haue grace, and
 that with a mendis makynge he shuld be quyte de-
 20 lyuered, he thankyd god / & dyd homage to the
 Emperoure, and delyuered hym⁸ plegys suffycient⁹ to
 make restytucion as he had promysyd / then the
 emperour gaue hym a sauecoundyte tyl¹⁰ he ¹¹was re- and is liberated.
 24 tourned¹¹ into his owne countre, & all the other presoners
 were delyuered, such as were taken in the batayle by
 the Romayns / then the kyng of Spayne was ioyfull,
 and oftentymes thankyd the damoyzell yde by whose
 28 meanes *that*¹² bounte and courtoysye was shewed hym /
 then he toke¹³ leue of the emperour and of yde, and of
 all other lordes and knyghtes *that* were there present /
 and so he retourned into his countre of Spayne / where
 32 as he was receyued with sore wepynges for y^e great

Ide pleads for
 his life with the
 emperor.

The emperor
 agrees to spare
 the king's life.

He does homage
 to the emperor,

He thanks Ide
 many times.

¹ from. ² then *before* reason. ³ that. ⁴ will.

⁵ Fol. clxxviii. back, col. 1. ⁶ and. ⁷ you.

⁸ omitted. ⁹ sufficient *before* pledges. ¹⁰ vntill.

¹¹⁻¹¹ came. ¹² this. ¹³ his.

losse that they¹ had receyued. Now we shall leue spekyng of hym and retourne to our mater.

¶ Howe the emperoure gaue his doughter Olyue in maryage to the damoyssel yde / 4 knowynge none other but that she had bene a man, ²and howe she was apeched by a verlette, that harde theyr deuyses whyles they were a³bed together, wherby 8 the emperour wold haue brent⁴ the damoyssel yde. Ca. C.lxxix.



Ido does the emperor much service;

she settles all the disputes of his lords.

Olive falls more deeply in love with her.

After that the kynge of Spayne was departed fro Rome, the emperour 12 honoryd and praysed moch yde for y^e good seruyce that she had doné / who euer better & better parseuered in good seruyce doynge, for she dyd 16 so moche by her wyt that all dyscordes and debates that were in the empyre betwene lordes or neybouris, she set them in peas and acorde, wherfore the emperour louyd her in such wyse that without her he dyd 20 nothyng / and the emperours doughter Olyue loued her in suche wyse that she coude not lyue one day without y^e syght of her, she was so taken with loue, thynkyng that she neuer sawe so goodlye a ⁵yonge 24 man / and so on a day the emperour assemblyd his lordes and his preuy counsayle / to whome he shewed and sayde that he had but one doughter, the which as then was of lawful age / wherfore he wolde that she 28 shulde be maryed, to the entente that she myght haue hayers to enioye his londes after his dyscese / & sayd, 'syrs, I thynke yf all y^e world shuld be serchyd there

¹ he.

² Fol. clxxviii. back, col. 2.

³ in.

⁴ burnt.

⁵ Fol. clxxix. col. 1.

- coude not be founde a man so worthy to haue my
doughter Olyue in maryage as our welbeloued constable,
the valyaunt yde, by whom so noble seruyce hath bene
4 done to vs and to our hole empyre / for I wolde or¹ I
dye that she shulde be maryed / and I thynke I can
not better bestow her / for in al the worlde there is not
a more valyaunt knyght then yde is, nor that is better²
8 worthy to gouerne an empyre or a great realme / when
the lordes vnderstode y^e emperoure / they al allowed his
mynde, and counsailed hym to do the same; then the
good emperoure called to hym yde, and sayd, 'My dere
12 ³and cordyall³ frende, for y^e great seruyce that ye haue
done / I wyll rewarde you as by reason I am bound to
do, and I can not gyue you a more rycher thinge, nor
that I loue better, then Olyue my dere doughter /
16 whom I wyll gyue you in maryage, and I wyll that ye
take her to your wyfe, to the entente that after my
dayes ye maye gouerne myne empyre / for nowe I fele
my selfe agyd and feble / wherfore I shal be content
20 that fro hensforthe ye haue the gouernynge therof / and
now I delyuer to you my londe in kepyng to gouerne
it as your owne' / 'A, sir,' quod yde, 'what is that
ye saye / ye knowe well I am but a poore gentylman
24 banysshed out of my countre / and⁴ am worthe noth-
ynge / great ⁵damage it shulde be so noble a damoysell
to be assyngned to ⁶so poore a⁶ man as I am / syr, I cry
you marcy, humbly requyrynge you to take aduyce that
28 your doughter, who is so fayre, maye be maryed to
some hye prynce and pusaunte, to the entent that yf ye
shulde haue any busynes that he myght be of power to
ayd and to socour you / ⁷I am poore, & ought alwayes
32 to trauallye and to take payne to get honour for me, and
to encrease my lynage' / 'what,' quod y^e emperour, 'are
you so hardy⁸ to refuse my doughter, by whom great

The emperor
declares that he
can bestow her
nowhere so well
as on Ide,
his valiant
constable.

The emperor
informs Ide of
his purpose.

Ide deprecates
the notion of
marriage with
Olive;
she is a poor
gentleman
banished out of
her own country,
unworthy of
such honour.

The emperor is
wrathful at his
officer's rejection

¹ before. ² more. ³⁻³ omitted. ⁴ I.
⁵ Fol. clxxix. col. 2. ⁶⁻⁶ such a poore. ⁷ for. ⁸ as.

of his daughter's
hand;

and Ide in fear
yields to his will.

The emperor
reveals the matter
to Olive.

She is very
joyful;

she desires to be
married quickly.

welth and goodnes maye come to you' / 'syr,' quod
yde, 'syn it is so that it plesse you to shewe me this
honoure I wyll not refuse it / but, syr, I saye it to the
entente *that* ye shulde take good aduyce therin / & syn¹ 4
ye be² content that I shulde thus do, and that it is your
pleasure, I am content, and³ humbly thanke your grace
of the honour that ye bere me' / then the emperour
sente for his doughter, who cam to⁴ hym with a glad 8
hart, for she had ben aduerteyssed of the mater why that
her father sent for her / ⁵then the emperoure sayd,
'doughter, ye muste promyse me to do as I shall shewe
you' / 'syr,'⁶ quod she, 'it is not in me, nor I wyll 12
not refuse any thyng that is your pleasure' / 'doughter,'
quod the emperoure, 'ye do well so to answere me / &
bycause I haue no mo but you that ought to haue my
realme after me, therefore I wyll ye take a husbonde, to 16
the entent that your londes and synnoryes maye
be defended by hym, & therfore I wyl⁷ ye take to your
husband our capetayne, the valyaunte yde, whome
I loue enterely / this is my pleasure and agremente of 20
all my lordes / yf it be your pleasure to haue hym, he
shall be kynge and you quene after my disces.' 'syr,'
quod ⁸the lady, 'I am redy to fulfyll your wyll,⁹ and
to obeie your commaundementes, and I thanke god of 24
this fayre aduenture that is fallen to me this day / for
I shall haue hym that I ¹⁰haue loued¹⁰ beste; I haue
not now lost my tyme, when I shall haue at my wyl
hym whom I ¹¹most desyre in¹¹ the worlde' / ¹²she 28
knelyd downe before her father & thankyd hym of his
gyfte / ¹³then she rose and kyste her father, and sayde,
'ryght dere father, I requyre you haste¹³ that this be
done; let us go to the churche to be wedded, for me 32

¹ seeing.

² are.

³ I.

⁴ vnto.

⁵ and.

⁶ Deere father.

⁷ that.

⁸ Fol. clxxix. back, col. 1.

⁹ pleasure.

¹⁰⁻¹⁰ loue.

¹¹⁻¹¹ loue best in all.

¹² then.

¹³ to hasten.

thyne we ought so to do; when the lordes hard the
 lady they laughed at her haste / ¹then the emperour
 said, 'doughter, come forth and fyauunce your hus-
 4 bond, and you, yde, aproche nere; and now, after my
 dethe, I gyue you all ²my realme,² and I gyue you my
 dere doughter in recompence of the good seruyce that
 ye haue done me' / when yde vnderstode the emperour /
 8 all her blode chaunged, she wyste not what to do, all
 her body trymbelid; for fere she callyd vpon our lorde
 god ryght petuously to herselfe, and prayed god³ to
 haue petye of her, and to counsayle her what was best
 12 for her to do / for she sawe that parforce the emperoure
 wold mary her to his doughter, and sayde, 'a, my
 father Florence, by you and by your dyshordynat
 rage I am now brought to this case, when ye made me
 16 to departe by case ye wolde haue had me to your wyfe,
 but or⁴ I wold haue consentyd therto I had rather⁵
 haue bene brent⁶ / therefore I fled awaye to eschewe that
 shame, wherby I haue bene syn in many paretles / for⁷
 20 the which, by the wyll of god, I haue scapyd, wherof I
 ought to thanke hym / and I thought to kepe my selfe
 with in Rome secrete, and that no man shulde know
 that⁸ I am a woman, but I shall be acusyde by the
 24 emperours doughter, whose loue is so sore⁹ set on me
 that I haue no powre to escape without I stele preuely
 away fro them all; and yf I shewe them what I am, I
 maye then sone haue some velany and ¹⁰acuse me and
 28 send me to¹⁰ y^e kyng my father, or els to send hym
 word where I am, and then in great haste he shall¹¹
 sende for me / or elles, yf I wyll scape, I must fle awaye
 ouer the see / howbeit, I speke but lyke a fole / syn¹²
 32 this fortune is fallen to¹³ me to haue y^e emperours

The emperor
promises to
bequeath his
kingdom to his
daughter and son-
in-law.

Ide is sorely
troubled,
and prays to
heaven for aid.

She curses her
father's wicked-
ness.

She fears that
when her disguise
is discovered she
will be sent back
to Florence her
father.

¹ and. ²⁻² mine Empire. ³ him. ⁴ before.
⁵ to. ⁶ burnt. ⁷ from. ⁸ Fol. clxxix. back, col. 2.
⁹ much. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ bee accused and sent vnto. ¹¹ will.
¹² seeing. ¹³ vnto.

Ide and Olive
are formally
affianced.

They are soon
afterwards
married.

A great fest
follows.

Olive and Ide go
to the wedding
chamber;

but Ide main-
tains her disguise.

doughter in maryage and his realme¹ / I shall wed
her & do as god wyl gyue me grace to do' / All this the
damoyzell yde spoke to herselfe. Then she sayde to
the emperour / 'syr, syn it is your pleasure to geue me⁴
your doughter in maryage, I am redy to take her.'
Then they were led to the mynster church / and there
they were fyaunced, wherof great ioye was made in
rome / then the day of maryage came / then² the fayre⁸
Olyue was led to the church betwene .ii. kynges / and
yde went afore all³ sadly / and so⁴ they⁴ cam to the
church, and there⁵ were wedded. Then great was the
triumphe and ioye⁴ that was⁴ in the citey of Rome; 12
many a ryche garment of golde and sylke was worne
that daye / ²euery man ran to se the new brydes / then
they went to the palays, and so to dyner. Of the
festes and⁴ sportes and ryche metys that was⁶ there 16
that day, yf I shulde shew it the tyme shulde be ouer
longe to reherse yt / but syn Rome was fyrste founded
yt was not knowen that ther had ben such a fest as this
maryage⁷ / for no man⁸ thought but that yde had ben 20
a man / and after supper, ⁹and that⁹ it was tyme to go
to rest / the brydes were brought in to ther chaumber /
then the lady¹⁰ Olyue went to her bedde / than came
yde and the chambre auoyded / ¹¹than yde¹¹ locked fast 24
the dore, to the entent that none shulde here them /
than he¹² cam to the⁴ bed, and layde hym¹³ downe on
the bed syde / & said to Olyue / 'my ryght swete loue,
god gyue you good nyght / for as for me, I can gyue 28
you no good / for¹⁴ I fele suche a dissease, the which
greueth me sore' / and therwith she kyst Olyue, who
answered and said / 'my swete loue, ye ar the thing
in the worlde that I moost desyre / for the bounte and 32

¹ Empire. ² and. ³ verie. ⁴ omitted. ⁵ they.
⁶ were. ⁷ wedding. ⁸ bodie. ⁹⁻⁹ when.
¹⁰ Fol. clxxx. col. 1. ¹¹⁻¹¹ and shee. ¹² shee.
¹³ her. ¹⁴ because.

swetnes that I know in you, ye¹ do with me as it shall
 please you / & to the entent that ye shall not thynke
 that I haue so great desyre that ye shulde do y^e thyng,
 4 the whiche of right ought to be done bytwene man and
 woman² / I am content to forbere it this³.xv. daies /
 & bycause that dyuers folkes are here aboute to herken⁴
 vs / I am contente to gyue you trewes / for we shall
 8 haue space ynoughe hereafter to sporte vs / for⁵ I
 knowe such noblenes in you that I am sure ye wyll
 take none other wyfe / nor touche none other / but that
 ye wyll kepe your fayth & trouth to me / for I am
 2 chast, & so ye shall fynde me / it suffyseth me to
³clyppe and³ kysse you / and as for y^e preuy loue, I am
 content for this tyme, syn it is your pleasure, to forbere
 it.' Than yde answered / 'fayre lady, I wyll not refuse
 16 youre wyll.' thus they passed that nyght with clyp-
 pyng and kyssynge. Than in the mornynge they
 arose and made them redy, & cam in to the palais /
 themperour beheld Oliue his daughter / to se if she
 20 were any thinge chaunged ³or altered³ / and said,
 'daughter / how is it with your husbond?' 'Syr,'
 quod she, 'euyne as I desyre / for I loue yde my hus-
 bonde better than I doo⁶ you / all though ye be⁷ my
 24 father' / at that ⁸worde the emperoure and all his
 lordes laughed / so great ioy and feast⁹ was ther made,
 10 the whiche¹⁰ endured eyght dayes. Than euery man
 toke leaue and wente whyther as they list / than⁵ after
 28 the fyftene daies were past¹¹ that yde had lyen with
 Oliue / yde touched her not but with ³clippyng and³
 kyssyng / whearof Oliue was sorowfull, and said to
 herselfe, 'O, good lorde, I was engendred in an euyll
 32 hour whan I haue maried the goodlyest person of the
 worlde / and the moost worthyest and hardiest that

The wedding
 festivities
 continue for
 eight days.

¹ then.² wife.³ omitted.⁴ heare.⁵ and.⁶ loue.⁷ are.⁸ Fol. clxxx. col. 2.⁹ feasting.¹⁰⁻¹⁰ that it.¹¹ expired.

Idle is forced to
reveal the truth
to Olive,

who declares that
she will keep the
secret.

A page overhears
Ide's confession,

and bears news
of it to the
emperor.

euer was gyrd with¹ swerde and² rode on hors /
he maketh noo³ maner of³ semblaunce to do that
thyng that⁴ I so sore haue desyred / than she drew
nere to yde and touched him⁵ / than yde, who knewe⁴
³ ryght³ well what her desyre was / he³ turned⁶ to
herward⁶ and wolde hyde himselfe no lenger fro her /
but all wepyng cryed her mercy, and shewed her fro
the begynnynge to the endynge the maner of all her⁸
aduenture / and how that she was a woman and was
fledde awaye bycause her father wolde haue married her
himselfe. And whan Olyue vnderstode yde / she was
right sorowfull / howbeit, she comforted yde, and said / ¹²
'my right swete loue, discomforte not yourselfe / for ye
shall not be⁷ bewrayed for⁷ me nother to no man nor
woman lyuynge / we are wedded togyther, ⁸I wyl
be good and trewe to you syn ye haue kept youre selfe ¹⁶
so trewly / with you I wyl vse my tyme and passe my
destany syn it is thus, for I se wel it is the pleasure of
our lord godde.' Thus as Olyue and yde were deuy-
synge togyther of their secretes / a page, beyng in a ²⁰
chaumbre that ioyned⁹ fast vnto⁹ their chaumbre,
herde well all their secrete wordes and communycacion
what eche of them had sayd vnto¹⁰ y^e other, ¹¹than he in
all hast went to the emperour and shewed hym all that ²⁴
he had herde betwene y^e two louers / whan themperour
herde that he was ryght sorowfull, and saide, 'felowe,
beware what thou sayest / looke that thy reporte be
trewe / for yf I fynde it contrary thou shalt dye of³ ²⁸
an yll deth' / 'syr,' ³quod he³ / 'if it be not as I haue
sayd, and that yde be not a woman, whom ye take for
a man, stryke of my head.' Than themperour made
hym to be taken & kept, to the entent to proue the ³²
trouthe / for he thought the matter straunge to byleue /

¹ a. ² or. ³⁻³ omitted. ⁴ which. ⁵ her.
 ⁶⁻⁶ toward her. ⁷⁻⁷ accused by. ⁸ and.
⁹⁻⁹ close to. ¹⁰ to. ¹¹ Fol. clxxx. back, col. 1.

- than he called to hym the lordes of his preuy counsell /
 and he shewed them the mater / whearof they had
 great¹ marueyle, seynge the great vertue / and hye
 4 prowes that was in yde / ²they greatly complayned³ the
 mater, and were sorowfull / than the emperour, who was
 right pensyfe, sware and made promyse / that if he
 found the mater in *that* case / he wolde cause both his
 8 doughter and yde to be brent,⁴ bycause of hydyng
 of that straunge cas, and sayd, 'if yde had dyscouered
 the matter to me be tymes / my doughter sholde neuer
 haue wedded⁵ her, and the matter⁶ kepte close fro me /
 12 I shal neuer haue ioy at my herte tyll⁷ I knowe the
 trouth' / than he commaunded a bayne⁸ to be made
 redy in his owne chambre, whearin he wolde haue yde
 to be bayned,⁹ to the entent that he myght know the
 16 trouth or¹⁰ she scaped away, for he sayd he wold not
 suffre suche boggery¹¹ to be vsed / the baynge¹² was
 made redy, and yde was sent for / who knewe no-
 thyng of that matter / than themperour sayd to him,¹³
 20 'yde, do of your clothes, for ye shal bayne⁸ you with
 me' / whan yde herd the emperour, she was sore
 abashed, and sayd, 'Syr, I pray you forbere it for this
 time, for¹⁴ I haue not ben accustomed to be ¹⁵bayned.'⁹
 24 Than the emperoure sayde / 'I wyll not bere¹⁶ it / for I
 wyll se you naked / for yf I fynde it trewe that¹⁷ hathe
 ben shewed me / bothe you and my doughter shall be
 brent.'⁴ Whan yde herd that she sawe well she was
 28 betrayed and loste / than she kneled downe before the
 emperour and cryed hym mercy / and requyred hym to
 haue pyte of her / than² the emperour in great hast
 sent for his lordes, who were in the hall / talkynge
 32 together, & were sorowfull for yde, whom they loued

The emperor
calls his lords
together,
and asks their
advice.

He swears that if
Ide be a woman,
she and Olive
shall be burnt.

A bath is set out
in his own
chamber,

and the emperor
bids Ide enter it
in his presence.

Ide protests,
and falls weeping
at his knees.

¹ much. ² and. ³ of. ⁴ burnt. ⁵ married.
⁶ now. ⁷ vntill. ⁸ bath. ⁹ bathed. ¹⁰ before.
¹¹ falsehood. ¹² bathing. ¹³ her. ¹⁴ because.
¹⁵ Fol. clxxx. back, col. 2. ¹⁶ forbere.
¹⁷ which.

The Emperor
will have no
mercy on her,

and the fire is
prepared to burn
her.

Ide prays to the
Virgin.

entyrely / so they cam to y^e emperour, and founde yde
before hym on her knees sore wepyng / so¹ that for pety
of her they wept all / than themperour shewed them
all the dede / whearfore he² must nedes se Iustyce to 4
be done vpon yde / who than by the peers & lordes
of Rome was iudged to be brent.³ Than it was
commaunded the fyre to be made redy to bryn⁴ her, the
whiche was done / and yde before the emperour abyd- 8
ynge her iudgment, with her handes ioyned lyft vp
towards the heuen / makynge pyteous⁵ praiers to our
lorde god and to the⁶ vyrgyn Mary his moder,⁶ praienge
them to haue pety of her soule, and to receyue it in to 12
the holy paradyse / for she saw wel y^e ende⁷ was come⁷
of her lyfe.

¶ Howe oure lorde god made great myracles
for yde / for god made hym⁸ to chaunge 16
from the nature of a woman and to become
a parfite man / whearof the emperour & his
doughter Oliue⁹ had great ioy / and so yde
and olyue lay togyther and engendered a 20
fayre sonne named after Croysant. And of
the deth of the emperoure. Ca. C[1].xxx.

A marvellous
voice from heaven
is heard while Ide
is praying.

It bids the
emperour do Ide
no hurt.

The same houre that yde was in her prayers /
sodenly there appered in the chambre a great clere 24
light / and therwith a meruelous swete odoure / that it
semed all y^e chambre to be full of ensence and spyces
aromatyke / then anone¹⁰ after they herd an angelyke
voyce sent from oure lorde god & sayd / 'thou em- 28
perour of Rome, oure lorde god commaundeth the by
me / that thou be not so hardye¹¹ to touche yde to
do her any hurte / for oure lorde god hath done her y^e

¹ in such sort. ² ye. ³ burnt. ⁴ burn.
⁵ pitifull. ⁶⁻⁶ hooly ghost. ⁷⁻⁷ after lyfe. ⁸ her.
⁹ Fol. clxxxi. col. 1. ¹⁰ presently. ¹¹ as.

grace for the goodnes *that* is in her / he doth consent
 and wyll by his dyuyne puyssaunce / that she be
 chaunged in nature, and¹ become a parfeyght man as all
 4 other be with out any difference / & also god com-
 maundeth that the page whom thou hast in pryson that
 thou ²let hym go quyt² / for that³ he sheweth the was
 of trougħ / this mornynge yde was a woman, and⁴ now
 8 he⁵ is a man / Also god commaundeth the to make
 thyself redye, for *thou* shalt lyue here in this world but
 .viii. dayes longer / therfor fro henceforth let yde and
 Olyue thy doughter haue gouernynge of thy realme,⁶
 12 who or⁷ this yere be passed shall haue betwene them a
 sonne who shal be named Croisant, who shall do mer-
 uelles whan he cometh to age. many aduentures and
 pouertyes he shall suffer in his youth, but afterward he
 16 shall haue ioy and welth ynough' / & with those
 wordes the angell wanysshed away / and left them-
 perour and his lordes and al the people of Rome in
 great ioy for y^e euident ⁸myracle that our lord god had
 20 sent by the prayer of yde / who and⁹ Olyue his wyfe
 had great ioy and thanked our lord ¹⁰Iesu Chryst¹⁰ /
 than the feest and tryumphe began agayne at Rome.
 the¹¹ day past and the nyght came, and yde and Olyue
 24 went to bed togyther, and toke there sport in suche
 wyse that the same nyght was gotten & engenderyd
 the fayre Croysant, whearby y^e ioy dobled in the cite of
 Rome / the next daye yde came to the palayes with
 28 other lordes. And themperour was in his chambre
 makynge of his testament / for he had not forgotten the
 wordes of the aungell. so he lyued .viii. dayes longer,
 and on the .ix. day he dyed / and he was borne into
 32 the great churche of saynt Peter, wheare his absequy
 was done solemply, and layde in his tombe, the whiche

Her sex is to be changed.

The emperor will die within eight days.

All the words come true.

The emperor dies, and is buried in St. Peter's church.

¹ to. ²⁻³ settest him at libertie.

⁵ she.

⁶ Empire.

⁷ before.

⁹ with.

¹⁰⁻¹⁰ god.

³ which.

⁴ but.

⁸ Fol. clxxxi. col. 2.

¹¹ that.

Olive is delivered
of a fair son,

who is named
Croissant.

He is carefully
trained in youth.

He is kept at
school till he is
fifteen.

was ordeyned for hym as it apartayned. his sone in
law and his doughter morned accordynge to the custome
than vsed / and¹ after .viii. dayes was² passed all the
noble lordes of the cuntrye came to the courte and 4
crowned yde emperoure & Olyue his wyfe empresse /
greate³ feest and ioy³ was made at theyr coronacion.
And whan Olyue thempresse approched her time / she
was delyuered of a fayre sonne / and whan he was 8
cristened he was named Croysant / that is to say, grow-
yng, because the mone the same tyme was Increasyng /
of the chere that yde and his lordes made at the byrth
of this chyde nede not to be rehersed / for ye may well 12
thynke it was as great as euer was any done before /
than the tyme came that thempresse was chyrched,
wherof gret ioy was made. this chylde was well
norysshed,⁴ two notable ladyes had the kepyng of hym 16
⁵tyll⁵ .vii. yeres⁶ were past⁶ / then a noble knyght and
an aunseant was set aboute hym, and a wyse and a
great clerke to teche hym co⁷nyng, for comonly it is
said that a kyng without letter⁸ or conyng is compared 20
to an asse crowned / often tymes the father & the
mother wolde visytte theyr chylde / he was kept to
scole tyll⁹ he was .xv. yeres of age, and he was so good
a clerke that ther was none in the cite of Rome / but 24
that he coude well dispute with hym and assayle his
questions / yf his beawte / greatnes / force / humylyte /
and good vertues whearwith he was indewed / yf I
shulde discriue / ¹⁰or report¹⁰ them it shulde¹¹ be ouer 28.
longe to rehearse / whearof yde and his mother olyue
hadde such ioye that they wyst not what to do, but
alonly to thanke god of his grace / for this¹² chylde
grew so in bygnes and strength that euery man was 32
therof abasshed in such wyse that at that tyme there

¹ then. ² were. ³⁻³ ioy and feasting. ⁴ and.

⁵⁻⁵ vntill he was. ⁶⁻⁶ of age.

⁷ Fol. clxxxi. back, col. 1. ⁸ learning. ⁹ vntill.

¹⁰⁻¹⁰ omitted. ¹¹ would. ¹² their.

coude not be founde in y^e cite of Rome of his age none
 so great / nor so ¹bygge of strength¹ / whearof his father
 & his mother and all the noble lordes & knyghtes were
 4 ryght ioyfull.

His strength
 excels that of
 other men.

¶ Howe Kyng Florence sent two knyghtes to
 Rome to themperour his sonne, desiringe
 hym to come and se him, & to leue thempyre
 8 of Rome to his son croisant / & to set noble
 men aboute him to gyde him / and also²
 bringe with him thempresse / the faire
 Oliue. Capitulo .Clxxxi.

12 He emperour and thempresse, seynge
 theyr sonne to growe & amende eury
 day in all good warkes, they thanked
 god, prayenge hym to gyue hym the
 16 grace from bet³ter to better to par-
 seyuer / so it fell that on a witsonday
 themperour and thempresse helde estate royall at there
 palayes for y^e solemnyte of that day⁴ / there was many
 20 diuers⁵ kynges / barons / dukes / erles / duchesses and
 ladyes / & whyles they were in the myddes of theyr
 dynere / there arryued two notable aunciaunt knyghtes /
 24 whan they were entered into the palayes they came
 before themperour & kneled downe and sayd / 'god
 that hath vs created saue & kepe the noble kyng
 Florence of Aragon and of Nauerne and duke of Bur-
 deaux / and the same god saue y^e ryght noble and ryght
 28 excellent emperour 'Romaine, her⁶ dere sonne, and his
 fayre doughter thempresse Olyue' / whan themperour
 yde herd spekyng of his father / he was feerfull in his
 hert bycause of y^e shamfull thyng not faysable⁷ the
 32 whiche he wolde haue done agaynst hym / ryght in-

Messengers from
 King Florence
 come to Ida.

¹⁻¹ hye of stature.

² to.

³ Fol. clxxxi. back, col. 2.

⁴ and. ⁵ omitted.

⁶⁻⁶ of Rome his.

⁷ failleable.

Ide inquires after
his father.

The messengers
tell of Florence's
wrath because of
Ide's flight,

and how he fell
li,

tentiuely he behelde the two knyghtes, and demaunded
howe the kynge his father dyd / euer syn he departed
from hym / than one of the knyghtes answered and
sayd / 'ryght dere syr, yf the doloure / the¹ displeasure / 4
& the great rage whearin your father was for your de-
partyng / if I shulde shewe it / ouer² longe it shulde
be to reherse / but shortely I shall shew you the sub-
staunce of the matter / the same mornynge after your 8
departure³ tydynges was brought to the kyng your
father how that the kynge of Nauern, your vncl, was
come to se hym. than your father went and met hym,
and brought hym in to the cite of courtoyse with great 12
ioye & myrth / than⁴ they alyghted at y^e palayes, and
there tydynges was brought to the kinge your father
how ye were fled away, whearby suche sorow and
doloure & displeasure toke hym at the herte / that there 16
was none that durst loke hym in the face / ⁵for he
loked lyke a speryt for⁶ the folysshe loue that he had
on you / he ranne about in the palayes as a disparate
man / so that for fere of hym there was nother ladye 20
nor damesell that durst abyde hym for the great furour⁷
and displeasure that he was in / so that by reason
of his great yre he fell in a greuowse malady, whearin
he thought ⁸to⁸ haue dyed / and so was confessed 24
& made hym redy to receyue the holy ⁹sacrament⁹ /
than the kynge of Nauerne, & Sorbare, and dyuers other
prynces came too vysyt hym, and desyred hym to put
that folye out of his mynde and to crey¹⁰ god¹¹ mercy / 28
many notable clerkes¹² were there / and they shewed
hym many good reasons and ensamples, and sayde
without he wolde leue and forsake his folye he shulde
be dampned¹³ bodye and soule / ⁴when the king your 32

¹ omitted.

² too.

³ departing.

⁴ and.

⁵ Fol. clxxxii. col. 1.

⁶ because.

⁷ furie.

⁸⁻⁸ that he should.

⁹⁻⁹ ghost.

¹⁰ to.

¹¹ for.

¹² doctors.

¹³ condemned.

father saw hym selfe in that doubte, knowynge that he
 had done yll to cause you to fle awaye / and that no
 tydynges coude be herde of you / suche a contrisyon
 4 and a repentaunce toke hym that greate haboundaunce
 of droppes fell frome his eyen / so¹ that all his face was
 wet / and he had ²so great² doloure and contrisyon³ in
 hymselfe that euery man that sawe hym wepte for
 8 petye / and the kynge of Nauern had so great petye of
 hym that he was so sorowfull that a greuous syknes
 toke him, so that the fourth daye he dyed, wherof y^e
 kynge your father was ryght sorowfull / at last his
 12 syknes determyned, and⁴ was recoured and in good
 helth a certeyne space / but by reason of the dolour
 that he had for you he coude not be ceased / ⁵he fel
 agayne sore syke, and so he contynueth, and hathe no
 16 power to ayde nor⁶ releue hymselfe / but he eteth and
 drynketh ynough. And after nowe of late it hathe ben
 shewed hym / all your lyfe, and how by y^e grace of
 7our lord⁷ ⁸god it is fallen to you / whearby suche ioye
 20 is come to his herte that there was neuer suche ioye
 before⁷ in no mans herte, and yet he sayth that he shall
 neuer haue parfeyght ioye at his herte tyll⁹ he may se
 you / and therefore he hath sent vs heder to you / and
 24 he desyreth and commaundethe as moche as the father
 can commaund his chylde / that both you and them-
 presse your wyfe leue this your cuntrye in y^e gydyng
 of your sonne, and to leue notable persons aboute hym
 28 to kepe and to conducte hym ; for it shalbe to you more
 profeyghtable & better to vse your lyfe in pease in the
 realmes of Aragon and Nauerne with the duchye of
 Burdeaux / the whiche to you parteyneth by iust en-
 32 heritaunce / and he hathe gyuen vs in charge not too
 departe hense tyll⁹ y^e haue shewed me your wyll, to the
 entent that we may brynge hym sum good newes.

and was induced
 to repent of the
 sin he had
 meditated.

For love of Ide,
 Florence is still
 sore sick.

The messengers
 entreat Ide and
 Olive to visit
 him,
 and to leave
 Croissant regent.

¹ in such sort. ²⁻² such. ³ greefe. ⁴ he. ⁵ but.
⁶ and. ⁷⁻⁷ omitted. ⁸ Fol. clxxxii. col. 2. ⁹ vntill.

¶ Howe the emperoure yde and thempresse
Olyue gaue good instructions to there sonne
whan they departed from Rome, and how
they arryued at Courtoyse and cam to 4
Florence, who with great ioy receyued them
as his chydren. Capitulo .clxxxii.



Han themperour yde had herde this
knyght reporte these newes of the 8
kyng his father / the water fell frome
his eyen for petye and ioy *that* he had,
and answered and sayd. ' Syrs, I wyll
that ye knowe well that of your comynge and good 12
newes I am ryght ioyfull / but I am sory for the² sik-
nes that my father is in / whearfor to recomfort hym
and³ make hym ioyfull, I wyll⁴ ye retourne to hym
and say howe that humblye I recommaunde me to his 16
good grace, and that at mydsomer nexte I and my wyfe
shal⁵be with hym.' the messengers, herynge that
answere, were ryght ioyfull. Than after dyner they
toke theyr leue of themperour and of thempresse / who 20
gaue them many ryche gyftes for the honour of kyng
Florence theyr father / and so the messengers departed /
Whan thempresse Olyue vnderstode the wyll of her
lorde / she was ryght sorowfull for to leue her countree 24
wheareas she was borne and norysshed, and specially to
leue her sonne Croisant whom she loued. But syn it
was the pleasure of her lorde so to do she contented
herselfe / for she loued her husbonde so well that she 28
wolde in no wyse saye agaynst his pleasure nor lette
hym to do his wyll / ryght sorowfull were the prynces
and lordes of that countree and all the people of Rome.
But the best wyse they coude they comforted them- 32

Ide is sorry
for his father's
sickness,

and promises to
visit him.

Olive does not
wish to leave her
country and her
son.

¹ Fol. clxxxii. back, col. 1. ² great. ³ to.
⁴ that. ⁵ will.

selues by cause of the yonge prynce Croysant, who
 shulde tary and abyde with them,¹ whom themperour
 delyuered to² them to be kept / and than he spake to
 4 his son, and shewed him many ³fayre and ³notable⁴ reasons ³and doctrynes;³ he commaunde hym to be
 swete⁵ and courtoyse to his⁶ people ³and to his lordes,³
 and that he shulde not be lyght of credence / and that
 8 in any wyse he ⁷shulde not ⁸leen⁸ his eares to here
 flatterers, nor the venym⁹ that cometh from them that
 wyll lye and flatter to please hym with al to the entent
 to come to theyr entensyon / whearby many a prynce
 12 hath ben destroyed / and brought into¹⁰ hell, whearas¹¹
 they and theyr londe also for beleuyng of them haue
 ben dampned perpetually / 'son, loke thou be serued
 with gentylmen, suche as are come of them that hathe
 16 been of good renome / loue¹² holy church / gyue almes
 to the poore for loue of ³our lorde³ Iesu cryst / let thy
 cofers¹³ be open to thy good knyghtes, beware¹⁴ bee noo
 nygarde, and beware¹⁴ be not ouercome with wyne / lede
 20 an honest lyfe / haunt and kepe companye with the
 aunsyent sages,¹⁵ and laude and prayse them yf they be
 worthy / flee flatterers and mockers, and beware therof
 thy selfe / for thou canst not do worse / for¹⁶ it shall¹⁷
 24 abate thyne honour.' Thus themperour yde sayd to
 his sonne Croysant, and shewed hym manye notable
 saynges and goodly¹⁸ instructions. than he called his
 lordes and sayd. 'Syr, the moost parte of you know-
 28 eth my wyll, the whiche is that I and my wyfe wyl go
 into Aragone to the kyng my father / therfore I desyre
 you all and commaunde you / that ye wyll haue my
 sonne as recommended¹⁹ / I haue left hym great treasure,
 32 to the entent that yf any warre or any other besines

Ide instructs
 Croissant in all
 the duties of
 emperor,

and gives him
 good advice.

Ide takes leave
 of his lordes.

¹ and. ² vnto. ³⁻³ omitted. ⁴ examples and.
⁵ gentle. ⁶ Lordes and. ⁷ Fol. clxxxii. back, col. 2.
⁸⁻⁸ listen with. ⁹ filth. ¹⁰ to. ¹¹ whereby.
¹² the. ¹³ chests. ¹⁴ thou. ¹⁵ noblemen.
¹⁶ because. ¹⁷ will. ¹⁸ fayre. ¹⁹ to you.

fall to hym / that he shall haue rychesse sufficyent to
withstonde them that wolde do hym ¹any damage¹ or
his countree / and also the realme of Aragon is not so
farre² hence / but³ anone I may haue newes from hym.' ⁴

¶ Whan the lordes vnderstode themperoure, and
how he had taken on hym this vyage, they knew well
they coude not let nor stope hym of his pleasure.
Than they all answered in generall / and said that as ⁸
⁴neere as they coude they wolde accomplyssh his com-
maundement, and so⁵ serue trewly his sonne Croysant,
and to ayde / kepe, and defende his countre agaynst all
men that wolde anoye hym. 'Syr, quod themperoure, ¹²
'I thanke you.' Thus after that the emperour had
spoken with his sonne and with his lordes, and shewed
them his wyl and pleasure / than⁶ he made redye for
his iorney, and toke with hym a certeyne ⁷of notable⁷ ¹⁶
knyghtes to accompanye hym & Olyue thempresse his
wyfe. ⁸he apareled⁸ two great shyppes, and caused
them to be charged with vytayles and artelrye, as it
apartayned for y^e defence of theyr bodyes and lyues, ²⁰
& toke with hym great riches and ⁶aparell & iewelles /
than he toke his leue of the pope and of all his lordes,
and of all them of the cite, who made great sorow for
theyr departynge / than they entred in to the ryuer of ²⁴
Tybre, accompayned with a⁹ .v. C. knyghtes / at theyr
departynge they toke leue of theyr sonne Croysaunt,
and kyssed hym often tymes / whan thempresse sawe
her sonne whome she must departe fro she began to ²⁸
wepe / but themperoure comforted her as moche as he
myght¹⁰ / than they toke theyr shyppes, & so departed
and sayled so longe in the streme¹¹ of Tybre that they
came in-to the hye see, wheare as they sayled nyght ³²
and day with good wynde, that without daunger they

They promise to
serve his son
Croissant.

Ide and his
company go by
way of the Tiber,

¹⁻¹ after country.

² from.

³ that.

⁴ Fol. clxxxiii. col. 1.

⁵ to.

⁶ omitted.

⁷⁻⁷ number of.

⁸⁻⁸ and he fournysshed.

⁹ about.

¹⁰ could.

¹¹ Riuer.

arruyed at the cite of Courtoyse, wheare as they were
 receyued with great ioy.¹ so they came to y^e palayes
 and there² founde kynge Florence lyenge on a couche,
 4 who whan he was aduertesed of there comynge he had
 greate ioy / than themperour and thempresse entered
 in to the palayes and came wheare as the kynge laye /
 than they both kneled downe before hym / and whan
 8 the kynge sawe them he had suche ioy that he coude
 speke no worde / but made a token *that* they shulde
 aproche nere to hym, and so they dyd / he enbrased &
 kyssed them often tymes / and whan he myght speke
 12 he sayd, 'my ryght dere chyldren, of your comynge I
 am ryght ioyous,⁴ and of the grace that god hath sent
 to you' / then agayne he kyssed often tymes thempresse
 Olyue, & sayd howe she was welcome in to the realme
 16 of Aragone / of⁵ great ioy and feest and⁶ gyftes &
 presentes that were gyuen and done at theyr welcom-
 ynge, yf I shulde shew it at lenth it shulde be ouer
 longe to reherce / and therefore I passe it ouer. Nowe
 20 let vs leue spekyng of the kynge and of the emperour
 and empresse his wyfe, who toke suche pleasure to
 abyde with kynge Florence that neuer after they re-
 tourned too Rome / but they reigned togither al theyr
 24 lyues in peace and good⁷ loue / & they had no⁸ mo
 chyldren⁸ / but Croissant whom they had left at Rome,⁹
 of whom we shall speke nowe after.¹⁰

and arrive at
Courtois.

Florence warmly
welcomes Ide and
Olive.

They remain
henceforth in his
kingdom,

and share his
rule.

Croissant alone
rules at Rome.

¶ Howe Croissant was so large¹¹ and sc
 28 liberall that he gaue away all the treasure
 that hys father had left hym / so that at last
 he had no more to gyue / and so was con-
 strained to go seke his aduenture, he & a
 32 verlot aloney. Ca. c.lxxxiii.

¹ and. ²⁻³ whereas they. ³ Fol. clxxxiii. col. 2.
⁴ ioyfull. ⁵ the. ⁶⁻⁸ feasting. ⁷ good before peace.
⁸⁻⁸ child but. ⁹ and. ¹⁰ heereafter. ¹¹ bountifull.

Croissant delights
in sports,



and in giving rich
gifts.

He enriched the
poor,

and gave away
all his father's
treasure.

But when he
grew poor all
former friends
avoided him,

and refused him
loans of money.

Fter¹ themperour yde and y^e empresse
Olyue were departed from² Rome,
Croysant theyr son grew and amend-
ed in all thynges. he delyghted to ⁴
take his pleasure in all sportes³ / he
made to be cryed⁴ Iustes⁵ and
tournoyse, and gaue large gyftes to ladyes and to
knyghtes. none went from hym without sum gyft. ⁸
he toke great pleasure to gyue gyftes / so that he was
prayed of euery man / howbeit dyuers aunsyent and
wyse men sayd, 'yf Croysant, oure yonge prynce, dele
thus longe⁶ with y^e treasure that his father left hym / ¹²
it wyll be sore⁷ wasted, and suche as now foloweth
hym wyll forsake hym whan they se that he hath no
more to gyue' / as they dyd in dede / as ye shall here
after / for he gaue to them that were pore, whearby ¹⁶
they were made ryche, who after wolde not gyue hym
one morsell of breade / he was so lyberall & so great a
dispender⁸ that all the treasure that his father had left
hym he gaue it awaye / so *that* many compleyned ²⁰
greatly⁹ his bountye & larges,¹⁰ he gaue awaye so moche
that he was forsed to mynyshe¹¹ his estate, and was
forsaken of all them that were wont to serue hym, by-
cause he had no more to gyue them, so *that* whan they ²⁴
met hym they wolde tourn to another way / & whan he
knew *that* he had so great shame that he determyned
to departe pryuely out of the countre, and¹² goo seke
his aduentures / for he sawe well¹ he had gyuen awaye ²⁸
¹³so moche¹³ and lent that he coude not than fynde one
man *that* wolde lene¹⁴ hym a¹⁵ peny / than with that
that¹⁶ was left he bought two good horses, and monted
on the one and¹⁷ the other a verlet, and a male behynde ³²

¹ that. ² the Citie of. ³ and. ⁴ proclaimed.

⁵ Fol. clxxxiii. back, col. 1. ⁶ omitted. ⁷ much.

⁸ spender. ⁹ of. ¹⁰ for. ¹¹ diminish. ¹² to.

¹³⁻¹⁵ after lent. ¹⁴ lend. ¹⁵ one. ¹⁶ which.

¹⁷ vppon.

hym, and therin a gowne and his shertes and¹ hose and shoes, and he had in his purse no more but one c. fl. for his dispenche.² Than³ in a mornynge he departed
 4 from Rome, to thentent he shulde not be perseuyed, and rode so long by his iorneyes that he was far of from the cyte of Rome more than .iiii. dayes iornay. Now let vs leue spekyng of hym tyll tyme shal be to retourne
 8 to hym agayne.

He flees from Rome.

¶ How they of Rome sent to the kinge Guymart of Puyllle, to the entent that he shulde come and gouerne that countre, and
 12 to be theyr lorde, bicause that Croisant was a chylde, and had gyuen and wasted all that he had, and howe Guymart came theder and was receyued as lorde.

16

Ca. Clxxxiii.

After that the barons and senatours of Rome were aduertesede that theyr yonge lorde Croysaunt was departed
 20 from the cite, and that he had all wasted and spended the treasure that he had / than they assembled at the capetale / than⁵ ther was one sayd / 'cursed is that
 24 londe whearof y^e lorde is a chyde, as ye may well parseyue by our yonge lorde Croysant, who hathe all dispended⁶ and gyuen all⁷ y^e great treasure that his father had left hym / yll⁸ shulde he gouerne his londe
 28 and countre whan he can not kepe it¹ that⁹ is closed fast in his cofers / and therfore, myne aduyse is that we sende to kynge Guymart of Puyllle / who is all redye of the mynde to come and besege vs, bycause he knoweth

The lords, finding themselves without a ruler,

resolve to invite King Guymart of Puyllle to take the throne.

¹ omitted.² expenses.³ and.⁴ Fol. clxxxiii. back, col. 2.⁵ and.⁶ spent all.⁷ away.⁸ verie badly.⁹ which.

Guymart accepts
the invitation,
and becomes
emperor.

well that we be without a lorde / and therfore myne
aduyse is that we sende to¹ hym a notable enbassed²
desyrynge hym to come to this cite of Rome / and how³
that this cite shall do to hym obeysaunce / better it is 4
to sende by tymes than to late / to thentent that⁴
he nor none of his do no⁵ damage to the londes of
Rome / all they that were there agreed to his sayenge /
& so they sent to hym, who⁶ receyued the enbassetours⁷ 8
ryght honorably / and so he came to Rome, wheare as
he was receyued for theyr lorde peacesablye. But or⁸
he entred in to Rome they went and met hym, and
with great tryumphe⁹ brought hym in to the cite with 12
trompettes and tabours¹⁰ blowyng before hym tyll¹¹ he
cam to the church of saynt Peter, and there he offered
and kyst the relykes / whearof he made his oth, suche
as emperours¹² accustomed to make / he to defend 16
& kepe Rome & y^e empyre. Than he went to the
palayes, wheare as he was receyued of the noble men
and of the people / ¹³he gouerned Rome in peace and
good¹⁴ Iustice. Nowe let vs leaue spekyng of hym 20
and retourne to Croysant.

¶ Howe Croysaunt arryued at Nyse in pro-
uaunce, and came to the erle Remon, who
was beseged by the sarazyns / & of the 24
honour that the erle Remon dyd to Croi-
sant / and how he gaue hym his baner
to bere, & made him knyght / and of the
great enmye that the erles son had at 28
Croysant.

Ca. Clxxxv.

¹ vnto.

² Ambassage.

³ say.

⁴ neither.

⁵ any.

⁶ Fol. clxxxiii. col. 1.

⁷ Ambassadors.

⁸ before.

⁹ ioy.

¹⁰ Drummes.

¹¹ vntill.

¹² are.

¹³ then.

¹⁴ good before peace.

¹ **A**fter that Croysant was departed from.
 Rome he² and his verlet,³ and had
 well sene how⁴ in all Rome they set
⁴ no thyng by hym bycause he hadde
 no more good⁵ to gyue.⁶ Than he
 rode throw Romaine and Lombar-
 dye / and passed Pyemont / and than he² came in to
⁸ Daulpheney; and when he came in to the towne
 of Grenoble it was shewed hym that in Prouaunce
 there was a notable⁷ prynce named erle Remon, of
 saynt Giles, who was beseged by londe and by water in
¹² y^e towne of Nyse by the kynge Grenade and the kyng
 of Belmaryne / who day and nyght made great assautes
 to the cite / and they had sworne and made promyse
 that they wyll⁸ neuer departe⁹ thense tyll¹⁰ they haue¹¹
¹⁶ wonne the towne / and slayne the erle Remon / whan
 Croysant herde those newes, the hardye prowes wheare
 with he was garnysshed and replete set him in to
 so hye a wyll / that he thought the sarazyns flewe in¹²
²⁰ the Eyer, and that he wolde reyse theyr sege or¹³ it be
 nyght / and for the bryngynge¹⁴ desyre that he had he
 thought to goo theder to proue his vertue agaynst the
 paynmys / so whan he had rested his horse he and his
²⁴ squyer monted and rested not tyll he came to Nyse; Croissant arrives
at Nice,
 in an euynnyng late he¹⁵ aryued without perseyuynge
 of them of the sege / for as then they were all in theyr
 tentes / for¹⁶ a lytell before there had bene at the gate
²⁸ a great skyrmysh / whearfor the sarazyns were wery of
 theyr trauayle / & also on *that* parte *that* Croysant
 aryued there were no sarazins lodged / than he came to
 y^e gate and prayed y^e porter to let hym enter / & whan
³² the porter saw there were no mo but .ii. persons, & *that*

Croissant rides
into Provence.

Earl Remon of
Saint Giles is
besieged in Nice
by the kings of
Grenade and of
Belmaryne.

¹ Fol. clxxxiiii, col. 2. ² omitted. ³ with him.
⁴ that. ⁵ guifts. ⁶ them. ⁷ noble. ⁸ would.
⁹ from. ¹⁰ vntill. ¹¹ had. ¹² to. ¹³ before.
¹⁴ burning. ¹⁵ there. ¹⁶ because.

and enters it.

Next day he goes
to the palace of
the Earl Remon.

The earl welcomes
him kindly.

A battle will take
place on the
morrow.
The earl's
brother, the
duke of Calaber,
is expected with a
large army.

he was crystened,¹ he suffred him to enter without any
refuse / & whan Croysant sawe that he was in without²
daunger he was ioyfull,³ ⁴he came to one of the best
lodgynges in the towne, and there he alyghted and ⁴
souped with his host / Bycause it was late to go that
nyght to the court; there he taryed all that nyght tyll⁵
y⁶ next mornynge / than he went to the palayes,
wheare as he found the erle Remon deusynge with his ⁸
lordes and knyghtes of the dedes of y⁶ warre; than
Croysant saluted the erle and all his lordes. whan the
erle sawe the yonge man he greatly behelde hym / and
thought that in all his lyfe he had neuer sene so ¹²
goodlye a person, and thought that he was com of sum
noble lynage. Than he toke Croysant by the hande
and demaunded what was⁷ his name. 'Syr,' quod he,
'my name is Croysant' / 'Croysant,' quod the erle, 'ye ¹⁶
are welcome / ye are come well at a point both for you
and for me / for I haue great nede to haue men with
me to ayde me / and me thynke by your personage
that ye shulde acheue a great interpryses / for of your ²⁰
age I haue not sene in my dayes a yong man more
lykely to be fered of his enemyes / & bycause I se by
your apparell that ye be⁸ no knyght, I shall make you
a knyght to thentent that to morow your prowes ²⁴
& hardynes may be proued / for ye maye se here
without this towne two kynges, enemyes to oure
crysten fayth, and by the ⁹pleasure of our lorde Iesu
crist I haue intensyon⁹ to morow to gyue them batayle, ²⁸
I loke this nyght for my brother, the duke of Calaber,
who bryngeth with hym a⁶ .xxx.M. men of warre /
and a⁶ .xx.M. I haue all redye with in the towne / and
considerynge your hye corage to come hether to serue ³²
me, I shall do you more honour; after I haue made you

¹ a Christian. ² any. ³ then.

⁴ Fol. clxxxiii. back, col. 1. ⁵ vntill. ⁶ omitted.

⁷ was after name. ⁸ are. ⁹ grace of god I intend.

knyght I shall gyue you my baner to bere / and yf ye
 do as me thynke ye shulde do your payne shal not be
 lost.' 'Syr,' quod Croysant, 'god gyue me the grace
 4 that to ¹morowe to hym and to you I may do such
 seruices that it may be welth to all crystendome, and
 that god may perfourme in me that² wanteth / for yf
 ye make me knyght al the dayes of my lyfe after
 8 I shalbe yours' / than the erle incontynent sent for a
 son of his, who as than was no knyght, and dyuers
 other, whom he made knyghtes with Croysant / than
 he sayde to Croysant, 'frend, I pray to our lord ³Iesu
 12 cryst³ to gyue you suche fortune to-morow that ye may
 wanquysse the batayle.' 'Syr,' quod he, 'god gyue
 me the grace to render to you thanks for the honour
 that nowe ye do to me / for as for me, by the grace of
 16 god that⁴ to morowe I shall so do that your enemyes
 shall curse the hour that they are come hether to
 assayle you' / whyles *that* Croysant was thus made
 knyght with the erles son and other, the same tyme
 20 thether came y^e duke of Calaber, and he came to
 the palayes / of the great⁴ chere that he had made hym
 by his brother, the erle Remon, I wyll make no
 mensyon / therof / but he came at y^e same poynt⁵ that
 24 these new knyghtes were made, and that⁶ quyntheyne
 was set vp to proue them selfe. Than y^e duke of
 Calaber and the erle Remon his brother went theder⁷
 desyreous to se who dyd best / than y^e duke demaunded
 28 of the erle what yong knyght it was that rode by his
 neuw, for he thought⁸ he neuer saw ⁹a goodlyer⁹
 person nor more puyasant of his age. Than the erle
 sayd how he was come thether to seke for honour.
 32 But what he was nor of what lynage he knew not.
 Thus they talked togyther of this yonge knyght Croy-

The earl knyght
Croissant with
other young men.

The duke of
Calaber arrives.

The quintain is
set up.

¹ Fol. clxxxiii. back, col. 2. ² which. ³⁻⁵ god.
⁴ omitted. ⁶ season. ⁶ a. ⁷ verie. ⁸ that.
⁹⁻⁹ so goodly a yong.

sant / ¹whan they came to y^e place wheareas the
 quyntayne was dressed vp / the erles son ranne and
 bracke his spere all to peces, and than other assayed
 themselfe / sum bracke theyr speres, and sum fell too 4
 the erthe parforce² ³of there stroke / but there was none
 that coude remoue the quyntayne / whan Croissant sawe
 that all had assayed themselues to throw⁴ the quyn-
 teyne, he had a greate spere, and ran so fyersly that he 8
 strake the quyntayne and ouerthrew it to the ground,
 whearof euery man had great meruayle; the duke sayd
 to y^e erle that he neuer sawe so goodlye a stroke,
 and sayd howe he is greatly to be doubted that gyue 12
 such strokes; he was greatly praysed of the ladyes and
 dameselles that were there present, & specially of the
 erles doughter, who was a fayre damesel. But who
 soeuer was ioyfull, y^e erles sonne was displeased / 16
 he toke agaynst hym a mortall hate and an yll enuye,
 so that yf he had durst he wolde haue ryn vpon
 Croissant to haue distroyed him, and concluded in his
 corage that yf he myght lyue longe he wolde make 20
 Croysantes lyfe to departe from his bodye / and so he
 had done and⁵ god had not ayded Croysant / whan
 Croysant had ryn his course he rode to the erle, who
 sayd to hym ryght swetly / 'Croysant, god encrease 24
 your bountye⁶ and⁷ gyue you grace to perceyner⁸ your
 goodnes / and I pray you humblye to shewe me the
 trouthe what ye be and of what lynage, for I am sure⁹
 ye ¹⁰be come¹⁰ of sum hye lynage.' 'Syr,' quod Croy- 28
 sant, 'syn ye wold know it I shall shew you y^e trouthe.
 Syr, knowe for trouthe I am sonne to the noble
 emperour of Rome, and I am departed out of¹¹ countre
 for certen causes, the¹² whiche I coude¹³ not suffer / 32
 and therfore I went too serche myne aduentures such as

Croissant alone is
 able to strike it
 and throw it
 down.

The ladies praise
 Croissant.

The earl's son is
 jealous of
 Croissant.

The earl asks of
 what family
 Croissant is.

He telle of his
 father.

¹ and. ² by force. ³ Fol. clxxxv. col. 1.
⁴ ouerthrow. ⁵ if. ⁶ honour. ⁷ god. ⁸ in.
⁹ that. ¹⁰⁻¹⁰ are. ¹¹ the. ¹² omitted. ¹³ would.

god wold sende me' / whan the erle herde hym speke
 he was ryght ioyouse,¹ and thanked god, & sayd, 'fayre
 sonne, ye be welcom, I am ioyfull of your cominge, for
 4 the goodnes that I see in you apparent; I haue a
 doughter ryght fayre, whome I wyll gyue you in
 2 maryage, and as moche of my goodes and of my londes
 and seynoryes that ye shal neuer be pore.' 'Syr,'
 8 quod Croysant, 'your fayre offer that ye make me
 I wyll not refuse, and I thanke you. But or³ ⁴euer⁴
 I take a wyfe my wyll is to do so moche *that* myne
 honour may be exalted, and that renowne maye rynne
 12 vpon me as it hathe done of my predecessours, and that
 I may conquyre londes and seynoryes.' Than the
 erles sonne, herynge his father make Croysant suche an
 offer as to gyue him his sister in maryage and a great
 16 parte of his londe / he was therewith sore troubled in his
 hert; ⁵ he toke agaynst hym a cordyall hate, and made
 promyse in hym selfe that if he may⁶ retourne from the
 batayle he wyll⁷ cause Croysant to dye an yll deth /
 20 thynkyng not to be disenheryt by hym / after those
 wordes the duke of Calaber and the erle Remon toke
 betwene them y⁸ yonge knyght Croysant & led him by
 the hande to the palayes, wheare as he was receyued
 24 with great ioye / and after dyner they came in to the
 hall wheare as all the lordes were. Than Croysant,
 who greatly desyred⁸ to be in suche a place wheare as
 he myght shew his prowes, spake on hye, and sayd to⁹
 28 erle Remon, 'Syr, ye knowe well *that* y⁸ enemyes
 of oure lorde god & yours hath beseged you in your
 towne / the whiche is a thyng not to be suffred, ⁴and
 vnreasonable,⁴ so long without doynge¹⁰ them any
 32 anyounce / and therfore, syr, I counsell¹¹ that or³ they
 knowe moche of your estate or ⁴of your⁴ puyssaunce,

The earl offers
Croissant his
daughter in
marriage.

Croissant will
accept the offer
after he has
proved his
prowess.

The earl's son
hears of the
offer, and

growing more
envious, resolves
on the death of
the new-comer.

¹ ioyfull.

² Fol. clxxxv. col. 2.

³ before.

⁴⁻⁴ omitted.

⁵ as.

⁶ myght.

⁷ would.

⁸ delighted.

⁹ the.

¹⁰ of.

¹¹ you.

Croissant advises
an immediate
sortie.

The earl's forces
prepare to march
against the
enemy,
who is besieging
them in Nice.

or what people ye haue, it were best ye went to assayle them¹ without any lenger taryenge / orden your hedes² and your capeteysn to gyde your people, to the entent that whan ye were³ issued out of the towne⁴ and than⁴ that⁴ euery man may knowe what ye are purposed to do / ⁵and than sende to your enemyes a messenger and gyue your enemyes knowledge of your comynge, and we shall folowe so fast that they shall haue no leaser to arme them' / whan the duke of Calaber & y^e erle Remon vnderstode the noble Croysant they praysed moche his counsell and aduysed. Than they ordeyned theyr batayles and theyr capeteysn / and than they¹² issued out of the towne with all theyr companye.

¶ Howe Croisant dyd meruayles in the batayle, by whose prowes the sarazins were discomfited and slayne, whearof the erle Remon¹⁶ and the duke of Calaber were ryght ioyfull.

Ca. clxxxvi.

Croissant leads
one detachment.



The earl's son
leads a second.

Han the erle Remone was without the towne / he ordeyned thre batayles. ²⁰ The fyrst Croysant had the leadynge therof, & the erle sayd to him, 'frende, I praye you this day shew from whence ye come, and how that ye be of the lynage ²⁴ inaperyall, and of the good lyne of the duke of Burdeaux / for I haue suche trust in god and in the vertue of your armes / that me thynke now⁶ myne enemyes do flee awaye before me.' 'Syr,' quod Croisant, 'I shall ²⁸ do so much by y^e grace of god that our enemyes shall haue no leaser to graunt vs the victorie. The seconde batayle led⁷ the erle Remons sonne, and his father sayd

¹ therefore. ² Battailles. ³ are. ⁴⁻⁴ omitted.

⁵ Fol. clxxxv. back, col. 1. ⁶ now after do.

⁷ led after sonne.

to hym that he shulde that day ¹shew forth his vertue
 and prowes. The thyrd batayle the erle Remone and
 the duke of Calaber had the gydyng therof, ²they set
 4 in euery batayle .xv. M. men / than the erle Remon
 went before euery bataile sterynge and mouynge them
 to do well / ²than the erle sent a messenger to the host
 of the sarazyns to shew them of the coming of the
 8 crysten men / ²they were before theyr tentes in .v.
 batayles / they were in nombre a ³.C. M. sarazyns,
 whearof there were .ii. kinges and foure Admyralles.
 This messenger dyd his message / and whan he had
 12 done / he retourned to the erle Remon & shewed
 hym all that he had herde & sene. Than Croysant
 sayd to the erle. 'Syr, I requyre⁴ you⁵ shew me what
 armes the .ii. sarazyn kynges doth beare, to the entent
 16 that I maye knowe them / for the sonner that the great
 men be slayne the sonner y^e other wyll fle / for⁶ that
 shall⁷ abasshe them and the sooner to be discomfyted,
 for men without a lorde are / as shepe without a
 20 sheparde.' Then y^e erle shewed hym theyr armes and
 bages. 'Syr,' quod Croysant, 'syn I am hereof aduer-
 tesed I shall neuer rest tyll⁸ I have incountred them yf
 god wyll saue myne armes and good sworde' / than the
 24 paynymys who saw well y^e crysten men comynge / they⁹
 cast vp a great cry & so meruelous that there was none
 so hardy / but that⁹ was abasshed therof / for it semed
 that all y^e worlde there aryued / whan Croysant sawe
 28 the sarazyns approche he auaunsed his batayle / and
 whan they ioyned / he couched his spere and strake
 therewith the sonne¹⁰ of¹¹ kynge of Belmaryne / so that
 the spere hede passed thorowe his bodye more than a
 32 good⁹ fote / and so with drawynge out of his spere the
 sarazyn fell downe deed amonge the horse feet,¹² whearof

The earl himself
 and the duke of
 Calaber lead the
 third.

The Christians
 announce their
 approach to the
 Saracen enemy.

Croissant longs to
 attack the two
 Saracen kings.

Croissant
 advances,
 and kills the
 son of the king of
 Belmaryne,
 and many others.

¹ Fol. clxxxv. back, col. 2. ² and. ³ about. ⁴ pray.

⁵ to. ⁶ because. ⁷ will. ⁸ vntill. ⁹ omitted.

¹⁰ sonce *after* Belmaryne. ¹¹ the. ¹² Fol. clxxxvi. col. 1.

The Saracens flee
before him.

The king of
Belmaryne is
made desperate
by the loss of
his son.

The Earl Remon
fights valiantly,

and nearly kills
the king of
Grenade.

the paynims had great dolour whan Croysant had
slayne the sonne¹ of y^e kyng of Belmaryn / there cam
before hym the neuwe of the kyng of Grenade /
²Croysaunt bare hym to the erthe so rudelye so³ that 4
in the fallynge he brocke his necke / than he ranne at
the thyrde and at³ y^e.iiii. and slew them / and as longe
as his spere helde⁴ ceased not to sle and to bet downe y^e
sarazyns / and whan his spere was broken he tooke his 8
sworde, whearwith he claue the sarazyns to the brayne,
and cut of armes and handes / he made amonge them
such slawghter that there was not so hardye a sarazyn
that durst abyde his full strok, but they fled from hym 12
as the shepe doth before the wolfe / anone the tydinges
was brought to the kyng of Belmaryn howe his sonne
was slayne by a yonge knyght who dyd meruaylles in
the batayle / ²whan the kyng knew that his sonne was 16
slayn he wepte for sorow, and made promyse that he
had rather dye than the deth of his son shulde be
vnreuenged / and therwith he preased into the batayle,
and met at his comynge the dukes seneschall ⁵of Ca- 20
laber,⁵ and strake hym with his spere in suche wyse
that he ranne hym clene thorow, and so he fell downe
deed / than y^e batayle began fyersly, and they of Pro-
uaunce and of Calaber dyd valyauntly / than y^e erle 24
Remon came in to the batayle, and met with the Ad-
myrall of Cordes and gaue hym with his sworde ⁶suche
a stroke⁶ on y^e helme that he claue his hede to the
brayne, and so he fell downe deed / than he sawe the 28
kyng of Grenade, who slew many a crystenman ; than
the erle Remon toke a spere & ranne at the kyng, and
strake hym so on y^e vyser of his helme that he fell to
y^e erth with his fete vpwarde amonge his owne men, 32
and had ben there slayne and his men had not ⁷socoured

¹ sonne *after* Belamyne. ² and. ³ omitted. ⁴ he.
⁵⁻⁶ *before* seneschall. ⁶⁻⁶ *before* with his sworde.

⁷ Fol. clxxxvi. col. 2.

hym / in another place was Croisant, and he saw before
 hym the kynge of Belmaryn, who rode aboute sekynge
 for Croysant to be reuenged vpon¹ hym for y^e deth of
 4 his sonne / ²whan the kynge sawe Croysant betynge
 downe horse and men, and that none coude reysst
 agaynst hym / he had greate desyre to be reuenged, and
 sayd to Croysant. 'O thou false traytour that hath
 8 slayne my sonne, I ought greatly to laude and prayse
 Mahounde yf I may be reuenged vpon the' / than he
 couched his spere and strake Croysant in the myddes
 of his shyld, so that his spere flew all to peces / but for
 12 all y^e stroke Croysant remoued no more / than tho he
 had stryken a stone walle / & Croysant, sore displeased
 that the kynge had gyuen hym suche a stroke / lete go
 the brydell of his horse, & lyft vp his sworde with
 16 bothe his handes / and strake the kynge as he past by
 on the corner of his helme in suche wyse that he strake
 it clene asondre. ²yf the stroke had not gleynted³ he
 had clouen his hede to the gyrdell / but the sworde
 20 tourned & alyght on⁴ the hors necke, so that he strake
 y^e necke clene asondre / so⁵ that of force y^e kynge
 tombled to the erth⁶ astoned of the stroke that he had
 receyued / and if he hadde not ben quykely rescowed
 24 Croysant had striken of his hede / than the sarazyns
 remounted agayne theyr kynge, & ran at Croysant, and
 cast at hym dartes⁷ and iaelyns to haue slayne hym /
 but they durst not aproche nere hym so moche they
 28 fered hym / howbeit they hurte hym in dyuers places.
 he helde his sworde in his handes, whearwith he strake
 no man with a full stroke / but that he claue his hede
 to the brayne / than he saw y^e great admyrall of Spayn,
 32 & he gaue hym suche a stroke that his hed was clouen
 to y^e chyn, & so fell down deed. great⁸ sorow made

The king of
 Belmaryne
 challenges
 Croissant,

and is stricken to
 the earth by the
 youth.

Croissant is hard
 pressed by the
 Saracens,

but kills many
 of them.

Including the
 great admiral
 of Spain

¹ of. ² and. ³ glanced. ⁴ vpon.
⁵ in such sort. ⁶ sore. ⁷ dartes *after* cast.
⁸ Fol. clxxxvi. back, col. 1.

and the king of
Grenade.

the sarasyns, and specially y^e kyng of Grenade / ¹whan
Croysant sawe hym he knew hym well by his armes,
wherof he was ioyfull / ¹Croysant aproched to hym and
gaue hym on the helme suche a stroke that his hede 4
was clouen to y^e brain, and so the kyng fell down deed /
than Croysant ranne at hym that bare the sarazyns
baner, whearin² was paynted the Image of Mahounde³ /
he strake hym that bare it with a reuerse stroke betwene 8
the necke and the shulders / that the hede with the
helme flew in the felde / and he⁴ layd⁵ so in y^e thycke
prease that anone he made way / the sarazyns wolde⁶
haue reased vp agayne theyr baner / but they 12
coude not.

Croissant also
slays the king of
Belmarne.


¶ Whan the sarazyns saw theyr kinge deed and
theyr banner lyenge on y^e ground, theyr corage began to
fayle them / than they brayled and opened theyr array 16
and began to lese⁷ place / and Croysant, who toke hede
of nothyng / but to sley the great capeteyns, at last
he⁴ saw before hym the kyng of Belmarne, who had
slayne many a cristenman that daye / Croysant strake⁸ 20
hym suche a stroke on the ryght shulder that arme and
shylde fell to the erth,⁹ and by reason of the great
doloure that the kinge felt / he fell in sowne amonge
the hors fete, wheareas he dyed myserable / the duke 24
of Calaber & the erle Remon regarding the hye dedes
of armes done and acheued by Croysant had great
meruayle of his force and puissaunce / ¹they blyssed
the houre that he was borne in / thankyng god of his 28
comynge theder / they rested and behelde hym howe
he made theyr enemyes to fle awaye, for none was so
hardy to abyde hym / fynally if I shulde reherse y^e hye
dedes that Croysant dyd that day it shulde be ouer 32
longe to declare / for by hym & by his great hardines

¹ and. ² wheron. ³ Mahomet. ⁴ omitted.
⁵ on. ⁶ fayne. ⁷ loose. ⁸ gaue.
⁹ etrth in text.

the paynims and sarazyns were vt¹terly discomfyted / He utterly
defeats the
Saracens.
for he was happye that coude saue hymselfe / thus they
fled on all sydes² towards y^e see syde, ³there were mo
⁴ slayne in the fleyng than were in y^e playn batayle /
for from thense to the see syde the wayes were couered
with deed men / such as myght saue them selues in y^e
shyppes were happy, but there were but⁴ few that
⁸ scaped / after y^e chace⁵ done they of Prouaunce and of⁶
Calaber came to the boutey, y^e whiche was⁷ great / ⁸the
whiche⁸ the erle Remon ⁸departed and gaue in suche
wyse⁸ that euery man was ⁹content with him :⁹ for there
¹² was suche rychesse in the tentes of the sarazyns that it
coude not be estemyd¹⁰ / wherby all suche as ¹¹had
ben¹¹ at y^e batayle were riche euer after, both they &
theyr frendes.

¹⁶ ¶ Of the great honour that erle Remon dyd
to Croisant, & howe he wolde haue gyuen
hym hys doughter in mariage / whearof the
erles sonne was sore enuyous, and thought
²⁰ the same nyght to haue mordered ¹² in his
bed ¹² the noble Croisant / but he failed, for
the noble Croisant slew hym & after fled
awaye as fast as he myght.

²⁴ Capitulo. C.lxxxvii.

²⁸  Fter that the batayle was fynysshed,
and that the sarazyns were deed, the
erle Remon with great reuerence
came to¹³ Croysant, and toke hym by
the hande, and ledde hym in to the
towne betwene the duke of Calaber

Earl Remon
does Croissant
great honour.

¹ Fol. clxxxvi. back, col. 2. ² partes. ³ and.
⁴ verie. ⁵ was. ⁶ omitted. ⁷ exceeding.
⁸⁻⁹ distributed so liberally therof. ⁹⁻⁹ wel contented.
¹⁰ valued. ¹¹⁻¹¹ were. ¹²⁻¹² after Croisant. ¹³ vnto.
CHARL. ROM. IX. 3 C

and hym selfe / and they dyd hym as greate honour as
 they coude deuyse, & so entered in to the towne, and
 with great ¹Ioy & solempnite thei were receyued /
²they came to the palaies & dysarmed³ them / & whan ⁴
 they were refresshed / than⁴ y^e duke of Calabre & y^e
 erle Remon came to Croysant / than² the erle said. 'O
 right noble knight, replete with all vertues and hyghe
 prowes, to whom no man is comperable / y^e stronge ⁸
 arme / shelde / and resorte⁵ of the countree of Prouence
 and Languedoc / by thy hye vertu⁶ this day⁷ hast saued
 one of the quarters of cristendone, whearby the fayth
 of Iesu⁴ chryst is exalted / the whiche yf thou haddest ¹²
 no ben / had ben abated and staunched / it is not in
 me to say nor recompt the goodes⁸ that ye haue done
 vs this day / nor it lyeth not in me to rewarde it / but
 if it were thy pleasure to abase thy selfe so lowe / as ¹⁶
 to take my doughter in mariage / y^e whiche I wold
 gladly se / ²I wyll gyue the / the one halfe of all that
 euer I haue / for a fayrer iewel nor a richer I can not
 giue than my dere doughter whome I loue entyrlly. ²⁰
 She is the fayrest ⁹ / the swetest ¹⁰ / and the ¹¹moost
 humble¹¹ damsell that is now lyuyng.' Whan Croysant
 had well vnderstande the erle Remon he said. 'Syr,
 of your curtoyse and ryche gyfte that ye offre me / I ²⁴
 wyll not refuse it / but thanke you hertly therfore¹² / &
 as for your doughter whome ye offre to gyue to⁴ me /
 I trust¹³ I shall do her that honour that on¹⁴ her heed
 I shall set a crowne of golde and make her Empresse ²⁸
 of Rome / wheare she shall be serued and honoured / as
 lady of¹⁵ all the countree.' Whan the erle herde the
 answeere of Croysant / he was right¹⁶ ioyfull / but his
 sone who was there present / ¹⁷had nye raged for¹⁷ dys- 32

The earl again
 offers Croissant
 his daughter in
 marriage,
 and one half of
 his property.

Croissant accepts
 the offer.

¹ Fol. clxxxvii, col. 1.

² and. ³ vnarmed.

⁴ omitted.

⁵ refuge.

⁶ prowessse.

⁷ thou.

⁸ goodnessse.

⁹ most faire.

¹⁰ sweet.

¹¹⁻¹¹ humblest.

¹² therof.

¹³ that.

¹⁴ vpon.

¹⁵ ouer.

¹⁶ verie.

¹⁷⁻¹⁷ was neere hand in a rage with the.

- pleasure,¹ and sayd² to hym. 'By god, Croysant / syn
 thus by you I shalbe disherited / and that my father
 wyll giue you that³ of right apartayneth to me / or⁴ ⁵I
 4 graunt therto, I shall make you to dye of an euil⁶ deth /
 though I do it by treason / nor thou shalte neuer haue
 my syster in maryage' / thus thought the erles sone to
 worke against Croysant, who knewe nothyng therof /
 8 ⁷thus without god helpe him / he was lykely to ⁸be⁸
 slayne petyously. Than there began great Ioye in the
 palaies / the erle Remon wente to se his doughter, and
 sayd to her / 'my dere doughter / knowe for trouth I
 12 haue gyuen you in mariage / to the moost fayre / and
 hardiest knight *that* euer was gyrde with⁹ swerde:
 that is Croysant whom ye se here, by whom we¹⁰ all
 delyuered and brought out of seruage into fredom / for
 16 we had ben all lost if his hye prowes had not ben, by
 whom all the paynims are discomfyted' / whan the
 damsell herde her father she was right ioyous¹¹ / and
 thanked god and said. 'Syr, syn it is your pleasure to
 20 gyue me to this noble knight / I shall not refuse hym /
 but I am agreed¹² to fulfyl your pleasure,' whearof
 Croysant was ioyful, for she was so fayre that euery
 man had meruayle therof. Than the damsell saluted
 24 Croysant and said. 'Syr, of your comynge and socours
 we ought to be ioyous¹¹ / for by you we are restored to
 ioye: y^e which was lost' / 'lady, quod Croysant / so
 goeth the workes of our lorde god / ¹³men maketh
 28 batayles / and god gyueth y^e victory' / thus deuysynge
 they entred into y^e chambre wheare as the bourdes
 were redy sprede / but Iacars the erles sonne wolde
 not come there / but he wente into the towne in to a
 32 secrete place / and thither he sent for ten of his affinite /

The earl's son
grows more
wrathful with
Croissant.

The earl informs
his daughter of
Croissant's
promise to marry
her.

She willingly
assents.

Iyacars, the
earl's son,
summons ten of
his relatives,

¹ that he had. ² intragedly. ³ which. ⁴ before.

⁵ Fol. clxxxvii. col. 2.

⁸⁻⁸ haue bene.

⁹ a.

¹⁰ were.

¹¹ ioyfull.

¹² content.

¹³ for.

and plots to
murder Croissant
while asleep.

A young squire
overhears the
traitors,

and reveals the
plot to Croissant.

Croissant will not
believe such
treachery.

Croissant sups
with Earl Remon,

in whom he had parfite affiaunce / than he shewed to
them all his intencion, and determined that whan Croy-
sant was a¹ bedde and a slepe / than thei to murdre
him in his bed ²and his squier also. Whan these .x. 4
traytours vnderstode their maister / they answered and
said how they were all redy to do his commaundement
what soeuer com therof / thus they taried y^e houre to
accomplysshe their vngracious enterpryse / as they were 8
in their comunicacion / there was in a chambre there
besyde / a yonge squier who had wel herde their enter-
pryce & what thei were determined to doo / than he
said to himselfe *that* surely he wold aduertise Croysant 12
of their malicious enterpryce / to the entent *that* he
shuld not be surprised / ³he departed as preuely as he
coud & ⁴cam to Croisant / & shewed him how the
erles sone with .x. men were determined to murdre him 16
the⁵ same night in his bed slepyng / & how *that* eche
of them had a sharpe knyfe / & ⁶said, 'syr, be ⁷gar-
nysshed⁷ to defende your lyfe / for thei all haue sworne
your deth' / Whan Croysant vnderstode y^e squier he 20
waxed as reed as a brenninge coole / & sayd, 'I can
not byleue *that* suche a treason shuld be in the corage
of a noble man / as to murdre hym *that* neuer dyd him
trespas' / 'sir, quod the squier / 'ye may do as ye 24
please / but without ye fynde remedy / ye are but lost.'
Whan Croysant herde *that* he trembled for⁸ displeure
that he was in / & he thought in⁹ him selfe *that* he
wold not shew the matter to no¹⁰ person lyuynge / but 28
he sware *that* if any came to do him displeaser *that*¹¹
with his swerd he wold cleue his heed to y^e brayne /
thus the matter rested tyl¹² it was night / & so he went
in to y^e hal amonge⁸ other lordes, & there he founde y^e 32
erle / who made hym great chere / the¹³ souper was redy,

¹ in. ² Fol. clxxxvii. back, col. 1. ³ then. ⁴ so.
⁵ very. ⁶ he. ⁷⁻⁷ readie armed. ⁸ the. ⁹ within.
¹⁰ any. ¹¹ omitted. ¹² vntill. ¹³ and.

and¹ than they sate downe: of their seruyce I make
 no rehersall / after they had souped diuers sportes were
 shewed in y^e hall, & whan² houre requisyt came euery
 4 man went to bed /³ y^e erle Remon had pre⁴pared for
 Croysant a fayre chambre with a riche bed for him / &
 a couche bed for his squier / than Croisant toke leue of
 y^e erle & of the damsell with whom he was ⁵in
 8 amours⁵ / than he went to his chambre wel accompanied
 with knightes and squiers / than⁶ with in a seson⁶ thei
 toke leue of him / & than he was alone ⁷saue with⁷
 his squier / whom he made to lye in the couch bed¹ /
 12 & shewed him nothyng of *that* he thought to do /
 than Croysant armed him at all peces / his helme on
 his heed / his shelde about his necke & his swerde
 about him / and so layde him downe in his bed &
 16 hyd him with clothes that his armure shuld not be sene
 by them that shuld⁸ come thyder / ⁹there he lay⁹ as
 preuely as he coude / & than about mydnight the erles
 son entred in to the chambre all vnarmed with his
 20 swerde in his hande & his .x. companions with him /
 eche of them with a sharpe weapon in their handes /
 than thei approched to Croysantes bed, than³ the erles
 sone lyfte vp his swerde & strake Croysant on the
 24 helme suche a stroke *that* the swerde swerued in his
 hande, whearby he parceyued *that* he was armed &
 that he had warnyng of their comyng, whearof he was
 right sorowfull / than he recouered againe another
 28 stroke, thynkyng to haue slaine Croysant / but he
 coulde not / his helme was so good / than the other .x.
 strake at Croysant / but they coulde do hym no hurt,
 his harneys¹⁰ was so good / than Croisant ¹¹as a hardi
 32 knight¹¹ rose vp quickly with his swerde in his hande /
 whan the erles sonne sawe that / he was neuer so

and afterwards
 withdraws with
 his squire to a
 rich chamber.

Croissant puts on
 strong armour.

The earl's son
 enters,

and strikes
 Croissant on the
 helm, but does
 him no hurt.

The other traitors
 strike him also.

Croissant rises,

¹ omitted. ² the. ³ and.

⁴ Fol. clxxxvii. back, col. 2. ⁵⁻⁵ enamoured and.

⁶ while. ⁷⁻⁷ sauing onely. ⁸ would.

⁹ so. ¹⁰ armour. ¹¹⁻¹¹ after quickly.

and strikes the
earl's son dead.

But the others
kill Croissant's
squire.

Croissant slays
five of them.

afrayde in all his lyfe / & thought to haue fled away /
but Croysant was before him / & gaue him suche a
stroke on y^e heed with his swerde that he claue ¹his
heed¹ to y^e chyn, & so he fel downe deed / & the other ⁴
had slayne Croysantes ²squier, whearof he was sory /
than he ran at them lyke a man dysperate, and dyd
so moche that within a shorte space he had slayne fyue
of them / & the other fled away into a nother chambre ⁸
and durste³ speake no⁴ worde.

¶ Howe Croysant departed from Nyse with
his swerde in his hande, and howe the erle
Remon was sorowful for the deth of his ¹²
sone, and chased after Croisant, but he
could not be found. Ca. C.lxxxviii.

Croissant is in
fear because he
has slain the
earl's son,



and determines to
flee.

He finds the
stables harred.

Han Croysant saw himselfe so enter- ¹⁶
priced, and that he had slayne the
erles sone, he was in great feare / for
he knew well⁵ yf he were taken he
shulde be in daunger of his lyfe / ²⁰
therefore hastily he departed out of the palais, and whan
he came to the stable wheare his hors stode / he founde
a greate yron chayne before the dore, to the entent that
y^e hors shulde not be taken out in the nyght tyme / ²⁴
⁶whan he saw that he was sore discomforted, and said,
'O very god, now by thy grace ayde me, I ought well
to be sory whan I must leue my hors. Alas, now
I can not tell how to beare myn armure / certaynely ²⁸
without⁷ god ayde⁸ me now I se no way how I may⁹
scape alieu. Alas, I thought to haue ben married to y^e
erles doughter / but now I am ferre fro it syn I haue
slayne her brother / I was ¹⁰not in mynde so soone¹⁰ ³²

¹⁻¹ it.

² Fol. clxxxviii. col. 1.

³ not.

⁴ one.

⁵ that.

⁶ and.

⁷ except.

⁸ succour.

⁹ can.

¹⁰⁻¹⁰ minded.

to haue retourned into my countre / tyl¹ I hadde conquered some honoure and londes, whearby I might haue ben receyued honourably of them that dyd set
 4 nothyng by me / than he began sore to wepe / ²he went through ³the towne ⁴as preuely ⁵as he mighte / He goes all armed through the town, and enters an empty house.
 he coulede not traually longe in his armure / ⁶he behelde in a corner of a strete ⁶a voyde house, ⁶thyder he
 8 went⁷ & vnarmed him of all his armure except his swerde, and so he was in a wyght iacked, and than he rested not tyll¹ he came to the gate, and called the
 porter and desyred him to open the gate, saynge howe⁸ and goes to the gate of the city.
 12 he had busynes to do a lytell without the towne / the porter answered chorlysshely,⁹ and sayd / 'there requyreth no hast, he might well abyde' / for he sayd he wolde not open no gate tyll¹ it was fayre day. 'Frende,'
 16 quod Croysant, 'I praye the shewe me this curtoyse' / The porter refuses to open the gate.
 the porter answered fyersly, & said / 'thou doest but lose thy payne¹⁰ for the gate shall not be opened the⁴ tyl¹ the sonne ryse.' Whan Croysant sawe that ⁴for no
 20 fayre wordes⁴ y^e porter wolde¹¹ open the gate¹² / he set his hande vpon¹³ his swerd, and sayd / 'thou false traytour, without¹⁴ incontynent¹⁵ thou¹⁶ open the gate with my swerde I shal slee the.' whan the porter sawe
 24 that Croysant held a naked swerde in his hande to ¹⁷haue stryken¹⁷ him, he had great feare / ¹⁸he came forth in hast with the keyes in his hande, and said, 'syr, I shall open y^e gate with a good wyl;' how be it
 28 he was so afraide that all his body trembled for feare / and the porter yields.
 than he came to the gate & opened the wycket / ¹⁸than Croisant issued out vnarmed, and had on but a cloke ouer his doubled,¹⁹ and his swerde about him, and

¹ vntill. ² so. ³ Fol. clxxxviii. col. 2. ⁴⁻⁴ omitted.⁵ but. ⁶⁻⁶ before of. ⁷ and he went before thyder.⁸ that. ⁹ stubbornly. ¹⁰ labour. ¹¹ not.¹² by fayre meanes. ¹³ to. ¹⁴ except.¹⁵ incontynent after gate. ¹⁶ dost. ¹⁷⁻¹⁷ strike.¹⁸ and. ¹⁹ cloake.

Croissant escapes
to Rome.

The traitorous
companions of
the earl's son
who had escaped
alive tell the
earl of Crois-
sant's deed.

The earl swoons
on seeing his dead
son.

a lytell purse by¹ his gyrdell, and therin twenty shyl-
lynges in money, and no more / thus as ye haue herde
Croissant issued out of y^e towne of Nyse in Pronance,
and he² toke the way to³ Rome, but or⁴ he had gone 4
two leeges / the fyue traytours that fledde fro him and
were hydden in a chambre / whan they thought *that*
Croissant was departed, for thei thought ⁵he wolde not
tary bycause he had slayne the erles sone / than they 8
went out of the chambre makynge great bruyt and
great² noyse / soo that euery man rose in the palayes /
and the erle him selfe rose and came in to y^e hall with
his swerde in his hande, & there he founde the fyue 12
traytours / who shewed hym that for certayne wordes
betwene Croysant and his sone there was a fray be-
twene them / whearby your sone is slayne by the
handes of Croissant / the whiche he dyde wylfully, to 16
the entent to haue all youre londes after youre dyssease,
bycause ye haue gyuen him youre doughter in mariage /
and or⁴ we coulde come he was fledde / but or⁴ he
departed out of the chambre he slewe fyue men besyde 20
your sone, for they were not armed / &⁶ Croysant was
armed / ⁷he semed rather a spirite than any⁸ mortall
man / and whan we sawe that we coulde not approche
to him bycause he was armed / we slew his squier. 24
Whan the erle herde them it was no meruayle thought
he was sorowfull; ⁷than he went in to the chambre
wheare as his sone lay dede / whan he came thyder⁹ for
great distres that he had at his herte he fell downe 28
vpon his sone in a swone / ⁷whan he came to himselfe
he cryed, and sayd, 'A, Croysant, your acqueyntaunce
is to me very herde / than he commaunded his men to
arme them and incontynent to go after Croysant, who 32
so petyously hath slayne his sone / and said, 'if I maye


¹ at.² omitted.³ towards.⁴ before.⁵ Fol. clxxxviii. back, col. 1.⁶ but.⁷ and.⁸ a.⁹ there.

take him he shall neuer scape my handes without
deth' / than in the palais and in the towne euery
ma[n]¹ armed them, and the erle himselve armed him

He vows Crois-
sant's death,
and orders his
arrest.

4 & mounted on his hors and issued out at² y^e gate with
moche³ people / and than thei rode abroad in the
countree serchyng / and demaundyng if any man met
with Croi⁴sant, but he coude here no certayn newes of
8 him except of one man, that said howe he met hym a
fyue leeges fro thens / and how⁵ that he went a great
pace.

He with many
armed men
pursue Croissant,
but to no purpose.

12  Han the erle herde that / he saw wel it
was but a payn⁶ lost to folowe any
forther / than he returned to y^e towne
right sorowful and sore displeased for
the deth of his sone / and yet againe
16 he greatly complainned for Croisant for⁷ that ad-
uenture, and said⁸ a more valiaunt knight can⁹ not be
founde / nor¹⁰ more curtoyse / nor more ¹¹sage¹¹, wold
to god that bytwene him and me ¹²there were¹² a good
20 accorde,¹³ so that he hadde my doughter in mariage /
so¹⁴ that after my disesease he might haue my londe /
than diuers of his men said / Sir, lete him go, he seme¹⁵
rather a dyuell than a man / he is fiers and cruell / he
24 setteth¹⁶ no more to slee men¹⁷ than some do to drinke
the⁵ good wine / let him goo / he was borne⁷ an
yll houre / than the erle entred in to the towne right
sorowfull and sore displeased for the deth of his sone /
28 & also for Croisantes aduenture / ¹⁴than he caused
his sone to be buried as it apartained / ¹⁴great sorowe
was made by the erle, and by y^e duke of Calabre and
other knightes that were there / but thei knew not the

The pursuers
return home,

¹ may in text. ² of. ³ many.

⁴ Fol. clxxxviii. back, col. 2. ⁵ omitted. ⁶ labour.

⁷ in. ⁸ that. ⁹ could. ¹⁰ neither.

¹¹⁻¹¹ wise. &. ¹²⁻¹² before bytwene. ¹³ amitie.

¹⁴ and. ¹⁵ semeth to be. ¹⁶ makes. ¹⁷ a man.

and none of them
knows the truth.

trouth of the matter / who so euer made sorow /
the erles doughter was sorowfull / both for her brother
and also for y^e noble Croisant whom she had thought
to mary. Now let vs leaue spekyng of them, and 4
returne to Croisant.

¹¶ Howe Croisant arined in the subburbes of a
lytel towne called Florenccolle, and lodged
amonge ruffians and vyleyns / and howe 8
thei fell at stryfe / and how Croisant slewe
them and fledde, and was in great daunger.
And howe he came in to the cyte of Rome,
whereas there was noo man that wolde 12
gyue hym one morsel of brede / and how
he wente and lay in an olde palayes on²
a burden of strawe. Capitulo .Clxxxix.



Croissant
journeys on,
but finds little to
eat or drink.

He approaches
Florenccolle.

Han Croissant saw that he was departed 16
fro y^e towne of Nyse, and that he was
alone afote / he made his complayntes
to our lord god, requyeynge him
humbly to haue pety on³ him / than 20
he went forth, and so trauailed thre dayes & thre
nighthes without mete or drinke / but a lytel brede and
water / he had such hungre and thurst that he coud
scant⁴ susteyne himselfe on his fete / so at last a lytell 24
before the sonne was sette he came to a lytel towne
called Florenccolle, whearof the gates were shytted whan⁵
he came thyder / than in y^e subburbes he saw a house
lyke a tauerne, & he sware though he shulde be slayne 28
he wolde go to that house to ete & drinke / and to pay
well for his scot⁶ / it had ben better for him to haue
passed by / for there he was in great peryll of his lyfe,

¹ Fol. clxxxix. col. 1. ² vpon. ³ of. ⁴ scarce.
⁵ before. ⁶ shot.

- as ye shall here / thus he approched to y^e house and herde how the cokes were busy in the kytchyn / than he sawe a great fyre in a chambre / & wheare there was
- 4 ¹the greatest ruffyans / & plaies at dyse in all y^e towne / & they had prepared flesshe and fysshe for their souper. Whan Croysant saw y^e preperacion *that* was made there for the syxe ruffians / he entred in to the
- 8 house and saluted the hoost, & demaunded if he might be lodged there / y^e hoost said ye / & how he shulde be there well serued bothe of wyne and of meate / suche as he wolde demaunde / than Croisant entred² in /
- 12 ³the ruffians met with⁴ him and said how he was welcome, and eche of them pynched other & wynked with y^e one eye, and said softly to the maister of them / this great stradiot⁵ is come well at a poynte /
- 16 for or⁶ he departe he shall pay for our scot⁷ & expence / and anone we shal⁸ put y^e dyse in to his handes / whearby he shall leaue gowne / cap / and money if he haue any. Croysant dyd not vnderstande them by
- 20 cause they spake Iaragon⁹ / than Croisant said / 'syre, if I eate with you, paynge my scot,⁷ shall it turne you to any displeasure.' 'frende,' quod the maister of them / 'it pleaseth me well that ye eate with vs' / than
- 24 they wasshed¹⁰ and sate downe at the table nere by¹¹ the fyre, ³thei were wel serue of euery thyng. Whan Croisant was set he began sore⁴ to fede / ¹²for the hunger that he had¹² / for in thre dayes before he hadde
- 28 eaten nothyng but brede & water / whearfore¹³ he had the better appetyte, and also he founde there good wyne and fresshe, & he drank therof at his pleasure. whan thei had wel eaten & dronken, & were wel chafed
- 32 by reason of the good wyne / the hoost rose vp and

He enters a tavern, where cooks are busy, and ruffians playing with dice.

Croissant asks the host for lodging, and is well received.

He asks permission to eat with the ruffians, paying his own scot.

He makes a good meal.

¹ Fol. clxxxix. col. 2. ² went. ³ and. ⁴ omitted.

⁵ Trauailer. ⁶ before. ⁷ shot. ⁸ wil.

⁹ whisperingly. ¹⁰ all together. ¹¹ to.

¹²⁻¹² well, (his hunger was so great).

¹³ & therfore.

The host brings
the reckoning,

but the chief of
the ruffians
insists that they
should all play
with dice,
and that the loser
should pay all.

Croissant offers to
pay the whole
bill.

One of the
ruffians calls for
a new bottle of
wine,

and the chief of
them again pro-
poses to cast with
the dice to decide
who should pay
for it.
Croissant refuses
to play with dice,
and declares that
he has already
paid enough.

said, 'syrs / it is tyme to make rekenynge, and *that*
euery man paye his parte' / than the maister ruffian
said, 'syr, make ye y^e accompt / ¹ye can better do it /
than we / ²shewe vs what we shall pay euery man ⁴
lyke' / 'syrs,' quod the hoost, 'as nere ³as I can
reken ye must paye in all .xii. sh., & loke euery man
pay his parte' / than the maister ruffian began to
swere bloode & woundes that thei shulde plei at the ⁸
dyse to se who shulde pay for all / than he said to
Croissant / 'frende, ye must come playe with vs ;
beholde here .iii. dyse, good and square, we must do so
that¹ one shall⁴ pay the hole expence whan⁵ we ¹²
departe' / 'Syrs,' quod Croissant, 'we shall not nede to
play at dyse to know who shall pay for the scot,⁶ I
wyll paye it all togyder without ony stryfe' / than thei
said thei were well content ther with, & thanked him / ¹⁶
than one of them, the falsest vyleyne amonge them,
wyfully caste downe a potte of wyne vpon y^e table,
wherof his felowes blamed him ; than he answer[d] &
said / 'syrs, ye nede not to be angry therwith / for ²⁰
there is none of you wyll drynke therof / it is better to
haue a fresshe potte of wyne of a new vessel' / thei
said, well that is trew, so be it / than their hoost
brought them a new pot ful of wyne, & said, 'syrs, this ²⁴
pot of wyne is not of the fyrst rekenynge, this is
a potte of a newe accompt' / than the maister ruffian
said to Croysant / 'Syr, take and cast the dyse, for the
first cast shal be yours.' Croysant beheld them fiersly, ²⁸
& said / 'nay, syrs, I shall kepe me therfro⁷ / for
I neuer played at y^e⁸ dyse in al my lyfe / be content
with the .xii. s. *that* I shall pay for our scot⁶ / for by
reason of the longe vyage *that* I haue made I am not ³²
wel furnysshed of money / for I haue but xiii. s. in my
purse' / than y^e maister said / 'thou art better arayed

¹ for. ² and. ³ Fol. clxxxix back, col. 1. ⁴ must.
⁵ before. ⁶ shot. ⁷ from that. ⁸ omitted.

- than we / ¹thou must vse thy wordes² other wyse / for
 thou shalt not thus scape / thou shalt leue thy gowne
 to pay for our scot² to morow in y^e morning.' than
 4 another ruffian said / '& I wyll haue his hose & his
 shoes³ to bye fyssh for our dyner' / whan Croysant
 herde the ⁴vylayne he began to chaunge colour, & was
 sore displeased, and said right fyersly / 'Syrs, leue your
 8 clatterynge, yet I haue .xiii. s. in my purse, the whiche
 I wyl gyue you rather than ye shuld be displeased / me
 thynke this ought to suffyce you / for,¹ syrs, I am
 a noble man, & lately I was made knight, for if I were
 12 ones agayne in my countree I wold neuer come⁵ thens
 to seke for such aduentures / ye ought to beare me⁶
 honor syn I ⁷say to⁷ you *that* I am a knight' / y^e
 ruffian said / howe his wordes nor his prechyng shuld
 16 not auayle him / but *that* he must leue his gowne /
 iacked / hosen & shoes / than Croisant, replete with yre,
 dyd of his surcot, the whiche was furred with armyns,
 & cast it to them / & said, 'syrs, nowe ye ought to be
 20 content with me / & I ought to be quyt' / whan
 y^e ruffians vnderstode him thei cried all at ones that he
 shulde put of his hosen & his shoen / & his gyrdle / &
 purse / & gowne / & bad him quyeckly delyuer it to
 24 them / and than to auoyde y^e house / for thei said there
 was no lodgyng for him / ¹the hoost to plesse the
 vylaynes said howe thei said trouthe / than Croisant, ful
 of yre & dyspleasure, turned his visage to y^e benche
 28 where as⁸ his good sward lay / wherof he was ioyous⁹
that thei had not taken it away / than he stept thyder
 & toke it in his handes & drewe it out, & came to the
 vylaynes, & thei arose against him with their swerdes
 32 in their handes / & he strake y^e maister ruffian so
 meruaylous a stroke / *that* he claue his hed to y^e teth /

But one of the
ruffians insists
that he is
wealthier than
they, and must
pay their scot
again.

Croissant grows
angry,
but offers to give
them all the
money he has
left;

he says he is a
knight.

The ruffians
demand all his
clothes.

Croissant in
wrath gives them
his surcoat,

but they demand
his hose, shoes,
girdle, purse, and
gown, and bid
him, after he has
given them these,
leave the house.

Croissant draws
his sword,

and strikes the
chief of the
ruffians dead.

¹ and.

² tongue.

³ tomorrow.

⁴ Fol. clxxxix. back, col. 2.

⁵ from.

⁶ my.

⁷⁻⁷ shew.

⁸ omitted.

⁹ ioyfull.

Three others he
kills.

The hoost raises
the cry of murder,

but Croissant
rushes from the
house and from
the town.

The rulers of the
town come to the
tavern,

and order the
men to pursue
Croissant.

so he fell downe deed before y^e chymney / & fro
another he strake his heed / & than he slewe y^e thirde /
& the¹ fourth / & the other two had so great feare *that*
thei fled away / than the hoost began to crye / a thefe / 4
a murderer; but Croissant wold do him no hurt, he
issued out of y^e house with² his swerd in his hande,
& ran as fast as ³he coude tyll⁴ he was without y^e
subburbes / than he ran in the feld ouer hedges & 8
dykes,⁵ to thentent *that* none shuld folow him; than
he herkened towardes y^e towne, where he herd great
crynge / & noyse of y^e hoost of the house *that* he cam
fro / wherby all his neyghbours / tailers / cordiners⁶ / 12
drapers / & men of all craftes / came to y^e house, and
there was such⁷ noyse made in y^e subburbes / *that* the
towne gates were opened, & y^e burgesses issued out &
came to the house where as the noyse was / & whan y^e 16
rulers⁸ of y^e towne came thyder & sawe the men lye
deed / they demaunded of y^e hoost who had done *that*
murdre / 'Syr,' quod y^e hoost / ¹'*that* hath done¹
a great¹ vacabond⁹ / who is bygge & mighty / for 20
I neuer sawe with myn eyen a man better made ne¹⁰
fourmed / & he is fled away with his swerde in his
handes¹¹ yonder hie way / but, syr, for goddes sake
com not to nere him / for he semeth no man whan he 24
is angry / but he is lyke a man out of his wytte with-
out¹² feare or¹³ doubte / than y^e ruler⁸ commaunded
to folowe him bothe on horsbacke & a fote, & they ran
al to harnes,¹⁴ though y^e captayne were not greatly 28
afrayde / yet he wolde not be y^e first shulde go forth /
he loued better *that* another shuld take that aduantage /
thus on all sydes a¹¹ horsbacke & a fote / they folowed
Croissant, who helde¹⁵ not y^e hie way / & it was farre in 32
the night, & also there were many that wolde not chafe

¹ omitted.

² in *in text*.

³ Fol. clxxx. col. 1.

⁴ vntill.

⁵ dichea.

⁶ Shoemakers.

⁷ a.

⁸ Magistrates.

⁹ hath done it.

¹⁰ nor.

¹¹ on.

¹² all.

¹³ and.

¹⁴ armour.

¹⁵ kept.

themselfe ouer sore to seke for him / for thei wolde
 make no prease to receyue his offryng / for¹ they fered
 to fynde him / ²whan thei had sought a longe space in
 4 y^e felde & in the³ wayes, & coulde not fynde him /
⁴than⁴ thei all returned to their towne / & Croisant went
 euer fro y^e towne warde with his swerde⁵ in his hande
⁴all naked⁴ / ²whan he saw that he was wel two leeges
 8 of them,⁴ he entred into y^e hye waye, & praysed god
 that he was so scaped with ⁶out daunger / but he was
 sore displeased in that he had neuer a peny in his purse,
 & nothyng but his swerde &⁴ his cote / & a rich purse
 12 at his gyrdle, & also he sawe⁷ it was wynter, & frost &
 snowe / also he felt y^e cold wynde, y^e whiche dyd him
 moch yll / thus he went forth al night / & the next
 day tyll⁸ it was nere night / than he ariued at a
 16 village / ²ther he was fayne to sel his sword for lacke
 of money to pay for his scot⁹ / he came to a lodge
 where he was well serued of euerythyng that he wolde
 haue, than in the mornynge whan he departed he solde
 20 his purs for as moch as he coud gete / than² he
 traunayled forth so long that he approached to Rome /
 & than⁴ he cam to a lodgyng without the gate, & there
 he lodged that night / than² in the mornynge he de-
 24 maunded of his hoost to whome the towne pertained,
 & who was lord therof, & what is⁴ his name¹⁰ that
 gouerneth the towne / the hoost said, 'frend, he that
 now is lord here is named Guimart of Puile, but or¹¹ he
 28 came hider we had a yong lord, the most⁴ fayrest yong
 gentylman that euer was sene / & he was sone to y^e
 noble emperour yde / ye somewhat resemble him / but
 he was of so yll rule & so ful of folies ⁴and youth⁴ /
 32 that all the riches that his father had left him / he
 dispended,¹² & gaue away ⁴his riches⁴ to euery man

Croissant e-
scapes
them,

but he has no
money, and the
weather is very
cold.

He comes to a
village, and sells
his sword and
purse.

He reaches Rome,

and learns how
Guymart of Puile
rules there.

¹ because. ² and. ³ high. ⁴⁻⁴ omitted.
⁵ naked. ⁶ Fol. clxxx. col. 2. ⁷ that. ⁸ vntill.
⁹ shot. ¹⁰ was. ¹¹ before. ¹² spent.

that wold ¹haue it, & so he gaue so moche to euery man *that*¹ he left himself nothyng to lyue by. And after I herde say that he had in himselfe suche shame *that* he departed priuely with a squier & went to seke ⁴his aduentures / but no man knoweth where he is / nor whyder ²that euer² he wyll³ come agayne or not / and y^e comoners⁴ of the cyte made lytell therof / for after he was departed they sente for Guymart of Puile, ⁸whom they haue made emperour.⁵ Whan Croysant vnderstode his hoost / ⁶right pytuously⁶ he complayned ⁷to him selfe, & said, 'Alas, caytiue that I am, what shall I do that thus hath loste all myn enherit- ¹²auce without recouer / & besyde that, I haue nothyng to spende / nor I haue no crafte⁸ to lyue by / it muste behoue me to dye for⁹ hungre & colde, I haue no more but .xxv. s., for the which I solde my purse.' Thus as ¹⁶wel as he coud he contynued tyll lent / than the season began to waxe somewhat hotter / ¹⁰euery day in the mornynge he wolde here masse¹¹ / euery man that sawe him / behelde him sore¹² for the great beaute that he ²⁰was of / ¹⁰there were dyuers that knewe him / but they wolde make no semblaunt¹³ therof / to the entente that they wolde gyue to him nothyng / ¹⁰whan they sawe him thei wolde eschewe¹⁴ the way, bycause he shuld not ²⁴knowe them / there were many of them that he had done them moche good,¹⁵ and gyuen them in suche wyse that they were become riche & he pore / & ther was none of them that wolde offre him one morsel of brede / ²⁸wherof he was sorowfull / for than he sawe wel his money was gone, so that he had neuer a peny¹⁶ / than he thought to sel his gowne rather than to dye for

He liues at Rome
in retirement,

and none of his
old friends will
have aught to do
with him.

¹⁻¹ craue anything of him so that in the end. ²⁻² omitted.

³ euer. ⁴ communalte. ⁵ of this Empire.

⁶⁻⁶ after compleyned. ⁷ Fol. clxxxx. back, col. 1.

⁸ trade. ⁹ through. ¹⁰ and. ¹¹ service and.

¹² greatly. ¹³ semblaunce. ¹⁴ shun.

¹⁵ vnto. ¹⁶ left.

- hungre, & so he dyd / he solde it for xxviii s., & than He has to sell his gown,
 he taryed in his lodgyng as long as his money endured /
 so¹ he contynued² tyll³ Easter / by that tyme all his but at last all his money is spent.
 4 money was done.⁴ Than he thought⁵ he wold go in⁶
 the stretes to se yf he myght spye any burgesses to
 whom he had done in tymes past some good vnto / &
 to demaunde of him some courtoyse / & so he issued out
 8 of his lodgyng & walked into the stretes & parceyued⁷
 a ryche burges / who was lenyng out at a wyndowe in
 his house / Croysant knewe him well / for it was
 he that made him ryche / ⁸for afore⁸ he was but pore /
 12 than he thought to knowlege him self to that burges /
 than Croysant came⁹ and saluted¹⁰ him right humbly,
 and sayd / 'syr,¹¹ remembraunce of a pore caytyue to Croissant appeals for aid to a burgess whom he himself in past time had made rich.
 16 moche good whan ye serued him / yf ye be a good man,
 as I byleue ye be¹² / of that goodnes ¹³ye haue¹³
 remembraunce / & it may so be / yf ye do so ye shall
 fare the better' / whan the burges herde Croysant
 20 he behelde him fyersly / ¹he knew him anone¹⁴ / &
 without makyng¹⁵ any maner of answeare, he called his
 page, and commaunded him to brynge him a pan full
 of water to y^e wyndowe / and he dyd as his maister had
 24 commaunded him / than y^e burges toke y^e panne full of
 water / than¹ he behelde Croissant who stode vnder the
 wyndow / and dyd cast the water vpon his heed / soo
 that his fayre heere, cote & shyрте, were all wete / But the burgess only throws a pan of water at him.
 28 Croissant without any worde spekyng made him selfe
 clene / and after¹⁶ sayd to y^e burges that yf he lyued
 longe the offence that he hadde done him¹⁷ shulde
 derely ¹⁸be bought / ¹⁸the burges, who was proud &
 32 disdaynfull, set but lytell by his wordes / Croissant,

¹ and. ² there. ³ vntill. ⁴ gone. ⁵ that.
⁶ to. ⁷ saw. ⁸⁻⁸ and before. ⁹ went.
¹⁰ Fol. clxxx. back, col. 2. ¹¹ haue. ¹² are.
¹³⁻¹³ haue you. ¹⁴ presently. ¹⁵ of. ¹⁶ afterward.
¹⁷ he. ¹⁸⁻¹⁸ buy it but.

who was right sorowfull, toke his way towards the
 palayes, before y^e whiche there was an olde palais,
 where as no man had dwelled in of a long space,
¹he entred in at the gate, the whiche was great, and 4
 stode open / and there he sawe a great pyller, where as
 there laye two bundles² of strawe / than he layd him
 downe & slept right sore,³ angry with the burges *that*
 had so wete him with water / y^e whiche burges, after 8
⁴that⁴ he had cast this water vpon Croysant, he went
 to the palayes to the emperour Guymart to flatter and
 to please him / ¹he founde the emperoure lenyng in a
 wyndowe, and he saluted him, and said / 'syr, I brynge 12
 certayne tydynges of Croisant / sone to theemperour yde,
 who of right ought to be enheritour of this empyre,
 wherof ye be⁵ as now em^eperour; he is come into this⁷
 towne in his double without hose or shoes / he is 16
 arayed lyke a vacabande / or a ruffian comyng fro the
 tauerne, ¹he is so great and so wel made in all his
 membres that he semeth more lyke a chamyon redy to
 fyght than euer I sawe man in⁸ my lyfe / yf ye wyll 20
 byleue⁹ my counsell, stryke of his heed or cast him in¹⁰
 a pytte, ⁴to thentent⁴ that of him there be neuer had¹¹
 memory / for if he lyue longe he may do you damage
 & put you out of this empyre, the⁴ whiche ye holde / 24
 the whiche shulde partayne to him.' whan theemperour
 Guymart vnderstode the burges, he behelde hym fyersly,
 & said / 'speke no more to me of this matter / for *thou*
 doest lyke a traytoure; thou knowest well that by him 28
 and by⁴ his dede thou and dyuers⁴ other are¹² made
 riche / ¹thou arte lyke him *that* betrayed our lorde
 Iesu chryste / therfore I commaunde the fro hensforth
 come not in my syght / for I wyll haue none acqueynt- 32
 aunce nor conuersacyon with a traytour; if it be so that

Croissant goes to
 an old palace,

and sleeps there
 on straw.

The burges goes
 to Guymart,

and warns him
 of Croissant's
 return.

Guymart reproves
 the burges for his
 ingratitude,

¹ and. ² burdens. ³ sorowfull &. ⁴⁻⁴ omitted.
⁵ are. ⁶ Fol. clxxxix. col. 1. ⁷ the. ⁸ all.
⁹ follow. ¹⁰ to. ¹¹ any more. ¹² bee.


Croisant be pore, it is pety & damage¹ and great syn to
 doo him any yll / ²I haue done him great yll whan his
 londes and sygnoryes ³I kepe³ wrongfully and without⁴
⁴ cause, wherof I thinke my selfe gretly culpable against⁵
 god for the syn that I haue done ⁶whan⁶ I holde the
 honour & sygnory that of reason ought to partayne to
 him / this daye is Easter day, on⁷ y^e whiche day euery
⁸ good crysten man ought to humble himselfe to ⁸our
 lorde⁸ / cryinge him mercy and pardon of⁹ all their
 synnes / it is reason that I make pease with god, and
 do so that he may be with me content.⁹

and declares that
 he himself has
 done the youth
 much wrong.

¹² ¶ Howe themperour Guymart spake & re-
 buked the burges that spake yll of Croy-
 sant, and howe ¹⁰themperour bare meate
 & drinke to the place where as Croisant
¹⁶ slept / and of the meruaylous tresure that
 he founde in a chambre in the sayd olde
 palayes / and of that¹¹ was shewed him
 by two knyghtes whom he founde there.

20

Capitulo .C.lxxxx.

²⁴  Han the burges vnderstode themperour
 he was in great feare, & soo departed
 ryght sore abashed / & thought he
 had ben to hasty to reporte suche
 newes / & so right sorowfull departed
 and lefte themperour alone in a wyndowe right sore
 pensyue, and said to himselfe, 'O very god, the
²⁸ pouerte that Croysant is in is by my cause / for I haue
 all that ought to be his / ¹²I kepe it from him perforce;
 yf I kepe it styll I may wel say that my soule shal

¹ lamentable. ² for. ³⁻³ after whan. ⁴ a.

⁵ the almighty. ⁶⁻⁶ him, in that. ⁷ vpon.

⁸⁻⁸ god. ⁹ before with me. ¹⁰ Fol. clxxxxi. col. 2.

¹¹ which. ¹² and.

Guymart walks
down to the old
palace full of
remorse,

and sees Croissant
sleeping on the
straw.

He fetches wine
and meat,

and sets them
down by Crois-
sant, who still
asleeps.

He sees an iron
door standing
open,

and looking
beyond it per-
ceives all manner
of treasure.

neuer come in¹ paradyse, but shal be dampned for euer.' Thus themperour Guymart compleyned to him self, and so went downe in to his palaies / and so walked vp and downe by him selfe before y^e olde 4 palayes, the whiche was nere to his palays / ²he loked in at a gate and sawe a man lye slepyng on a burden of strawe, ³he thought incontynent³ it shulde be Croy-sant by the reporte of the burges. Whan the emperour 8 saw him / he had so⁴ great pety of him that he wepte / ⁵than he wente in to his palayes and commaunded one to brynge to⁵ him a towell with brede and flesshe / & a bottel of wyne / y^e which thyng was done; than 12 themperour toke a mantel furred with gryse, & dyd it about him selfe, & toke the wyne & mete, & commaunded his men³ ⁶none to⁷ folow him / ⁸he went downe y^e greses & came to the palais where as Croissant 16 slept, ²themperour set the mete and wyne nere by Croissant, and awoke him not, than he couered him with the mantell and than⁹ departed / & as y^e emperour was departyng he loked on his right hande & sawe 20 a dore open all of yren, ¹⁰sore bonded with barres of yren,¹⁰ & he sawe a clerenes within / in such wyse as though there had ben within .C. torches brennyng¹¹ / he went thyder & entred into the chambre / y^e which 24 was great & large, & he sawe all about y^e chambre great coffers, y^e which stode open, & thei were full of golde / & other coffers full of Iewelless & riche stones / y^e whiche shone¹² with suche lyght that themperour 28 was¹³ maruayled / also he sawe great peces of plate & money lyng on y^e erth, & besyde he sawe¹⁴ vessel / ¹⁵cuppes / & pottes of golde & syluer, & great peces of golde bordred with precious stones. Also he sawe 32

¹ to. ² and. ³ that. ⁴ such. ⁵ vnto.

⁶ Fol. clxxxix. back, col. 1. ⁷ should. ⁸ then. ⁹ he.

¹⁰⁻¹⁰ & banded verie strongly with yron barres.

¹¹ burning and. ¹² did shine. ¹³ greatly.

¹⁴ a great. ¹⁵ of.

riche gownes hangyng on perches of clothe of golde &
 syluer,¹ in so great nombre *that* the emperour was sore
 abasshed / & said who so euer left this treasure here /
 4 might wel be called a great lord / for he thought² al y°
 golde in y° worlde / & all the riche iewelles were
 brought togyder³ might not be compared to y° treasure
that he saw there / & said he was happy to come
 8 thyder / *than* he passed forth where he saw an ymage
 of fyne golde, & it was as byg as a chylde of two yere
 of age / & wheare as the eyen shulde stonde there were
 two gret carbuckles / y° whiche cast so great clerenes
 12 *that* all y° chambre was lyght therewith / whan them-
 perour sawe *that* ymage he thought to haue taken it &
 to haue borne it into his palais / but he had moche ado
 to lyfte it / *than* he loked towards a lytell dore, out of
 16 y° whiche he saw comyng two knyghtes well armed at
 al peces with their swerdes in 'their handes,⁴ they came
 to themperour & said / 'beware, frende / be not so
 hardi to bere any thyng fro hens / for y° treser *that* is
 20 here is not yours / nor it belongeth you⁵ not to haue
 it / therfore set downe agayne that ymage / without ye
 do it shortly / ye shall by it derely⁷ / y° emperour,
 seynge the two knyghtes thretenyng him / he was in
 24 great feare / ⁵he set downe the ymage & beheld y°
 knyghtes, & said / 'Syr, ye speke fyersly to me / for
 the treasure / the which ye warne me *that* I shulde not
 take any parte therof, by all right ought to be myn,
 28 and none others / syn I haue founde it / ⁵therfor
 I coniure you by y° puyssaunce of god / & of his
 aunghelles & archangelles, & all saintes / that y° shewe
 me y° trouth to whom this treasure ⁸do parteyne⁸ / ye
 32 ought to knowe it / syn ye haue y° kepyng therof' /
than y° .ii. knyghtes answered & said / 'syr, this

He passes through
 it, and finds an
 image of fine gold,
 which he tries to
 lift.

But two knyghts
 approach him,
 and bid him lay
 it down, for none
 of the treasure is
 his.

The emperor asks
 to whom it
 belongs.

¹ sylke. ² if. ³ they. ⁴ Fol. clxxxix. back, col. 2.

⁵ and. ⁶ you *after* to. ⁷ derely *before* by it.

⁸⁻⁸ doth belong.

They tell him it
is Croissant's
property,

and bid him take
three besantes of
gold and proclaim
through the city
that he will give
every poor man a
florin.

Croissant, they
say, will then
come to the palace,

and he will learn
by a sign that all
belongs to the
valiant knight.

treasure *that* ye here se / ought to partayne to Croisant,
sone to yde themperour, who alone lyeth on a burden
of strawe here by not ferre fro this chambre / he lyeth
right porely & naked / the which treasure was iudged ⁴
to him .v.C. yere past / ¹neuer syn² there hath ben
taken fro it y^e value of a³ peny / nor neuer syn it was
layde here there neuer entred any erthely man but
only you ; Croysant who slepeth without is a valiaunt ⁸
knight, & ful of ⁴all⁴ trowth / wherfore, yf ye wyll know
to whom this treasure parteyneth / I shall shewe you
y^e maner how ye may know it / beholde yonder hepe of
golde / go & take therof .iii. besantes / & put them in ¹²
to your purse / than returne into your palais & ⁵make
a crye through⁵ rome *that* al pore men com to your
court, & *that* to ech of them ye shall⁶ gyue a floryn⁷ of
golde. Whan Croisant shall here that he shal⁶ not be ¹⁶
behynde / but he wyl come amonge other to take that
almes / & than y^e thre besantes *that* shal be in your
purse, take & cast ⁸them on the erth / one in one
place / & a[no]⁹ther in another place / wheare as y^e ²⁰
pe[ople] must pas to com to receyue your [almes], than
Croisant shall come the same [way] & fynde the thre
besantes, the whic[h by] reason of his noblenes &
bounte he will come & brynge them to you a[gain], ²⁴
therby ye shall know *that* y^e treasu[re that] is here
assembled¹⁰ parteyneth to hi[m, and] ought to be his /
than gyue him your [faire] doughter in mariage / &
than ⁴bryn[ge him] hyther / & than⁴ ye shal se that he ²⁸
ma[y take] of this treasure at his pleasure / fo[r it is]
all his / no man shall say the contra[rie, and] doynge
thus as we haue sayd / ye s[hall] haue parte of this
treasure.'


¹ and. ² that time. ³ one. ⁴⁻⁴ omitted.

⁵⁻⁵ cause to be proclaimed throughout. ⁶ will.

⁷ Florent. ⁸ Fol. clxxxii. col. 1.

⁹ leaf torn [] from 1601 ed. ¹⁰ before you.

¶ Howe the two knyghtes th[at] kept this
treasure spake with the emperour Guymart,
& shewed him the maner howe he shulde
4 know Croisant. And of the meruaile that
Croisant had whan he a woke & sawe the
mete & drinke by him. Capitulo .C.lxxxxi.

8  Han the emperour had wel herde the
two knyghtes he went to the hepe of
golde & toke the thre besantes, &
[dyd]¹ put them in² his purs / ³than
he toke⁴ leaue of the two knyghtes &

The emperor
takes the three
besants and
returns to the
palace.

12 departed, ⁵whan he was issued out / he loked behynd
him / than⁶ he saw the dore fast closed / wherof he
had great meruaile / & founde Croysant styll slepyng /
& so he past by, & wold not a wake him / & than he
16 went to his palaies; & then his lordes demaunded
of him where he had ben that he taried so longe, but
he wolde not shew them any thyng of y^e matter /
than he⁵ went to dyner, & was ⁶[richly serued; and
20 then Croissant / who lay and slept in the old Pallaice /
suddenly awoake, and had great maruaile of the furred
Mantle that he found vpon him / and he saw also
lying by him a Napkin, and therin wrapped good
24 white bread, Capon, roasted Fesant, & Partridge, and
therby he saw lying a great bottel full of wine, and
when he saw this good cheere, he thanked god of that
adventure. Then he did eate of the meate, and dranke
28 of the wine at his pleasure; and when he had well
eaten and drunke, he departed from thence, and left the
rest behind him, and tooke nothing with him: and
also he left the furred Mantlo, for he durst not weare
32 it, but sayd to himselfe, that he had no right thereto,

Croissant awakes
and marvels at
the wine and meat
at his side.

¹ All in [] from 1601 ed. *omitted*. ² to. ³ and.
⁴ his. ⁵ the emperour. ⁶ Fol. clxxxxii. col. 2.

because it was a thing that was none of his, and so he went downe through the streets of the Towne.

¶ The prooffe that the emperour Guymart made to know Croisant, vnto whome he gaue his Doughter in mariage, and deliuered] h[im all his Signiorie and Inheritance,] whe[reof great ioye was made at] Rom[e]. Ch. CLXXXII. [C.lxxxxii.] 8



The emperor proclaims that he will give every poor man in the city a florin of gold.

Croissant resolves to take his share of the alms.

The king throws the three besants in three different places about the road by which the poor men come to the palace, but they pass them by.

[Hen the emperor was risen from dinner, he called to him Foure of his seruants, to whome he gaue in charge that they should cause to be proclaimed in 12 euerie Streete] of the towne [that all pore men that would] come to themp[erour, should haue in almes] eueryman a Fl[orent of gold of the value] of .x. sous / the w[hich crie was made] in euery 16 strete & ma[rket place in Rome, where]by ¹all the¹ pore m[en drew to wardes the Pallaice.] Whan this crye wa[s made Croissant heard] it, whearof he was [ioyfull, and said howe] hee would goe thider [among 20 others to ha]ue the emperours almes, ²wherewith hee thought hee would pay his host, and then in haste he went thether. The Emperour, who was there readie / thought to see & prooue whether the two Knights 24 sayings were true or not, & so drew out of his purse the Three Besans of gould, the which he did cast in diuers places, in the way as the pore men shuld come to the Pallaice, but many poore men passed ouer them, and 28 perceiued them not: & then Croissant came amonge others, & he saw among the mens feet one Besan of gould faire and bright, and he stouped downe and tooke it vp, and then he went forth, & within a little 32

1—1 euerie.

² Fol. clxxxxii. back, col. 1.

- while after he found the second Besan, the which also he tooke vp, and a little further among the mens feete he espyed the Third Besan, the which also hee tooke vp ;
- 4 then hee thought within himselfe, and sayd, 'Alas, what a Caitiffe am I? if these had beene siluer, they had been mine, but they are fine gould, wherfore I am beguiled, for they appertaine to the Emperour Guymart,
- 8 who holdeth this Empire ; [I] haue no right to kepe them, because they belong not to mee, therefore I wyll [render them to the emperour, vnto w]home [they doe appertaine.' then hee came to] the Em[perour,
- 12 & sayd, 'Sir, I haue fou]nde by y^e [way as I came to your Pallaice] .iii. besans [of gould, the which here I] delyuer to [you, for of right and reason they apper- ta]lyne vnto you, [bicause of the right and title that you]
- 16 haue to the [Empire, but if the hadde beene] syluer I mi[ght haue kept them as mi]ne owne without blame.' [When the right noble Em]perour vnder[stood him, he beheld hi]m, & syghynge he [sayd, 'Freend, you are
- 20 wel]come / the bounte, [noblenesse, and wisdom]e that is in you / [shall ayd you to com]e to y^e place wheare[of in reason you ought to] be / for the goodnes [and troth that I h]aue sene in you I wyl [giue you my]
- 24 doughter in mariage, ¹[wh]om² ye shall take³ to your wyfe, & ther [with] I shall yeld you the crowne imperial [of the noble] empyre of Rome / y^e which of right ⁴'you parteyneth.'⁴ When⁵ Croissant⁶ vnder[stood] the
- 28 emperour he was right ioyfull, [and kne]lled downe to the erth in the presence [of all] the lordes that were there present, [thank]ynge him of y^e honoure *that* he offred [him. The] emperour, who was a noble⁷ wyse
- 32 [Prince,] toke him vp by the hande and led [him in] to a chambre, whearin he caused a [bathi]nge to be

Croissant comes and picks up the three besants.

He brings them to the emperor.

The emperor receives him kindly, and offers

him his daughter in marriage.

¹ Fol. clxxxii. back, col. 2. ² I loue entirely and.

³ her. ⁴⁻⁴ appertaineth to you. ⁵ the noble.

⁶ had well heard and. ⁷ and a.


He gives Croissant rich apparel.

His fair daughter is brought to Croissant.

prepared, whearin Crois[ant was] bayned.¹ Than the
emperour [brou]ght him such apparel as was met for
[him] to haue. Whan he² was thus richely [app]arelled /
a fayrer nor a better made³ [ma]n coude not be founde ⁴
in a⁴ xviii real[mes] crystened / whearof kyng⁵ Guymart
[had] great ioye, and said⁶ that in all his lyfe he neuer
saw a more goodlyer prince / ⁷he was great amonge
other men, & wel furnysshed of al his membres; he ⁸
was byg & large in his shulders / ⁹the skyn whyte
enewed⁹ with reed / his heere lyke gold wyre, ¹⁰his face
streyt with a large forheed / his eyen gray, ¹¹his nose
well made / longe armes / & byg / handes, fayre & ¹²
streyt legges¹⁰ / ¹³his fete well proporcioned and made /
kyng⁵ Guymart coude not be satsfyed with¹¹ regardyng
of him / ¹²he lede him into the palais wheare as his
lordes were, who greatly¹³ praysed him, and said eche to ¹⁶
other / ¹⁴that they had neuer sene¹⁴ so goodly a prynce /
nor better¹⁵ fourmed of his membres / than the kyng⁵
sent for his doughter by two great lordes / ¹⁸they wente
to her chambre for her / ¹⁶she came into y^e palais to y^e ²⁰
kyng⁵ her father, richely accompanied with ladyes
& damselles / of their apparel I wyl make no longe
rehersall / for it was as riche as might be, & she was so
fayre / that god and nature coude not amende her / ²⁴
nor¹⁷ no Painter in the world, though he were neuer so
skilfull, could not paint y^e fashion nor proportion of
her beautifull bodie, and all that were there present,
both young and old, sayd that they neuer sawe nor ²⁸
heard report of so faire a copple of Creatures as the
noble Croissant and this Ladie were, for euerie man
thought that they were made for nothing else but
to cause men to behould them and their beautie. ³²

¹ bathed and. ² Croissant. ³ fourmed. ⁴ omitted.
⁵ the Emperor. ⁶ how. ⁷ for. ⁸ and. ⁹ mingled.
¹⁰ his Legs before fayre. ¹¹ the. ¹² and then.
¹³ lauded and. ¹⁴ before. ¹⁵ made nor. ¹⁶ then.
¹⁷ from 1601 ed. The page in the earlier ed. is torn away.

¶ Howe the Emperour Guymart promised
Croissant that within three days he should
haue his Daughter in mariage; And how
4 the Emperour Guymart led Croissant to
the olde Pallaice, and shewed him the great
Treasure that the two Knightes kept for
him.
Ch. clxxx[x]iiij.

8  Hen the Emperour Guymart sawe his
Daughter come, hee toke her by the
hand, and sayd, 'My right deere
Daughter, I haue found for you a
12 Husband, to whome I haue giuen you,
and you may well say that a fairer man nor a hardyer
Knight you neuer sawe before, and that is the noble
Croissant, vnto whom this Empire appertaineth by
16 rightfull enheritance, and he is Son to the noble
Emperour Ide, who hath giuen this Empire to his son
Croissant, but when he was of no great age he departed
from this Cittie with a small companie, and went
20 to serue in strang countreys, and when the Lords
of this countrey saw that they were without a Lord,
they sent for me into Puille, and so they made mee
heere Emperour wrongfully and without reason; but
24 nowe since that Croissant the rightfull Inheritour is
returned; for to discharge my soule towards God,
I shall put into his hands al his Empire, without
keeping from him any part thereof, for as for me I am
28 rich and puissant ynough; and therefore, Croissant, if
it be your pleasure, you shall haue my Daughter in
mariage.' 'Sir,' (quoth Croissant) 'if it be her plea-
sure I will not refuse her, for I neuer sawe a fairer nor
32 none that I had rather to haue.' When the faire
Damsell vnderstood Croissant shee was right ioyfull,
and she beheld Croissant, who seemed to her so faire

The emperor in-
forms his daugh-
ter of Croissant's
return, and how
he intends to
restore to him his
empire.

The daughter
loves Croissant.

that her loue was enflamed vpon him, for the more she beheld him, the more she loued him / and she thought it long vntill the matter was made perfect; then she sayd to the Kinge her Father, 'Sir, then it is your will 4 and pleasure that I shall haue Croissant in marriage, you may commaund mee as it please you, it were a folly for mee to make refuse; and, Sir, I require you to let vs be married shortly, for if I haue not him I 8 renounce all marriage for euer, for there is none other that euer shall set the Ring on my finger, but onely Croissant.' When the King vnderstoode his Daughter hee laughed hartely, and sayd, 'Deere Daughter, thinke 12 not the contrarie, but that you shall haue him to your Husband.' then the King sent for a Bishophe, who assured them together, whereof the Damsell was so ioyful that she wist not what to doo, and priuely she 16 thanked our Lorde god: and if she loued him well, Croissant loued her as well, and both of them desired for the day that they might come together in wedlocke.

Three days later
the wedding takes
place.

When Three dayes were passed, and that the 20 prouission was made readie for the wedding, then King Guymart made them to sweare each to other, and especially he made Croissant to promise that on the Third day hee should take his Daughter in marriage, 24 the which Croissant promised, and sware so to doe: then the King tooke Croissant by the hand, and ledde him to the old Pallaice, to prooue if the Treasure that was there might be had away by Croissant, as the two 28 Knightes had shewed him; and then they two alone came to the ould Pallaice; when they were come thether the King sayd, 'Faire Sonne, I loue you well, and also you ought to beare me your loue, since 32 you shall haue my Daughter in marriage, and because I haue great affiance in you, I shall shew you what I thinke to say, and that which lyeth in my heart; it is of troth, that about foure dayes passed, as I came from 36

seruice, I stooode and leaned out at a window in my
Pallaice, and I beheld this same place where as we be
now, and where I saw you lye asleepe, repleat with
4 famine and pouertie, I tooke of yqu great pitie, and I
brought to you bread and drinke, and did sette it by
you, and I couered you with a furred mantle, and so I
let you lye still, for I would not awake you, and as I
8 returned from you, I sawe a dore open of this Chamber,
the which you see now closed, out of the which I sawe
a great light yssue; then I went thether and entred
into the Chamber, and there I sawe so great Treasure,
12 *that* I neuer saw none such in all my life: there was a
rich Image of gould, the which I thought to haue taken
and borne with me, and as I had it in my handes, two
knightes well armed came foorth, whereof I was
16 afraide; then they sayd vnto me, that I should not be
so hardy as to touch the Image nor no part of the
Treasure that I saw there, for they sayd that it did not
appertaine to me, and if I did the contrarie I should
20 repent it, and they sayd incontinent they would slay
me: then I demaunded to whome that Treasure did
belong. Then they sayd that it did belong vnto
Croissant, who lay heere without a sleepe, and they
24 commaunded me to take three Besans of gould to
prooue thereby to whome the Treasure should apper-
taine, and then they aduised me to make a Dole
to poore men / and that I shold cast down the Besans
28 vppon the earth whereas the poore men shoulde passe
by, and he that found them and brought them to me,
this Treasure should appertaine to him, wherefore,
I pray you, let vs go thether to know the troth.' 'Sir,'
32 (quoth Croissant). 'I pray you let vs goe thether.'

The emperor tells
Croissant of the
treasure in the
old palace.

When they came there they found the dore closed,
and then Croissant knocked thereat, and sayd, 'Ye
Sirs, that be within, I pray you in the name of God to
36 open this dore.' incontinent the dore opened, and

They enter the treasure-chamber, and find the two knights guarding it.

They tell Croissant that Oberon placed the treasure here for him 500 years since.

He thanks the knights,

who bid him be liberal and pitiful to the poor.

They vanish suddenly.

there they found the two Knightes with their swords in their hands. Then Guymart and Croissant entred into the Chamber, and the two Knightes came to Croissant, & made him great cheere, and sayd, 'Croissant, your great Prowesse and Noblenes is greatly to be praised, we haue been a longe time heere sette to kepe for you this Treasure that you see heere, for it is Fiu Hundred yeeres since that we were set heere by King 8 Oberon to keepe this Treasure for you, and hee shewed vs that it appertained to you, and neuer since it was touched by any man, but onely by King Guymart, whome / to the intent to ayd and succour you / wee 12 had him take three Besans of gould, and shewed him that this Treasure appertained neither to King nor Emperour, but alonely to you, which is so great that no man liuing can esteeme it / you may take it & beare 16 it away, or giue it whereas it shall please you, and whatsoeuer you take from it, all your life it shall not diminish nor decrease.' When Croissant vnderstood them, hee was ioyfull, and thanked the Knightes in 20 that they hadde so longe kept his Treasure; then they tooke leaue of Croissant, and embraced him, and sayd, 'Sir, we require you to bee courteous and liberall, and pitifull to the poore, and loue well all noble and wise 24 men, and giue to them largely, and be good and true to your Father in law, King Guymart, for he is a noble and a wise Prince; you ought to thanke him, & to loue him aboue all other men liuing.' Then Croissant thanked 28 them of their good aduertisement, and then they tooke their leaue, and so departed sodenly, that neither Croissant nor Guymart wist not where they were become, whereof they were abasshed, and made on 32 them the signe of the crosse; then they looked about the Chamber and saw the Treasure that was there, whereof Croissant was so abasshed that he wist not what to say, for there was a great light in the Chamber 36

as though there had been Thirtie Torches lighted, by reason of the bright stones that were there. to speake of the Treasure that was in that Chamber,
 4 I cannot shewe it, for ther was so much that they were thereof abashed to behold it.

The brilliance of the treasure gives a great light in the room.

When Croissant sawe this Treasure, it was no maruaile though he was ioyfull, and thought to himselfe
 8 that he would not spare to giue to them that were worthy, & such as did serue him truely, and so hee did, for he gaue so largely that all the Citie praised him; and when they had beene there a certaine space,
 12 Croissant sayd to King Guymart, 'Sir, of this treasure I will that you haue the one halfe, & you shall haue the keys of that, and giue thereof at your pleasure.' 'Faire Sonne,' (quoth the King) 'I thanke you, all that
 16 I haue is yours, and all that you haue is mine, wee will part nothing betweene vs as longe as we liue.' Then they departed from thence, and Croissant tooke certaine of the iewels to giue to his Spouse; and then they
 20 departed out of the Chamber, & locked the dore, & tooke the key with them, and so they returned to the Pallaice right ioyfull. Then Croissant gaue to the Lady the rich iewels, who then humbly thanked
 24 him therefore.

Croissant gives generously of the treasure.

¶ Of the great Treasure that they had, and how Croissant wedded the noble damsell, daughter to King Guymart, and of the
 28 feaste there made. Ch. clxxx[x]iiii.

32 **A**fter that King *Guymart* and *Croissant* were returned to the Pallaice, the Ladie was readye apparelled, and then the two Louers were wedded together in the Chappell of the Pallaice. The great ioye and myrth

Croissant and the emperor's daughter are married.

¹ added leaf.

that was made in the Citie I omyte, they dyned, and after dynner the yong Knyghts justed, and the joye and sporte cannot be expressed, and after supper, and the dauncing was done, *Croissant* and his Ladie went 4 to bed in a riche Chamber; so faire a coupelle was neuer seene, and on the morowe the feasteinge was renewed, and continuade fiteene dayes. And longe tyme thei lyued together. So that at laste King 8 *Guymart* lay sicke in bed, and on the fourthe daye he dyede, to the great sorowe of Ladie *Katherine* his daughter, and of *Croissant*, who dearelye loude him. And after his deathe, by the consente of all the Lordes 12 of the empire, *Croissant* was crowned *Emperour*. And the Ladie *Katherine Empress*, at whos coronation was made greate feasting and ioye. *Croissant* amended and encreased the signiorie of Rome, & conquered 16 diuers Realms, as Ierusalem, And all Surrey, as more plainlye you may knowe by the Cronicle that is made of him and his.

King Guymart
dies,

and Croissant is
crowned his suc-
cessor.

Here ends the
history of Huon
of Bourdeaux.

Thus endethe the auncient, honourable, famouse, 20 and delightfule hystorie of *Huon of Bourdeaux*, one of the Peers of Fraunce, and Duke of Guyenne, and of dyuers Princes liuing in hys tyme. Translated out of frenche into English by Syr Iohn *Bourchire*, Knight, 24 Lord *Berniers*, at the requeste of the Lord *Hastings*, *Earl of Huntinton*, in the yeare of our Lorde God, one thousande fise hendrede and three score and Ten, and now newlie reuised and corrected thys present yeare, 28 1601.

FINIS.

PREFATORY NOTE.

APOLOGY for my unconscionable delay in completing this edition of Lord Berners' *Huon of Burdeuz* may be misconstrued as an impertinence. I will therefore only venture to say, that since I undertook the work and produced the first part early in 1883, my time has been more fully occupied than I could have then anticipated, and that my leisure has of late years grown very limited. I trust, however, that this concluding portion of my labour will not seem unsatisfactory to those who were good enough to express approval of my earlier efforts.

My best thanks are due to Mr. W. A. Clouston for the interesting and valuable notes which he has supplied on the magical episodes in the Romance.

SIDNEY L. LEE.

APPENDIX.

- I. *Lord Berners and Euphuism*, p. 785.
- II. *Lord Berners' work on Calais*, p. 789.
- III. *The Hamilton MS. of Huon*, p. 789.
- IV. *Contemporary Criticism of Huon*, p. 790.
- V. *The Bibliography of Lord Berners' Huon*, p. 791.
- VI. *The 1601 Revision of Lord Berners' English*, p. 791.
- VII. *A table of the magical incidents in the romance, with notes*, p. 798.
- VIII. *Index Locorum, with a note on the romance's geography*, p. 811.
- IX. *Index Nominum*,¹ p. 815.
- X. *Glossary*, p. 839.

I. LORD BERNERS AND EUPHUISM.²

It has been recently proved that English Euphuism is a Spanish product,—an imitation of the style of Antonio de Guevara, a Spanish writer of the early part of the sixteenth century. John Lyly, the author of *Euphues*, has been deprived of the honour, long assigned him, of having invented 'a new English.'³ The leading characteristics of his manner of writing are undoubtedly borrowed from Sir Thomas North's translation of Guevara's popular book, *Libro del Emperador Marco Aurelio con el Relox de Principes*.⁴ North's version appeared under the title of the *Dial of Princes*, in 1557, with a dedication to Queen Mary: it was republished in 1568, 'newly reuised and corrected, and reformed of faultes escaped in the first edition.' Lyly's indebtedness to North has been fully illustrated elsewhere,⁵ but it is important to note here that North himself was anticipated by Lord Berners in his endeavour to introduce Guevara's style and

¹ The editorial matter is fully indexed here.

² See Introduction, p. xlvii.

³ In 1632 Edward Blount, when issuing Lyly's *Six Court Comedies*, writes of the author in an address 'to the Reader':—'Our Nation are in his debt, for a new English which hee taught them. *Euphues* and his England [i. e. Lyly's book] began first that language.'

⁴ It is worth noting that all the English translations from Guevara were made through the French.

⁵ See *Euphuismus*, by Dr. Landmann, Giessen, 1881; *Shakspeare and Euphuism*, by Dr. Landmann, in New Shakspeare Soc.'s Transactions, 1884.

his best known work to English readers. Doubts were fully expressed at the time of the first publication of North's translation, as to his right to claim the glory of having discovered Guevara, or even of having done any part of the work of translation himself. The charges were in part justified.¹ Lord Berners and Lord Berners' nephew, Sir Francis Bryan,—the first Englishmen to present their countrymen with Guevara's writings in English versions,—did more for Guevara's fame and influence in England than Sir Thomas North. And their labours were at the service of the public many years before North attempted authorship.

'At Calais ye tenth daie of Marche in the yere of the reigne of our soueraygne lorde King Henry the .VIII. xxiiii' (*i. e.* 1533), Lord Berners completed, according to the colophon of the first published edition of 1534, his translation of Guevara's *Marke Aurelie Emperour*, otherwise called the *Golden Boke*. The Spanish original bore the title *Libro Aureo de Marco Aurelio Emperador y Eloquentissimo Orador*, and it was an expanded version of the same work that Sir Thomas North anglicized three-and-twenty years later. Both versions are identical in style and almost identical in subject matter; and a comparison of the two translations shows that Lord Berners writing in 1533 (and not North writing in 1557) is the true parent of Euphuism or Guevarism in England.

I print side by side Berners' and North's versions of the prologue of the *Golden Boke*. Lord Berners' sentences are Euphuistic beyond all question; they are characterized by the forced antitheses, the alliteration, and the far-fetched illustrations from natural phenomena, characteristic of Lyly and his successors.² The subject is the destructive and productive powers of Time:—

¹ To the second edition of the *Dial of Princes* North added a fourth book, which he had previously omitted, and 'certain letters [of Guevara] written by Marcus Aurelius, selected out of the Spanishe copie, not wrytten in the Frenche tongue.' In 'the *Epistle to the Reader*,' which prefaces these appendices, North writes under date 10th May, 1568: 'What detracting tongues report of mee & my first trauell in the translation of this *Dyall*, enlarging them at pleasure to woork my defame, disabling my dooing heerein, by brute yt was no woork of myne, but the fruit of others labor: I neede not much force, since by dayly proof wee see that yll disposed mynds can neuer frame an honest tongue in head.'

² These results have been previously made public in a letter contributed to

BERNERS.

'There is nothyng so entier, but it deminisheth; nor nothyng so hole, but that is wery; nor nothyng so strong, but that it breaketh; nor nothyng so well kept, but that it corrupteth. . . . The frutes in the spryngyng tyme haue not the vertue to gyue sustenavnce, nor perfyte swetenesse to satisfie the taste of them that eateth thereof: but thanne passeth the season of sommer and haruest comethe, whiche tyme doth better rype them, and thanne that that we do eate, dothe profyte us, the *profe* thereof is ryghte sauerynesse, and gyueth the more force and vertue, and the greater is the taste.'

NORTH.

'There is nothing so entyer but may be diminished: nothyng so healthful but may be diseased: nothing so strong, but may be broken: neyther anything so wel kept, but may be corrupted. . . . The fruits of the spring time haue no force to giue sustenance, nor perfait sweteness to giue any sauour, but after that the sommer is past and haruest commeth, they rype and then all that we eate nourisheth more and gyueth a better tast.'

The popularity of Lord Berners' translation, of which nine editions are known to have been published between 1534 and 1560, and five between 1560 and 1588, is a remarkable indication of the favour bestowed on Euphuistic style in England before the time of North or Lyly.

But more can be proved in the same direction. The translator's prologue to Lord Berners' *Froissart*, written in 1524, and that to be found in other of his works, show him to have come under Guevara's or a similar influence before he translated the *Golden Boke*. In the following abbreviated extracts from the prologue to *Froissart* the parallelism of the sentences, the repetition of the same thought differently expressed, the rhetorical question, the accumulation of synonyms, the classical references are irrefutable witnesses to the presence of well-developed Euphuism. Berners is writing of the advantages of history:—

the *Athenæum*, for 18th August, 1883. To make the parallel more effective, the following extracts from Lyly's *Euphues*, in which the form of the sentences is almost identical with those in the two passages printed above, should be read with them:—'There is nothing lyghter than a feather, yet is it sette a loft in a woemann's hatte: nothing sligher then haire, yet is it most frised in a Ladies head, so that I am in good hope, though there be nothing of lesse accounte then *Euphues*, yet he shal be marked with Ladies eyes, & lyked sometimes in their cares' (p. 221); or, 'There is nothing more swifter than time, nothing more sweeter: wee haue not as *Seneca* saith little time to liue but we leese muche, neither haue we a short life by Nature, but we make it shorter by naughtynesse' (p. 152).

‘Ones the continuall redyng thereof maketh yonge men equal in prudence to olde men ; and to olde fathers stryken in age, it mynys-treth experience of thinges. More it yeldeth priuate persons worthy of dignyte, rule and gouernaunce : it compelleth the emperours, hygh rulers, and gouernours to do noble dedes, to thende they may optayne immortall glory : it exciteth, moueth and stereth the strong, hardy warriours for the great laude that they haue after they ben deed promptly to go in hande with great and harde paretels in defence of their countre : it prohybyteth reprouable persons to do mischeuous dedes. . . . What moued the strong and ferse Hercules to enterpryse in his lyfe so many great incomparable labours and parylls ? . . . In semblable wyse dyd his imitator, noble dyke Theseus and many other. . . . What knowledge should we haue of auneynt thinges past, and historie were not, whiche is the testimony thereof, the lyght of trouthe, the maystres of the lyfe humayne, the presydent of remembraunce and the messanger of antiquite ? Why moued and stered Phaleryus, the kynge of Phtholome oft and delygently to rede bokes ? Forsothe for none other cause but that . . .’

Nor was Lord Berners the only author who fell under Euphuistic influences at this early date. His sister Margaret was the mother of Sir Francis Bryan, one of Henry VIII's favourites, and a lover of literature, who was influenced by his uncle's literary tastes.¹ The first edition of Berners' *Golden Boke of Marcus Aurelius* was published posthumously. The colophon states the translation to have been undertaken 'at the instaunt desire of his [Berners'] neuewe Sir Frauncis Bryan knyghte,' and to Sir Francis its posthumous publication was avowedly due. At the close of Berners' *Golden Boke* is a passage applauding the 'swete style' of 'the sentences of this booke,' which is an 'envoy' in praise of Guevarism almost certainly from Sir Francis' pen. Bryan's admiration of Guevara is further shown by his own translation of another of Guevara's works in 1548. The English title runs:—*A Dispraise of the Life of a Courtier in Commendacion of the Life of a Labouryng Man*. London (by T. Berthelet), August 1548. Bryan must therefore be placed beside his uncle as one of the progenitors of English Euphuism. And Lord Berners must be held responsible for the direction of his nephew's literary tastes.²

¹ See the article on Bryan in the *Dictionary of National Biog.*

² It may, perhaps, be not deemed altogether impertinent if I note here the chief editions of English translations of Guevara's works published before the issue of Lyly's *Euphues* in 1579:—

II. LORD BERNERS' WORK ON CALAIS.

On p. xlv of the Introduction I state, on the authority of Anthony à Wood, that Lord Berners was the author of a tract on *The duties of the inhabitants of Calais*. At the time of writing I was not aware that this work was still extant, but I now find that Mr. J. G. Nichols, in his edition of *The Chronicle of Calais*, published by the Camden Society in 1846, had identified it with a copy of *Ordenances for Watch and Ward of Calais*, printed by him from the British Museum (MS. Cotton. Faust. E. vii, 89—102b). The tract is of no literary interest, but it gives a valuable account of the police regulations enforced in Calais while under English rule.

III. THE HAMILTON MS. OF *HUON*.

On p. xxxv I state, on the authority of the *Athenæum*, that the Hamilton collection of MSS. included an illuminated copy of the French poetical romance of *Huon of Burdeux*.

-
- | | | |
|------|---|--|
| 1584 | } | <i>The Golden Boke of Mark Aurelie</i> , by Lord Berners. |
| 1535 | | |
| 1537 | | |
| 1542 | | |
| 1546 | | |
| 1548 | | <i>The Dispraise of the Life of a Courtier</i> , by Sir Francis Bryan. |
| 1554 | | <i>The Golden Boke of Mark Aurelie</i> , by Lord Berners. |
| 1557 | | <i>The Dial of Princes</i> , by Sir Thomas North. |
| 1560 | | <i>The Golden Boke</i> , by Lord Berners. |
| 1568 | | <i>The Dial of Princes</i> , 2nd edit., by Sir Thomas North. |
| 1574 | | <i>The Familiar Epistles of Sir Anthony of Guevara</i> , by Edward Hellowes. |
| 1575 | | <i>A Looking Glasse for the Courte</i> , composed in the Castillian tongue, by the Lorde Anthony of Guevarra, Bishop of Mondiment out of Castilion drawne into French by Anthony Alaygre, and out of the Frenche tongue into English, by Sir Francis Bryan, Knight . . . —a second edition of <i>The Dispraise of the Life of a Courtier</i> , edited by T. Tymme, minister. |
| 1577 | | <i>The Familiar Epistles of Sir Anthony of Guevara</i> , by Edward Hellowes (2nd edit.). |
| 1577 | | <i>A Chronicle conteynynge the Lives of tenne Emperours of Rome</i> , compiled by the most famous Syr Anthonie of Guevara, by Edward Hellowes. Dedicated to Queen Elizabeth. |
| 1577 | | <i>Golden Epistles</i> : gathered as well out of the remaynder of Guevara's woorks as other Authours, Latin, French, and Italian, by Geoffrey Fenton. |
| 1578 | | <i>A booke of the Invention of the Art of Navigation</i> . . compiled by the famous Sir Anthonie of Guevara, by Edward Hellowes. Dedicated to Lord Howard of Effingham. |

At the time of writing, the sale of these MSS. to the German Government had just been completed ; but although they had arrived in Berlin, the authorities there had not had time to examine them. Herr Tobler has since examined the romances included in the MSS. ; and has published an account of the Huon MS. in the transactions of the Akademie der Wissenschaften zu Berlin. It there appears that the MS. is a version of the *chanson de geste* of Huon d'Auvergne, and has no concern whatever with *Huon of Bordeaux*.

IV. CONTEMPORARY CRITICISM OF HUON.

To the instances given above on pp. xlviii and xlix should be added the very uncomplimentary notice of 'Huon' in 'The Epistle to the Reader,' prefixed by Thomas Bowes to the second of his 'French Academie' (1594)—a translation from the French of Primaudaye. After denouncing dramatists as atheists, Bowes proceeds :—

'It were too long to set downe the Catalogue of those lewde and lascivious bookes which haue mustered themselues of late yeeres in Paules Churchyard, as chosen souldiers ready to fight vnder the diuels banner, of which it may bee truly said, that they prevaile no lesse (if not more) to the vpholding of Atheisme in this light of the Gospel, then the Legend of Lies, *Huon of Burdeaux*, King Arthur, with the rest of that rabble, were of force to maintaine Popery in the dayes of ignorance.'

The passage from Gervase Markham's *Health to the Gentlemanly Profession of Serving Men* (1578), in which reference is made to *Huon of Burdeaux*, may be worth giving in full (cf. p. xlix and p. 370). Markham is referring to the baneful attractions which gold has for mankind. He adds :—

'But the Deuill (in my iudgement), the authour, roote, and originall of all mischiefe and miserie hath infused into this mettall some peece of Adamant, and into man's desire and affection some lump of Iron ; which Adamant, according to his nature, drawing the Iron vnto it, linketh them selues together in undesolveable bondes, not much vnyke the Castle of Adamant, feigned in the historie of *Hughon of Burdeaux*, which Castle having drawne the sayd Hughon vnto it, all hope of departure thence was quite extinguished, onely except he coulde escape and be thence delyuered by an extraordinarie and imminent danger : which was to be carried ouer the sea in the clawes of a Griffine, whose desire was to deuoure

him, and that was one danger ; and in great hazard in regarde of his wayghte to fall from the sayd Griffine into the ocean and so be drowned, and that was another danger ; which dangers as they were great and perilous, so I holde them perils no lesse dangerous and as hard for them to be separated and deliuered from this pernicious Adamant Castle that hath linked and chained them selues unto it by their extraordinarie couetowse desire of this worldly Mammon.'

V. THE BIBLIOGRAPHY OF LORD BERNERS' *HUON*.¹

On 1 Feb. 1638-9 Master Purfoot assigned to Master Thomas Wright all his interest in *Huon of Burdeaux*, and in *The History of Valentine and Orson* (Arber's Transcript of the Stationers' Registers, iv. 45).

VI. THE 1601 REVISION OF LORD BERNERS' ENGLISH.

Nearly seventy years after the romance of *Huon* was translated by Lord Berners into the English of his generation, the publisher of a third edition (1601) entered on his title-page that 'the rude English' was 'corrected and amended.'² The first paragraph is completely recast in the Elizabethan version, and shows that the reviser at first contemplated rewriting the romance in a pompous Euphuistic style. 'In the tyme accountyde the yere of grace' becomes 'In the time by computation called ye yeere of grace ;' 'Charles the Grete, namyd Charlemayn' becomes 'Charles the Great, more vulgarly knowen by the name of Charlemaine ;' and the last sentence of the paragraph is transformed thus :—

c. 1533.

'The renoume of hym & of hys noble valiaunt chivalry strechyd out of ye east into the west in such wyse that for euer there shalbe made of hym perpetuall memory, as here after ye shall here.'

1601.

'But let it suffice, God was their guide, Religion the cause, Honour the object, & perpetuall Fame the reward, which both led him & his traine to these worthy attempts, & still brought them backe with the due to theyr valorous enterprises ; extending both his & their renowne to all parts of the world, & registering their names in the kalender of neuer dying memorie.'

¹ See page lvii.

² See p. lvi, *sup*.

On pp. 6-7 another long passage is completely transformed, but, unlike the opening paragraph, the revised language is studiously made simple and straightforward.

This sweeping style of revision was, however, rapidly abandoned. In the rest of the book the revision affected every page, but the method proved that it was merely undertaken by a rapid reader—probably a printer's reader—mainly with a view to removing the obvious archaisms. Old words, liable to puzzle the pleasure-seeking public, to whom romances appealed, were replaced by modern words; the Gallicized English, in which Lord Berners, an accomplished French scholar, not infrequently indulged, was completely anglicized; the punctuation and spelling were occasionally made to conform to more modern rules; now and then an old-fashioned construction was altogether reformed; in very rare cases the sentence was rewritten. The alterations were not made with sufficient system to satisfy all the requirements of scientific philology, but they exhibit in a practical fashion the notions of an every-day Elizabethan as to the characteristic differences between his own written language and that of his grandfather.

Of purely grammatical changes made on archaic grounds, those affecting inflections are not very numerous. The plural forms *eyen* (p. 13) and *yere* (p. 29) are replaced by *eyes* and *yeares*. The pronoun *ye* disappears in favour of *you*, and the forms *tho* (p. 193) and *moo* (p. 36) become *those* and *more*. In the case of verbs, such strong forms of the past tense as *bet* (p. 86) and *clame* (p. 683) are softened into *did beat* and *did clime* (climb). The old ending of past tenses and participles in *-yde* or *-yd* (apealyde, baynyd, deuyseyd, etc.) is modernized into *-ed*. *Quod* (p. 21) becomes *quoth*, and the participial termination of *-en* in *bresten* (p. 69) is abandoned. The termination *-eth* or *-yth* in third person plural of present tenses is not uncommon in Lord Berners. Thus he writes, '*These thynges hath*' (p. 9), and '*I se them aproche that desyryth my deth*' (p. 26). In the Elizabethan version these phrases become '*These thynges have*,' and '*I se them aproche that desire my death*.'

Changes of construction are rarely made in the 1601 revision. But the double negative did not approve itself to the reviser, and he

usually removes one of the negative particles. Thus 'none other shall have *no* profyght' (p. 13) becomes 'none other shall have *any* honour;' and '*nor neuer none* of hys lynage gaue as yette very good counsell' (p. 12) becomes '*nor euer any* of his lynage,' etc. A few of Lord Berners' favourite constructions are loose adaptations from the French, and these are as a rule removed. In Lord Berners' phrase '[they] *coude* them great thanke' (p. 499) the reviser reads *gave* for *coude*, thus conforming to modern usage. This is a favourite phrase with Lord Berners (cp. 'I *can* you grete thanke,' p. 5). The French original has '[*Je*] *bon gré vous scay*,' and Lord Berners slavishly reproduces the phrase, translating *savoir* by *can* [O.E. *can*, *cunnan* = *ken*, *know*]. In Berners' *Froisart* the expression is more frequently employed. Cotgrave, like the reviser, does not recognize it. Under *sçavoir* he translates '*savoir bon gré à . . .*' by 'to *give* thanks unto . . .'

The rejection of archaic words is the most valuable part of the reviser's labour. So far as connecting particles and non-substantive words are concerned, the enumeration is necessarily brief, but each of them is important. Thus *or* in the sense of *before* is invariably rejected for *ere* or *before*. The enclitic *as*, which Lord Berners was in the habit of occasionally adding to *there* and *then*, and almost invariably to *where*, is always dropped. *Than* for *then* is never accepted, and the forms *syn* (p. 199), *seen*, or *sin* are not allowed to do duty for *since*. *Towards* or *toward* is in Lord Berners' language used as two separate words, and the word governed by it is very often inserted after *to*. Thus we meet with *to her warde* (p. 254), *to us warde* (p. 295), *to the host warde* (p. 328), *to ye galowes warde* (p. 328), *to the tre warde*; but all these in the Elizabethan version are transformed into *toward her*, *towarde us*, *towards the Hooste*, *toward the gallowes*, and *towards the tre*. *Clene* for *wholly*, as in *clene armyd* (p. 197), is replaced by *all*. The *which* figures perpetually in the old version, and the article is rejected in the new (cp. p. 16). *What* is not allowed to stand for *why* (p. 33), and the excessive employment of *that* to the exclusion of *which*, and with vague reference not to the preceding word, but to long clauses, is avoided by the Elizabethan. The awkwardness of the repetition of *then*,

used merely as a connecting particle—a common feature of all early English prose—is met by its omission or by the substitution of *and*. With regard to auxiliary verbs, it should be noted that *a*, the attenuated form of *have* (p. 149), and *woll*, a common variant of *will* (p. 87), either of which is frequent in Lord Berners' prose, are not found in the revised version. The verb *do* is used far more loosely by Lord Berners than his successor allowed to be correct. Thus Berners writes 'They *dyd* to have Huon jugyd' (p. 22), where the reviser substitutes *laboured* for *dyd*; '[He] *dyd* of his brothers gowne' (p. 28) becomes 'he *did* take off'; in the sentence 'ye that . . . haue well herde the grete vnresonablenes that the kyng *do* too one of oure peeres,' *do* is replaced in the Elizabethan version by *offers*. Another very common verb used by Lord Berners is *ween* or *went* for *think* or *thought*. The latter in the 1601 version invariably takes the former's place. It is clear that such a phrase as 'it skeeleth not of my dethe' (p. 677) had an archaic sound to the reader of 1601, for he refashions it as 'It is no matter though I die.'

The following list contains most of the substantive words, which the Elizabethan appears to have rejected on the sole ground that they had fallen or were falling out of common use. Many of them still figured in the poetry of the day, and Shakespeare pressed some of them into his service. But the fact that the reviser of Lord Berners' text put himself to the pains of substituting for them more familiar expressions, is positive proof that they sounded in his ear rude or old-fashioned. The reader will hardly need to be warned that the substituted word is not always the best or even a correct representative of the original. A reference to the Glossary will sufficiently remove difficulties on this score.

c. 1533.			1601.	
apayred	...	p. 240	replaced by	grieved
apealyde	...	p. 22	}	"
appellyd	...	p. 31		
arson	...	p. 700		
beseen	...	p. 119	"	pommell (of a saddle)
brast	...	p. 103	"	adorned
brest	...	p. 117	"	brake
carnall	...	p. 33	"	burst
chere	...	p. 57	"	louing
clypped	...	p. 635	"	countenance
crope	...	p. 169	"	embraced
			"	back

c. 1533.				1601.
dele	...	p. 554	replaced by	whit
departed	...	p. 336	"	parted
fell	...	p. 120	"	bolde
fellest	...	p. 210	"	cruellest
fordo	...	p. 487	"	undoe
gader [<i>i. e.</i> gather]	...	p. 305	"	call
grees	...	p. 373	"	degrees
grese	...	p. 119	"	degrees
hore	...	p. 224	"	hoarie
imagenyd	...	p. 221	"	practised
impe	...	p. 12	"	trea
japery	...	p. 85	"	jest
lesynge	...	p. 37	"	loosing
leuer	...	p. 349	"	rather
meny	...	p. 499	"	oompanie
pylhynges	...	p. 401	"	killinge
refuse	...	p. 70	"	refusal
scot	...	p. 704	"	shotte
sore abashed	...	p. 359	"	greatly afraid
soppe	...	p. 38	"	drought
sparhawke	...	p. 7	"	sparrow-hawke
swounyd	...	p. 24	"	I wounded
trough	...	p. 31	"	certainte
yode	...	p. 636	"	rode
wanhope	...	p. 364	"	false hope
went	...	pp. 200, 233	"	thought
wente	...	p. 334	"	hoped

The following Gallicized words, used by Lord Berners as well as by Caxton and a few other early translators from the French, were never fairly naturalized in England. How literal Lord Berners could be on occasion, our comment on his use of 'can grete thanke' has already shown. With it may be compared such a phrase as 'escryed a hye,' by which Berners renders 'escria en haut.' Several of those words which were ejected by the Elizabethan reviser (cp. *parents*, *deuise*) had not, however, entirely dropped out of the language, but they were quickly disappearing, and clearly were not quite familiar in 1601. As in the case of the merely archaic words, the reviser's rendering is not always correct (cp. *entreated*). Reference should be made to the Glossary when the sense is not obvious.

c. 1533.				1601.
in amours with	...	p. 630	replaced by	enamoured of
assembled	...	p. 613	"	assailed
assembelyd	...	p. 659	"	assaulted
bayngned	...	p. 537	}	bathed
baynyd	...	p. 427		
bountye	...	p. 146	"	goodness

c. 1533.			1601.
brochyd (<i>broche</i>)	p. 22	replaced by	spurred
chatelyne ...	p. 493	"	captain
condute ...	p. 18	"	conducte
consent any ...	p. 27	"	give consent to
cordiner ...	p. 764	"	shoemakers
couetys ...	p. 251	}	couetousness
couytes ...	p. 320		
defend ...	p. 46	"	forbid
deuysyd ...	p. 7	"	advised
deuysinge ...	p. 13	"	communing
deuyse ...	p. 58	"	conferences
to deuys ...	p. 630	"	to sport
dispender ...	p. 738	"	spender
dyspence ...	p. 718	"	charges
dolent ...	p. 356	"	sorrowfull
dolour ...	p. 32	"	ill hap
doloure ...	p. 3	"	greefe
domage ...	p. 146	"	wrong
dystroyed ...	p. 46	"	weore impouerished
enbassed ...	p. 740	"	ambassage
enbassetours ...	p. 740	"	ambassadors
endoctryned ...	p. 576	"	educated
ensample ...	p. 12	"	example
entreated ...	p. 642	"	entertained
entreated ...	p. 657	"	threatened
escryed a hye ...	p. 185	"	cryed on hye
extorsyon ...	p. 47	"	crueltie
feloney ...	p. 696	"	villany
felony ...	p. 4	"	rashness
fersly ...	p. 23	"	boldly
fyaunsed ...	p. 686	"	wedded
glotons ...	p. 639	"	villaines
a high ...	p. 197	"	aloud
inportable ...	p. 544	"	insupportable
mastres ...	p. 696	"	mistress
messe ...	p. 216	"	service
mossell ...	p. 140	"	nostril
muryed ...	p. 650	"	immured
Noyfull ...	p. 440	"	Yrkesome
Noyfull ...	p. 579	"	too tedious
occysyon ...	p. 320	"	slaughter
oreson ...	p. 146	"	prayer
par[ent]age ...	p. 693	"	lyneage
parent ...	p. 9	"	kinsman
parentes ...	p. 2, 12	"	kindred
pastaunce ...	p. 46	"	pastime
payne ...	p. 644	"	labour
prefessyd ...	p. 34	"	pretended
purchase ...	p. 12	"	provide
purchaseth for ...	p. 13	"	seeks
purchasyd for ...	p. 216	"	practised against
rased ...	p. 145	"	torne
reculyd ...	p. 42	"	staggred

c. 1533.			1601.	
releue	...	p. 198	replaced by	recover
releuyd	...	p. 147	"	recovered
renyed	...	p. 89	"	denyed
requere	...	p. 21	"	desire
require	...	p. 264	"	request
rybaadis	...	p. 538	"	villaines
semylytude	...	pp. 41, 138	"	likelyhood
stradiot	...	p. 761	"	trauailer
Vaylable	...	p. 12	"	available
Vileny	...	p. 20	"	shame

Several misprints and puzzling misspellings were justifiably corrected by the Elizabethan, of which the following are the most notable:—

Misprints.

c. 1533.	1601.
above	p. 160 alone
aperaelyd	p. 74 appointed
aryued	p. 181 armyd
commonynge	p. 392 coming
excusyd	p. 26 accused
folye	p. 302 foyled
frusshe	p. 474 russhe
inbushyd	p. 25 ambushed

Misspellings.

c. 1533.	1601.
besynes	p. 14 businesse
herber	p. 704 harbour
impossessyons	p. 210 impositions
leaue thystorys	p. 166 leaueth the Historie
lybardes	p. 16 leopardes
portruyd	p. 412 portraiture
seasyd, i. e. ceased	p. 14 stayed
sirode	p. 359 sea roode

Not infrequently when attempting to remove a difficulty caused by misspelling he comes to grief. Thus, 'If any *plee* come therby,' which means 'if any plea or charge be brought,' the reviser reads, 'If any *hurt* come.' The French original reads *plait*. 'He shal derely abyde (*i. e.* abide) it' (p. 305) is rendered 'He shall dearly *buy* it.' 'To ordayne a bayenge,' *i. e.* a 'bayninge,' or 'bathing,' is changed into 'To ordaine a rich bed.'

A large number of changes were made like the last out of pure lightness of heart, and no philological deduction can be drawn from them. They were doubtless prompted in the first instance by the awkward spelling of the old text. Most of these changes are just such as a printer's reader might be expected to make if left to his own devices, and prove how permanent are the characteristics of these invaluable men, to whom no author ought to omit an opportunity of expressing his frequent indebtedness.

c. 1533.		1601.	c. 1533.		1601.
force	p. 152	violence	dysordynate	p. 696	inordinate
chorlysshely	p. 757	stubbornly	fell after	p. 4	afterwards en-
clerely	p. 363	evidently			sued
clerkes	p. 732	doctors	fortunyd	p. 21	happened
drams, <i>i. e.</i>			praysyd	p. 39	regarded
drachms	p. 142	ducates	rengyd, <i>i. e.</i>		
dyshordenate	p. 700	dishonorable	ranged	p. 494	arriued

It is not safe to draw any very large conclusion from the revision. But a comparison of the two versions shows that while the structure of the language had changed very slightly, about five per cent. of Lord Berners' vocabulary was judged to be out of date, nearly seventy years after his death, by a reader who made his standard of intelligibility the ordinary speech of his well-to-do contemporaries. At the same time it is noticeable, although not surprising, that the great literature of the end of the sixteenth century excluded a far smaller percentage of Lord Berners' vocabulary. Poets always have a predilection for the archaisms of language. Many words ejected by the Elizabethan reviser from Lord Berners' text are employed by Shakespeare in plays that were written about the date of the revision. The fact proves, if proof were needed, that Shakespeare freely indulged a taste for archaic expressions, and was exceptionally well read in the works of his predecessors.

VII. A TABLE OF THE MAGICAL EPISODES IN THE ROMANCE.

* * It is worth noting that the most striking of Huon's magical adventures—his shipwreck on the adamant rock, his fight with the griffin, and his journey down the subterranean river—consecutively recorded on pp. 354—386 and pp. 407—444,¹ are related in the same order, and with little difference in detail, in the popular Bavarian story of *Herzog Ernst von Baiern* (see Karl Bartsch's scholarly edition issued at Vienna in 1869, and Simrock's *Die Deutschen Volksbücher*, iii. 305—15). The prose version of the folk-tale about Duke Ernest is still well known throughout Germany. It appears in its earliest known shape in a poem (of the Lower Rhine), of which a twelfth

¹ On pp. 387—407 the story of Esclaramonde's sufferings at the siege of Bordeaux is inserted.

century MS. is extant. Arranged somewhat differently, each of Huon's magical adventures appears in one or other of the seven journeys of Sindbad the Sailor in the *Arabian Nights*. That the whole episode is of Oriental origin admits of no doubt. But two interesting questions suggest themselves. By what channel did the story reach the authors of *Huon* and of *Herzog Ernst*? Which of the two authors may claim the credit of first presenting it to European readers? Probably the Crusades produced sufficient intercourse between Europe and Asia to supply an answer to the first question. The second might be the subject of prolonged investigation, but a first survey of the evidence can point only to one result. The earliest extant manuscript of *Huon* which includes these adventures is of the fourteenth century (see p. xxxiii, *supra*). The date of the earliest *extant* manuscript of this portion of *Huon* is not, however, in itself conclusive as to the date of its composition. Nevertheless there are indications that historical events of the late thirteenth and early fourteenth centuries were known to the romancer, and we are not inclined to accept a date earlier than the fourteenth century for the later sections of the romance. The earliest version of *Herzog Ernst* has been dated two centuries earlier. Hence a strong presumption is created in favour of the theory that the author of *Huon* borrowed from the author of *Herzog Ernst*.

THE ADAMANT ROCK.

This magnetic rock, which appears in the story of *Herzog Ernst*, and in the story of Sindbad in the *Arabian Nights*, draws towards it all ships (with iron nails in them), and on Huon reaching it (p. 370) the masts of vessels which have been wrecked on it are so massed together as to present the appearance of a forest. Sir John Mandeville describes it in almost identical terms (ed. 1839, pp. 161, 163, 271). He localizes it in a Chinese sea; other writers, like the author of the *Arabian Nights*, place it somewhere between Tonquin and Cochin China.¹

The myth of the existence of a magnetic rock that drew the iron nails out of passing ships, thus causing them to go to pieces, or that bodily attracted them to it (for it is told both ways), is one of the numerous marvels of the

¹ The small-type notes are by Mr. W. A. Clouston.

'hollow-sounding and mysterious main' so universally credited in mediæval times. It had doubtless been orally current in Europe long before the date of either *Duke Ernst* or *Huon*: and while it may have been brought from the East through the Crusades, it is perhaps as likely to have been introduced through the Moors of Spain. Be this as it may, the incidents of Duke Huon's first journey to the East have an unquestionable resemblance to some of the adventures of the renowned Sindbád.

In the old French romance of the *Chevalier Berinus* there is a very curious account of the Rock of Adamant, which drew the ex-king of Blandie's five ships to it. The crews were in despair, for well they knew that when their food was all consumed a terrible, lingering death was in store for them. Presently an extremely attenuated man is observed to creep on board one of the ships, in quest of food, as it turns out, and he informs them that there is an inscription on the rock, but he had not read it. Aigres, the brave son of Berinus, goes on to the rock with the lean man, who shows him the inscription, which was to this effect: 'Whoever may touch this rock can only be freed by depositing on it all his wealth, save what may be necessary to enable him to complete his voyage: one of the crew, chosen by lot, must then go to the top of the rock and cast into the sea the ring which he will find there, when the vessel shall instantly be freed, but he must remain on the rock.' Aigres returns and acquaints them of the purport of the inscription: lots are drawn, and Aigres is the victim. After bidding his family adieu, he goes to the top of the rock, throws the ring in the sea, and all the five ships are at once set free and sail away, taking the remarkably lean man with them. The rock is infested by enchanters, but the gallant Aigres contrives to avoid their snares, until another ship is drawn to the rock, when he informs the mariners of the only means by which they can escape (for it would appear the ring returned to the top of the rock each time it was thrown into the sea). Lots are drawn, and so on, as before—an inconsistent story, if ever there was one!

The Rock of Adamant also figures in the Legend of St. Brandanus.—Is it possible that the myth had its origin in some old-world sailor's 'yarn' of an actual rock, now submerged, to which vessels were driven by a very strong current, a mishap which the unskilful navigators might ascribe to the attractive force of the rock itself? There is always a substratum of fact in legends of this kind, could it be discovered—they were not wholly invented.

THE APPLES OF YOUTH.

At the bidding of an angel Huon gathers three of these apples, each of which, when eaten by a man of eighty or a hundred years old, transforms him to a young man of thirty (p. 436). Huon bestows one of these apples on the Admiral of Tauris (p. 465), and his white hair and beard grow yellow as he eats it, and he suddenly becomes a youth of strength and beauty. The second is eaten by the abbot of Cluny, who is 114 years old, with similar results (pp. 552—5). The third rejuvenates Thierry, Emperor of Germany (p. 568).

This is essentially an Oriental idea—the counterpart of that of the Water of Immortality. In Indian story-books fruits—generally mangoes, the favourite fruit of high and low throughout Hindústán—are frequently represented as

possessing magical properties, such as curing barrenness in women, and conferring perennial youth upon whoever ate of them. We are told in the Persian Parrot-Book (*Tūt Nāma*),¹ for instance, that a Prince having obtained some fruit of the Tree of Life, which grew in a far distant land, in order to test its virtue, gave part to a decrepit old woman ('experimentum in corpore vili'), who no sooner tasted it than she became a blooming damsel of 'sweet eighteen.' With variations, the same story is found in several Indian collections, such as the *Kathā Manjarī*, and there is also a version of it in the Tamil romance entitled *Alakēsa Kathā*; in both it is a mango fruit that has this quality, and the king causes some of it to be given to an aged goldsmith who was in prison for fraud, and it turned him into a youth of sixteen years—let us trust he was then released, that he might begin life over again!

There is a rather curious story about this kind of fruit in the Indian romance entitled *Sinhasana Dvātrinsati*, or Thirty-two Tales of a Throne (and it occurs also in other collections), where a Brāhman having received from his favourite deity, as a reward for his devotional austerities, the fruit of immortality, joyfully proceeds home and shows it to his wife, who advises him to give it to Rājā Bhartrihari, as the wealth he was sure to present him with in return were preferable to an endless life of poverty. He goes to the palace, and presenting the fruit to the good rājā, acquaints him of its nature, and is rewarded with a lakh of rupia. The rājā gives the fruit to his wife, telling her that if she ate it her beauty should increase day by day, and she should be immortal. The rānī gives it to her paramour, the chief of the police, who, in his turn, presents it as the choicest of gifts to a favourite courtesan, who, after reflecting that it would only enable her to commit innumerable sins, resolves to offer it to the rājā, hoping to be rewarded in a future life. When Rājā Bhartrihari again received the fruit he was astonished, and on learning from the courtesan from whom she had obtained it, he saw that his wife was unfaithful, so, abandoning throne and kingdom, he departed into the jungle, where he became an ascetic. But we are not told what became of the fruit—perhaps the good rājā destroyed it, fully convinced that immortality on this earth would not be altogether a blessing!

ARMOUR THAT RENDERS THE WEARER INVULNERABLE.

See the account of giant Galaffer (p. 103). *Nothing about magic armour on that page.*

CAIN.

On a plain near the Caspian Sea, from which there appears to be no exit, Huon finds a 'tun made of the heart of oak bound all about with bands of iron,' which rolls round and round 'in the circuit of the plain.' Beside it lies a great iron mallet. Within Cain, the murderer of his brother Abel, is confined, with serpents and toads devouring him; but he is unable to die. He implores Huon to break the tun with the mallet, and thus release him. A fiend of hell is waiting with a boat to bear Cain from the accursed

¹ Composed by Ziyā-ed-Dīn Nakhshabī about A.D. 1306, but representing a much older work no longer extant.

p'ace, and Cain suggests that after Huon has broken the tun, he shall tie the mallet round his neck, represent himself as Cain to the fiend, and effect his escape. Huon declines to touch the tun, but takes advantage of Cain's advice (pp. 484—492). He is ferried by the fiend to the city of Collanders, continues to call himself Cain, and is enthusiastically received by the pagans, who do not discover the deceit.

THE CUP OF OBERON.

This cup, which Oberon presents to Huon, fills with wine in the hands of any man who, being 'out of deadly sin,' attempts to drink out of it, but is always empty when a sinful man touches it (pp. 76, 77). The Emperor Charlemagne is proved sinful by this test, while Huon, his wife, and Gerames are all shown to be innocent of sin (p. 260).

Magical tests of chastity occur in many Asiatic as well as mediæval European romances and tales. In the *Kathā Sarit Sāgara*,¹ a merchant named Guhasena is about to depart on a long trading journey, and both he and his wife have misgivings as to each other's fidelity during their separation, when the deity Siva appears before them, and puts in the hand of each a red lotus, which should fade if either proved unfaithful.—In the Persian *Tūt Nāma* (or Parrot-Book) the wife of a soldier, on his leaving her to enter a great man's service, gives him a nosegay, which should betoken her chastity while it bloomed. And in the charming Arabian tale of Prince Zayn al-Asnām the King of the Genii gives him a magic mirror, in which if he see the reflection of any damsel undimmed, he may be sure that she is 'a clean maid, without aught of defect or default, and endowed with every praiseworthy quality; but if, on the contrary, the figure be found obscured, then know that she is sullied by the soil of sex; '—and the story of how the Prince at length found the required pure and spotless damsel is 'familiar to every schoolboy.'

From the East the idea of such magical tests was, no doubt, brought to Europe during the crusading times, when many a brave and worthy knight, as he lay sleepless in his tent on the plains of Syria, must have often thought of his dame at home, and wondered whether she had not found a substitute for him in the person of the 'lordly abbot, or perchance some meaner priest'! In *Amadis de Gaul* the test is a garland, in *Perce Forest* a rose, which remained fresh so long as its wearer continued chaste; while in *Tristan*, *Perceval*, *Morte d'Arthur*, *Orlando Furioso*, and *Le Lay du Corn*, a cup of wine if spilled in the hand of either male or female indicated the unfaithful lover. In the old metrical romance of the *Wright's Chaste Wife* (edited for the E. E. T. S. by Dr. Furnivall) a poor widow gives the wright, when about to espouse her daughter, a garland of roses which would keep their colour while

¹ Signifying, "Ocean of the Streams of Story," a great Sanskrit collection, of the 11th century, slightly abridged from a work apparently now lost, entitled *Vrihat Kathā*, or Great Story, written five hundred years earlier.

his wife was true to him, but not otherwise. In like circumstances, a carpenter, according to the *Gesta Romanorum*, received from his mother-in-law a shirt which would not be soiled or torn so long as his wife was chaste; and this also occurs in the North German tale of 'The King and Queen of Spain' (Thorpe's *Tide-Tale Stories*).¹ In *Bandello*, Part I., Nov. 21, a Bohemian nobleman has a magic picture of his wife, which would betoken her infidelity by turning yellow (or green, the colour supposed to be appropriate to jealousy!); and this novel it was, doubtless—not some oral version of the *Wright's Wife*, as I once thought—that suggested to Massinger the plot of his play of *The Picture*. Everybody knows the old English ballad of the *Boy and the Muntle*, derived from a *fabliau*, where a mantle will fit only a woman who is perfectly chaste. In the *Gesta Romanorum* a wild elephant can only be lulled asleep by two pure virgins; and in an Indian story a white elephant falls down dead, and a devotee informs the king that it will be restored to life by the presence of a chaste woman: surely no one could be so infatuated as to believe it likely—even possible—that these two stories were independently invented!

The ancient Hebrews had a water-ordeal to test a woman suspected of infidelity by her husband, which may have been derived from the Egyptians—see the Book of Numbers, ch. i. vv. 5—21, from which it is very evident that no woman conscious of guilt would risk such a punishment, threatened by one of the sacred order of the priesthood, and so she would stand self-convicted—truly, a shrewd device! The Hindús seem also to have had a water-ordeal, though of a different kind, for similar cases: in the *Rámáyana* it is related that Sita, the wife of Rámá, in order to prove her chastity, which the reverend hermits strongly suspected, boldly leaped into the "tank of trial," and—more fortunate than many of her equally innocent European sisters in modern times who were "ducked" for witchcraft—she escaped being drowned, and thus satisfied the suspicious ascetics.

DREAMS AND ANGEL'S VISIONS.

Gerard learns approaching events in a dream (p. 16). An angelical voice, heralded by a shining light, addresses Huon (p. 435).

FAIRIES.

At Oberon's birth (p. 73) a discontented fairy caused him to cease growing when three years old, but afterwards regretting this act, made him the fairest creature that ever nature formed. Translyne gave him the power of seeing through all men's minds, and another fairy that of going whither he would by merely wishing himself there. Gerames tells Huon (p. 63) that any one speaking to Oberon is lost for ever, a common popular notion. Oberon can raise up tempests (p. 67), place rushing rivers in the paths of his enemies, or

¹ It is curious to find this idea in a popular Bengali story, where a girl tells her companion that he who gets her for his wife will be a happy man, for the cloth she wears will never be soiled or torn.—See Rev. Lal Behari Day's *Folk-Tales of Bengal*, p. 236.

suddenly call into being palaces for his friends, and by a touch of his rod make roads for them through stormy rivers. For further accounts of Oberon, the dwarf king of the fairies, and his attendants Gloríadas, Gloriande, Lempatrix, Margale, Oryane, Translyne, see under these names in the Index Nominum.

FIENDS AND EVIL ANGELS.

The devil of hell, who is in league with Cain (p. 489), has a head as big as an ox's head, his eyes are redder than two burning coals, his teeth great and long, and as rough as a bear, and he casts fire and smoke out of his gorge like a furnace (p. 489). Huon, when wrecked on a rock in the Spanish sea, finds a castle there inhabited by monks, who are evil angels, chased out of Paradise with Lucifer (p. 592). When they please they come among living men in the likeness of bears or wer-wolves. Others tempt men and women to their damnation; others follow the thunder and tempest in the air, and some destroy ships and men on the seas. They still have most of the powers of the fairies, and create, by merely wishing, towns and castles on high rocks, with minstrels and all that appertains to rich living, but Christ compels them to conduct daily divine service (p. 593).

THE FOUNTAIN OF YOUTH.

This fountain cures those who bathe in its stream of all infirmities (p. 434). It is apparently situated on Alexander's Rock.

The virtues of this Fountain are thus described in Way's rendering of the *fabliau* of "The Land of Cockaigne"—that is, Kitchenland, where all sorts of sensual delights abound—

"But the chiefest, choicest treasure,
In this land of peerless pleasure,
Was a well, to say the sooth,
Cleped the Living Well of Youth.
There, had numb and feeble Age
Crossed you in your pilgrimage,
In those wondrous waters pure,
Laved a while, you had a cure:
Lustihed and youth appears
Numbering now but twenty years."

The circumstance that, according to *Huon*, the Fountain was on Alexander's Rock clearly indicates that the idea was, directly or indirectly, derived from Eastern sources, since the universal Muslim legend tells how Alexander despatched the (mythical) prophet El-Khizr to fetch him some of the Water

of Immortality, and when, after much painful toil and long and weary journeying, the prophet reached the fountain, he had no sooner drank a little of its waters than they disappeared; and since then no man has been able to discover the Fountain.—But long before the days of Alexander, if we may credit the Rabbinical tradition, Solomon, the son of David, sent a messenger to procure him some of the Water of Immortality;—meanwhile the sage monarch would have ample time to reflect upon this delusive world: for was it not he who, having seen everything under the sun, declared that ‘all is vanity and vexation of spirit?’ We might therefore well expect that, on this account, when his messenger returned with the Water of Immortality, the ‘wisest of men’ would decline the potation: and decline it he did; but not because ‘all is vanity’ (the Rev. Mr. Stiggins, by the way, was of the same opinion—always excepting a little pine-apple rum), but because he could not endure the thought of surviving his female favourites!

The assertion that since El-Khizr took his draught of immortality no one has been able to find the Fountain can’t be true—if *all* stories be true—for have we not in the oral and written (popular) histories of many lands most circumstantial accounts of successful expeditions to the Fountain of Life? What, for instance, was the water which the beautiful and brave young princess, in the Arabian tale of the ‘Envious Sisters,’ sprinkled on the stones, as she went down the hill (after securing the Bird that spoke and the Tree that sang), thereby changing them back into their original forms of princes and nobles—what, but this same Water of Life? And again, in another Arabian tale, when Prince Ahmad is required by his silly father, the king—prompted by an envious, malignant vazir—to get him some of the water that could cure all ailments, and the Prince’s bewitching bride, the *Peri Bánú*, obtains it for him, spite of the lions and serpents which guarded the fountain—what was this but the identical water of which old El-Khizr drank—unless, indeed, there existed more than one fountain of the same kind in those far-off days? Then there is the delightful German tale, ‘*Das Wasser im Leben*,’ to which Grimm has appended a note, stating that in Conrad of Wurtzburg’s *Trojan War*, written in the 13th century, Medea gets water from Paradise to renew the youth of Jason’s father.—There’s no end, in sooth, to the number of stories of magical fountains of all sorts—fountains of immortality, of youth, of oblivion, of love, of disdain; and fountains, eke, that changed a man into a woman, and a woman into a man!

GIANTS.

The first giant Huon meets is Angolaffer or Galafer, who is seventeen feet high (p. 103). He has robbed Oberon of the tower of Dunother, and of a suit of armour which renders invulnerable any man who, wearing it, is ‘without spot of deadly sin’ and the son of a virtuous mother (p. 105). Huon puts it on, and strikes off the giant’s head. Angolaffer’s brother Agrapart is of the same height, and has two teeth protruding from his mouth, each a foot long: his eyes are like two burning torches, and ‘he was a foot between the brows’ (p. 140). Huon worsts him in a duel (p. 148).

THE GRIFFIN OR GRYPHON.

Huon sees this monster while in the castle of the Adamant, carrying off in its talons the corpses of sailors shipwrecked on that fatal rock (p. 426). Lying down among the dead men, Huon is himself carried by it through the air to its nest on Alexander's Rock (p. 429). It is a female bird with eyes like basins of fire, and of enormous size ; but Huon succeeds in slaying it, as well as its young. He preserves a foot of the monster as a curiosity, and presents it on his return to King Louis of France (p. 583), and 'by King Philip it was hanged in the holy chapel, whereas it is as yet' (p. 583).

Accounts of this bird figure in *Marco Polo's Travels*, where it is called Gryphon ; in the story of Sindbad in the 77th Arabian Night (under the name of Rukh), and in the travels of Rabbi Benjamin of Tudela. "Its story is identical," writes Colonel Yule, "with that of the Garuda of the Hindoos, the Simurgh of the old Persians, the 'Angka of the Arabs, the Bar Yachre of the Rabbinical legends, the Gryps of the Greeks" (Yule's *Marco Polo*, ii. 349, 350). Its habitat has been referred to the China seas by early Eastern writers ; Marco Polo heard of it at Madagascar ; the legends of Northern Siberia tell how it has visited their climes. Marco Polo describes it as an enormous eagle. Rabbi Benjamin of Tudela writes that when sailors were in danger of being lost at sea near China, they sewed themselves up in hides and awaited the griffin, who carried them to land, believing them to be natural prey. According to the story of Duke Ernest of Bavaria the duke was wrecked like Huon, on the rock of Adamant, but escaped with his life ; the dead bodies of most of his companions were carried off by the griffin ; and they themselves were whisked alive through the air by the bird to a rock, whence like Huon they travel down a river in the heart of a mountain. There is a Persian drawing engraved in Lane's *Arabian Nights*, of the Rukh or Gryphon carrying through the air three elephants, one in its beak, and two in its claws. Naturalists believe the bird to be an antediluvian member of the ostrich family, identical with the fossil bird *Æpyorius*. A fossil egg of the species, capable of holding nearly 2½ gallons of water, is in the British Museum.

To Colonel Yule's list of *wunderwogels* may be added the Eorosh of the Zend; the Kargas of the Turks; the Kirni of the Japanese; and the sacred Dragon of the Chinese.—The device which Benjamin of Tudela describes sailors as adopting when in danger of being shipwrecked—sewing themselves in skins and awaiting the Griffin, who carried them to land, believing them to be his natural prey—occurs in several Arabian tales, where it is generally practised by magicians on young lads whom they have seduced from home; the object being to obtain precious stones from the top of the mountain where the Rukh carries them, after which the magicians leave their victims to their fate, which however always proves a happy one.

THE HORN OF OBERON.

This horn was made by four fairies in the isle of Cephallonia; one (Gloriande) endowed it with the power of curing by its blast all manner of sickness; a second (Translyne) with the power of satisfying hunger and thirst; a third (Margale) with the power 'that whosoever heard this horn, though he were never so poor and feeble by sickness, he should have such joy in his heart that he should sing and dance'; a fourth fairy (Lempatrix) gave the horn the gift of forcing him who heard it to come at the pleasure of him who blew it (p. 66). When this 'rich horn of ivory' is bestowed by Oberon on Huon, its only virtue mentioned is that it brings a hundred thousand men to the aid of him who blows it, if—and the condition is all-important—there is genuine need of help (pp. 77, 78).

Musical instruments having the same property as that with which the third fairy endowed the horn of Oberon, viz. of making every one who heard it to dance, *volens volens*, are common to the folk-tales of all Europe. For examples, the magic pipe in our old English tale of *The Friar and the Boy*, and the violin in its German counterpart (in Grimm), *Das Jode im Dorn*, and the harp in the Icelandic *Herauds ok Bosi Saga*; and akin to these is the pipe of the Piper of Hamelin, which not only drew all the rats into the Weser but drew all the children into a mountain. In the Icelandic saga, which, according to Mr. Baring-Gould, rests on a mythological foundation, a harp occurs which belongs to one Sigurd. 'Bosi slays Sigurd, puts on his skin and clothes, and taking the harp goes in this disguise to the banquet-hall of King Godmund, where his true love is about to be married to another man. He plays the harp, and the knives and plates, the tables and stools, then the guests, and lastly the monarch himself are set to dancing. He keeps them capering till they are too exhausted to move a limb, then he casts the bride over his shoulder and makes off.'¹ In Croker's collection of Irish Fairy Legends one Maurice Connor is said to have been able by playing a certain tune on his bagpipes, to make old and young, lame and lazy, "up and fut it," till they fell down from sheer exhaustion.—The fourth virtue of Oberon's horn, that of bringing a hundred thousand men to the aid of him who blows

¹ *Curious Myths of the Middle Ages*, ed. 1869, p. 431.

it, is also found in the horn that drew crowds which was presented by the little man in red to one of three soldiers journeying together, according to the German story of 'The Nose' (in Grimm); and also in the bagpipe of the young hero of a Slav tale in M. Dozon's French collection (No. 2), which when played upon calls up any number of armed soldiers

JUDAS ISCARIOT.

In the perilous gulf or whirlpool near hell, Huon finds Judas floating about on a piece of canvas. This canvas (Judas says) he once gave away to a poor man for God's sake, a gift of charity unique in his career; and God afterwards restored it to him as a reward for his virtuous act, to protect him from the wind on his right side. Tormented to death, he cannot die (pp. 363, 369). The story finds a parallel in the Irish legend of St. Brendan, who met Judas on an iceberg in the Northern Sea, and learnt that he was allowed to leave the sinner's burning lake every Christmas night to cool himself in the snow, because he had once given his cloak to a leper. This story is the subject of one of Mr. Matthew Arnold's best known poems (see Mr. Thomas Olden's notice of St. Brendan in the *Dict. Nat. Biog.*).

A MAN TRANSFORMED INTO A SEA BEAST.

Oberon's messenger Malabron, who carries Huon on his back through the sea (p. 111), and resembles a bear, was a handsome man, whom Oberon punished for disobedience by transforming him into a beast of the sea for thirty years. When Huon makes the sign of the Cross, the skin of the beast temporarily falls off, and reveals as fair a man as could be seen.

MECHANICAL CONTRIVANCES.

Two men of brass 'without ceasing beat with their flails' before the gate of Dunother, the residence of the giant Angolaffer, so that none can enter it alive. On opening a wicket, however, from within, a wind rushes forth and sets the men at rest (pp. 98, 99).

PRECIOUS STONES.

Of the stones gathered by Huon in the underground river, one preserves its bearer from poison or treason, another from fire and

sword, a third from all discomfort and old age, a fourth cures blindness, and a fifth renders its owner invisible (pp. 454—7).

Magic gems play important parts in innumerable tales. They are frequently obtained from grateful serpents. Thus, in an Albanian tale (No. 9 of M. Dozon's French collection), a youth having saved the life of a serpent receives as a reward from its father a wishing-stone, by means of which, *à la* Aladdin, he has a magnificent palace erected and gets a beautiful princess for his bride.—In the *Jātakas*, or Buddhist Birth-Stories, we read of a gem which, when put in the mouth, enabled one to rise into the air and go wherever he wished.—In the Persian romance which recounts the imaginary adventures of Hatim Taï, the hero slays a dragon and takes out of the monster's head a pearl which restored sight to the blind; cured the bite of a snake; endeared its possessor alike to friend and foe; secured victory in battle; conferred profound wisdom and boundless wealth; and rendered all creatures obedient to his commands.—The notion of dragons or serpents having gems in their heads (as well as being guardians of hidden treasure), still prevalent in the East, seems to be a relic of serpent-worship, and recalls Shakspeare's 'toad, ugly and venomous,' &c. A Kashmīrī folk-tale relates how a 'snake-woman' was burnt for twenty-four hours in a furnace, and among her ashes was found a small round stone—the real essence of the 'snake-woman,' and whatever one touched with it was turned to gold. The alchemists of old times were not aware of this ready process of obtaining the long-sought Philosopher's Stone: but, then, you must first catch your 'snake-woman'!

In the *Gesta Romanorum* (ed. E. E. T. S., story of Guido) we read of a stone of three colours, obtained from a thankful serpent, 'possessed of three virtues: bestowing evermore joy without heaviness; abundance without fail; and light without darkness.' The same story is told in Gower's *Confessio Amantis*, B. v., but the stone which the grateful reptile gives the hero had the useful—but, from a moral point of view, rather questionable—property of always returning to his purse after having sold it—there, sure enough, was the stone again, along with the gold paid for it by the unlucky jeweller!—Needless it were to multiply examples.

THE SERPENT.

This animal guards the castle of the Adamant (p. 374). It is 'higher than a great horse, with eyes redder than fire, with marvellous great talons and tail.' Sir Arnold, Huon's knight, flees on catching sight of it; but Huon kills it after making the sign of the Cross, by thrusting a broad-headed spear down its throat when it opened its mouth to swallow him. Huon's own sword could not pierce its skin, which is harder than iron or steel (p. 381).

SUBTERRANEAN RIVER.

When leaving Alexander's Rock, Huon is wafted in a richly-jewelled boat down the rock-confined river of Dyplayre (pp. 431—440). After three days' journeying the rocks close above him and

form a dark passage, down which his ship is hurried at a great pace ; the air is bitterly cold, voices are heard cursing their ill-fortune in diverse languages. There is also thunderous noise of falling water. A tempest arises, and great bars of red-hot iron fall hissing in front of the ship. After three days the vessel runs aground on a gravel bank of precious stones. Launching his vessel once again he travels on in mid stream still underground, and on the eleventh day passes out of the darkness, and finds himself in the Sea of Persia. This underground river or perilous gulf, as it is also called, is stated to lie "between the Sea of Persia and the Great Sea-ocean." A similar journey is made by Sindbad and by Herzog Ernst (cp. Tasso's *Gerusalemme liberata*, xiv. 32 ff.).

SWORDS.

Galans forged three invincible swords, of which one called Durandel was owned by Roland ; the second was named Courtain ; and the third, rusty and old to outward appearance, was given Huon by Ivoryn (p. 182).

The hero of chivalric romance is usually provided with a most trenchant blade, which he only can wield, and a steed, like himself, high-spirited and of extraordinary endurance, that carries him through all dangers. In the Edda of Sæmund we are told that Wieland (or Velent) the Smith forged a sword of such sharpness that when he cleft his rival Emilius with it the blade seemed to the latter only like cold water running down his body : 'Shake thyself,' said Wieland ; he did so, and fell in two halves, one on each side of the chair. And in the Gislí Saga it is related that the sword Gray-steel, which was forged by the Dwarf, could bite whatever its blow fell upon—be it steel, or iron, or anything else. So, too, Arthur's famous blade, 'y-hote' Excaliber, could 'kerve steel, yren, and al-thing.'

In the Bedouin romance of *Antar* the poet-hero has an all-powerful sword called Dhamí, which was made out of a thunderbolt, and the skill and labour of the smith who forged it were but ill-requited ; for when he took it to his employer—not Antar, but an Arab chief—with just pride but little prudence, he exclaimed, 'Sharp is the sword, O chief, but where is the smiter ?' to which the chief replied, flourishing Dhamí, 'As for the smiter—I am the smiter,' and, suiting the action to the word, he smote off the head of the unlucky artisan. When Dhamí came, by mere accident, as it did, into the possession of the hero Antar, he plied it on the heads of his foes with such effect that many a time and oft he cleft a doughty knight and his horse each in two halves !

But the swords of romance had sometimes other wonderful qualities than that of carving steel and iron, or of cleaving man and horse. For instance, in the *Kathá Sarit Ságara* the hero Indívarasena receives from the goddess Durga a sword by the power of which he should not only conquer his enemies, but it would obtain for him whatever he desired ; and in another story (but

this often occurs in Indian fictions) the hero, in like manner, obtains a sword by means of which he could fly through the air. We must not forget the sword which 'the king of Araby and Inde' sent, according to Chaucer's *Squire's Tale*, to the King of Tartary, that, like the spear of Telephus, could cure the wound it gave—a quality which seems to be amusingly distorted in a modern popular Norse story, in Sir George W. Dasent's *Tales from the Eydell*, where Master Tobacco receives from an old witch a sword, one edge of which was black, the other white; and 'if he smote with the black edge, everything fell dead, and if with the white edge, everything came to life again.' This sword, moreover, could become a knife and be carried in the pocket, and when drawn out it was a sword again.

ADDITIONAL NOTE.

Florence's incestuous love for his daughter Ide is utterly inconsistent with his previous manly character, and a very clumsy interpolation by one of the continuators of the Romance. Nevertheless it has parallels both in Asiatic and in several European fictions. In No. xiii. of Pandit Natésa Sastri's *Folk-Lore in Southern India* (London: Trübner) a king wishes to marry his four daughters after the death of his wife, their mother, but by a clever device they not only save themselves from such an unnatural union, but bring their father to a due sense of the enormous crime he purposed committing. And in the German tale entitled, in Grimm, 'Allerleirauh,' and in one of our English translations, 'Catskin'; in Perrault's 'Peau d'Ane'; in the modern Greek story entitled, 'Xylomarie' (M. Legrand's French collection), and in other popular European tales, the heroine has also to flee from the incestuous love of her father.—W. A. C.

VIII. INDEX LOCORUM.

* * Mediæval romances show as little regard for geography as for history, and Huon's travels in the East baffle all detailed description. The names of the places visited, although often hopelessly disguised by misspellings, are, however, rarely quite fictitious. The compiler of the romance obviously had access to some early book of Oriental travel, and thence derived his geographical nomenclature. I have tried to identify a few of the names below. If we take Huon's journeys seriously, the FIRST JOURNEY to the East may be described as taking him to Jerusalem: thence from Southern Syria he crosses the sea to the mouth of the Nile, whence he is carried to Cairo. On leaving Egypt he appears to visit some island of the Greek Archipelago, and thence to pass to the mainland of Asia Minor (Turkey in Asia), whence he returns to Brindisi. On his SECOND JOURNEY to the East he finds himself near the Caspian Sea, whence he makes his way to Tabriz in Persia, and to Angora in Turkey in Asia. After a voyage in the Persian Gulf, he arrives at Antioch and

Damascus, and visits most of the known towns in Palestine. His THIRD JOURNEY to Momur, Oberon's realm in India, is not described after he suffers shipwreck off an unnamed rock in the Mediterranean near Spain. Thence he is carried through the air by fairies to Momur, a shadowy kingdom of India.

Ahylante, desert of, 478. [A lake in Anatolia, Turkey in Asia, is now named Abullionte or Abullonia, and is similarly situated in relation to Angora (*q. v.*) as the Ahylante of the romance.]

Acre, 62, 519 (besieged by Persians), 522.

Adamant, castle of, 370.

Affryke, Aufrike, 2; sea of, 663.

Albaney, 72.

Alexander's rock, 427.

Almayn, Almayne, 279, Germany.

Anfalerne, a seaport, 161.

Anfame, a Saracen kingdom, 357.

Angore, 472, Angora (Enguri) in Anatolia, Turkey in Asia.

Antioch, 497.

Antiopheney, a Saracen kingdom, 512.

Aquytanie, 18, Aquitaine.

Armanye, Ermyne, 489, 498, Armenia: part is called 'low,' and part 'high,' 498.

Arogone, 313, Aragon.

Arrabey, 519, Arabia.

Austrich, 277, Austria.

Babylon, city of, 49, 50, 61, 83, 113, 130, Cairo. [All mediæval

travellers speak of Cairo as 'Babylon in Egypt' (*Bambelonia d'Egitto*, Marco Polo). Cairo is mentioned under this name by Diodorus, quoting Ctesias, by Strabo and by Ptolemy. Babul, close to Old Cairo, still preserves the old name of the city; cp. Yule's *Marco Polo*, i. 23.]

Barbarye, 310, 519, 663, Barbary. Barselone, 624, Barcelona.

Basyle, 702, Basle.

Bauier, 2, Bavaria.

Beauland, 668, perh. Beaulieu.

Belmaryn, 741.

Berry, 281.

Blay, Blaye, castle of, 275; town of, 578.

Borgoyn, 316, 399, Bourgogne.

Bougye, 310, a town in Barbary.

Bouillon, 59, Boulogne.

Boulgnant, 603, a realm of Oberon handed to King Arthur: probably identical with Bolgara or Bolghar on the Wolga, a town of Upper Bulgaria, which Arab writers regarded as the northernmost limit of the habitable world; cp. Yule's *Marco Polo*, i. 4—6.

- Brandys, a sea-port, 54, 55, 233,
 Brindisi.
 Burdeux, 5, 7, *et pass.* Bordeaux.
 Calaber, 743, Calabria.
 Caluery, 59, Mount Calvary.
 Candy island, 663, Candia.
 Caspys, sea of, 472, the Caspian.
 Cecyll, Cesyll, 663, Sicily.
 Chafalene, an island, 66; 'the
 pruiue isle,' 72—3, Cephalonia.
 Chalons, 252.
 Champagne, 52.
 Cluny, 52; battle near, 531.
 Colanders, a city of Armenia,
 489—496.
 Coleyn, 284, Cologne.
 Constantyne the noble, 466, Con-
 stantinople.
 Corse, isle, 663, Corsica.
 Courtois, 676.
 Cret, isle of, 213, Crete.
 Damas, 497, Damascus.
 Damiet, Damyet, 130, 155, 161,
 Damietta.
 Dolphenny [Dolphinne, 1601 ed.],
 316; Daupheney, 741, Dau-
 phiné.
 Dorbrey, 507.
 Dunother, tower of, 96.
 Dyplayre, river, 439 [brings Huon
 to Tauris in Persia].
 Egypt, 73, etc.
 Englund, 607, England.
 Ermyne, *see* Armanye.
 Escalence, 100, 501, Escalon.
 Eufrates, flood of, 478, Euphrates.
 Flanders, 252.
 Florencoll, 760.
 France, 3, *et pass.*
 Gasere, 445, 501, Gaza.
 Geanes, 445, prob. Geaune in
 Landes, France.
 Gerone, a town near Bordeaux,
 15.
 Geronnull, 62; Geronell, 578.
 Gerounde, province, 406, Gironde.
 Gerounde river, 356, Garonne.
 Grenade, 741, Granada.
 Hell, gulf of, 362.
 Hungary, 607.
 Jaffe, 58, 497, 500, Jaffa or Joppe,
 Palestine.
 Jaffet, castle of, 519. [There is
 an island Jaffatine in Red Sea.]
 Jene, 519.
 Jerusalem, 59, 500.
 Lombardy, 702.
 Luysarne, city in Spain, 415;
 ? Luserna, Italy.
 Lyon 'on the river Rone,' 403,
 Lyons.
 Lysbone, 416, Lisbon.
 Magence, Maience, 278, 531, May-
 ence.
 Marrocke 'stratis,' 415.
 Marseyle, Marsile, seaport, 528,
 Marseilles.
 Mascon, 403, 500.
 Mauryse, abbey at, 219.
 Mede, 457, Media.
 Mesque, 129.
 Mombraunte, 131.

- Momur, capital of fairyland, a realm of India, 74, 604.
 Monglew, 'the which is called Lyon,' 403.
 Montleberry, 14, 18.
 Mountaubon, 472, Montauban.
 Myllayne, 420, Milan.
 Napelous, 499, Nablous.
 Naplese, 61, Naples.
 Nasareth, 519, Nazareth.
 Navarre, 633.
 Nile, river, 112, 116; 130, 155.
 Noisaunt, Noysaunt, an island near the gulf of hell, 168.
 Noremberge, 294, Nüremberg.
 Nyse, 741, Nice.
 Olyfarne, 511.
 Orcaney, 511.
 Orleance, 14, Orleans.
 Paris, 2, *et pass.*
 Pauey, 33, Pavia.
 Perce, Perse, 443, 451, 497; gulf of, 449, Persia.
 Portyngale, 415, Portugal.
 Puyllé, 740, Apulia.
 Pyemont, 741, Piedmont.
 Raines, plains of, 507.
 Rame, Ranés, a city in Palestine, 500, 507, Ramah.
 Red Sea, 111.
 Roddes, the coast of, 213, Rhodes.
 Romaine, 741, Romagna.
 Rome, 2, *et pass.*
 Rône, river, 316, Rhone.
 Rousillon, 530.
 Rownceuall, 2, Roncesvalles.
 St. Giles, 741.
 St. Omer, 209.
 Sathab, gulfe of, 528. [In Sir John Mandeville's Travels (ed. 1839, p. 26), a city of this name (otherwise Catala, Sotalia, Cataillie, etc.) is described as lying somewhere between Rhodes and Cyprus.]
 Saxoney, 2.
 Sayre, 518, prob. Tyre (Soor).
 Sclauoney, 1, Sclavonia.
 Spayne, 1, *et pass.*
 Strabourge, 278, Strasburg.
 Surrey, 100, Syria.
 Taragon, 624, Tarragona.
 Tarascon, 668.
 Thauris in Perce, 443. [In mediæval books of travels this is the name given to Tabriz, the chief city of Adherbaijaz, a Persian province on the Caspian. Marco Polo gives a full description of it, i. 70—4.]
 Thesalye, 265, Thessaly.
 Tortouse, 313, prob. Tortosa [in *Roland*, 916, 'Turteluse'].
 Tournous, 530.
 Tours, a seaport, 611.
 Troye, siege of, 412.
 Troyes, 52.
 Trypoley, 310, Tripoli.
 Valence the great, 624.
 Vergier, 530.
 Vyene, Viene, 276, Vienna.
 Ynde, 489, India.

IX. INDEX NOMINUM.

* * The editorial introduction and appendix are indexed here as well as the text of the romance. A few notes are inserted on one or two characters ; see, for example, NAIMES.

ABBOT OF CLUNY, *v.* CLUNY.

ABBOT OF MAURYSE, *v.* MAURYSE.

ACLIS, Duchess of Burdeux, and Huon's mother, 56 ; sister of the Pope, 54, and of Garyn, 56 ; receives Charlemagne's messengers, 7 ; sends her sons to Paris, 11 ; learns Huon's ill-fortune, 52 ; dies, 53, 210.

AGRAPART, a giant, laments the death of his brother Angolafer, 140 ; insults Gaudys at Babylon, 141 ; is challenged by Huon, 147, and defeated, 148 ; becomes Gaudys's man, 150.

ALBANEY, duke of, 265.

ALBERIC, a German fairy, xxx.

ALEAUME OR ALELMUS, xxxiv, another name for Gerames (*q. v.*).

ALEXANDER THE GREAT, vii ; son of Neptanabus, 73 ; his picture in castle of Adamant, 412 ; a rock called after him, 427 ; spoke with trees of the sun and moon, 427.

ALMAYNE, Emperor of, *v.* THIERRY.

AMAURY, Earl, longs for Huon's land, 5 ; proposes to take it for Charlot, *ib.* ; reproved by Charlemagne, 12 ; plots against Huon, 13 ; in ambush, 19 ; bears Charlot's body to Charlemagne, 18, 31 ; charges Huon with Charlot's murder, 33 ; lies to the Emperor, 35 ; challenges Huon, 35 ; swears that Huon lies, 40 ; fights, 42, and is slain, 44.

AMPHAGE, a horse, saves Barnard in battle, 396.

AMPHAMIE, king of, Esclaramonde's brother, 403.

ANGELARS, Huon's vassal, slain, 275.

ANGOLAFFER, GALAFFER, GALAFRE, giant of Dunother, 96 ; of terrible aspect, 102-3 ; threatens Huon, 103 ; his magic armour, 105 ; fights, and is slain by Huon, 108-9 ; pagans pay him tribute, 129.

ANGORE, admiral of, 472 ; visits Huon, 473, and is slain, 476.

ANTONIUS, MARCUS, husband of Cleopatre, 411.

ARAGON, king of, *v.* GARYN.

CHARL. ROM. XII.

3 G

ARNOLD, Sir, climbs the Adamant rock, 373; rouses the serpent, 374; killed by Saracens, 377.

ARTHUR, King (of Brittany), vii; Sir Thomas Malory's *Morte d'Arthur*, xlviii; wants to succeed Oberon in throne of fairyland, 599; comes to Oberon's palace, 601; refuses for a time to acknowledge Huon as king of fairyland, 602; is given by Huon Boulgnant and away over fairies of Tartary, 603; attends Oberon's funeral, 606.

ARTHUR OF LITTLE BRITAIN, Lord Berners' romance of, xlvii.

ASCHAM, ROGER, quoted, xlviii.

ASPREMONT, a chanson de geste, xiii.

AUBERON, v. OBERON.

AUDE, LA BELLE, sister of Oliver, xii.

AYMON, *FOUR SONS OF*, a romance, xix, xx, xxiii, xlvii.

BALAACH, 500, v. TRAMPOYNGNYFLE.

BALAN, a chanson de geste, xiii.

BARNARD, Huon's faithful knight, 338; receives a horse from Huon, 356; supports Gerames in a night-sortie at siege of Bordeaux, 393; alone survives, 396; entrusted by Esclaramonde with care of Clariet, 399; rides to Cluny, 402; announces fall of Bordeaux to abbot of Cluny, 404; seeks Huon, 445; at Tauris, 446; meets Huon without recognizing him for a time, 447-50; sees the value of Huon's precious stones, 453; finds a stone that makes its holder invisible, 454; with Huon against Angore, 475, and Colanders, 489, and the Saracens, 504; at Marseilles, 545, and Cluny, 557, and Mayence, 558; guards Clariet at Cluny, 607; is drowned by traitor Brohart, 611; his body found in Garonne, 617; is buried at Cluny, 618.

BAUDOUYN (Baldwin), son of Ogier, slain by Charlot, 4. [This story is told at length in the *chanson* of *Ogier le Danois*, and in some detail in the original poem of *Huon*, 98—193.]

BAUDOYN, brother of Godfrey of Bouillon, buried at Calvary, 59.

BELMARYN, king of, besieges Nice, 741; killed by Croissant, 750.

BENET, St., patron of Cluny, 574.

BERNERS, Lord, translates *Huon*, xxxix; his history, xl; his

translations, xlii; end of life, xlv; undertakes *Huon*, liv; his Euphuism and knowledge of Guevara, 785; his work on Calais, 789.

Berte au Grand Pied, a chanson de geste, xiii.

BERTRAND, son of Naymes, slain by Ogier, 33. [The story is in *Ogier le Danois*.]

BLANCHARDIN, Sorbryn's horse, 184; seized by Huon, 187.

BOURGOYNE, king of, aids abbot of Cluny, 530.

BOWES, THOMAS, quoted, 790.

BROHART, a traitor, seeks to marry Clariet, 608; gets her and Barnard into a boat, 610; kills Barnard, 611; is wrecked and killed by thieves, 614; his kindred flung into Garonne, 618.

BRYAN, Sir Francis, and Berners' literary work, 788.

BURDELOYS, people of Burdeux, fight valiantly, 319.

BURDEUX, bishop of, 419, *v.* LISBON, bishop of.

CÆSAR, JULIUS, Oberon's father, 72, 265, 411; builds tower of Dunother, 96, and castle of Adamant, 411; vanquishes Pompey and Ptolemy of Egypt, *ib.*; attacked at Adamant by three Egyptian kings, *ib.*; slain at Rome, 412.

CAIN, CAYME, confined in oaken tun, 484; begs Huon to release him, 485; tries to trick Huon, 486; is abandoned, 487.

CALABER, king of, visits Nice, 743; fights at siege, 747.

CARAHAW, King, at Oberon's death and funeral, 605-6.

CHALONS, earl of, 252.

CHARLEMAGNE, romances about him, viii; their growth in France, ix; in Iceland, xi; head of a family of romance heroes, xiv; English romance about, xviii, xix; English play about, xxiii; reigns in France, 1, 756; defeated at Roncesvalles, 2; desires lords to choose successor, 3; sends for Huon and Gerard, 7; hears Huon's complaint and promises redress, 27; grieves over Charlot's corpse, 32; rages at Huon, 33; proclaims duel between Huon and Amaury, 40; banishes Huon, 48; sends him on mission to Babylon, 49; receives Gerard and Gybouars, traitors, 235; accepts Huon's treasure from their hands, *ib.*; deceived as to Huon's mission and return by Gerard, 237; resolves to examine Huon at Bordeaux, 241; makes good cheer at Bordeaux, 242; threatens

Huon, 249 ; orders peers to try Huon, 250 ; condemns him, 255 ; reproaches Naymes, *ib.* ; suddenly sees Oberon approach, 259 ; is charged by Oberon with terrible sin, 260 ; receives from Huon relics of mission, 266 ; pardons Huon, *ib.* ; leaves Bordeaux, 268 ; dies, 388.

CHARLES THE BALD, xxviii, xxix.

CHARLOT, his historical prototype Charles the Bald's son, xxix ; in *Ogier le Danois*, xxix ; Charlemagne's elder son, 4 ; plots against Huon with Amaury, 13 ; advances against Huon and Gerard, 19 ; attacks Gerard, 20 ; challenged by Huon, 23 ; slain, 24, 388 ; brought before Charlemagne, 32.

CLARE, St., 313.

CLARIET, CLARYET, Huon's and Esclaramonde's daughter, born, 313 ; christened, 314 ; entrusted to Barnard's care, 399 ; taken to abbot of Cluny, 403 ; visited by Huon disguised, 548 ; is richly dowered by Huon, 581 ; has kings for suitors, 607 ; is kidnapped by traitor Brohart, 608 ; resists him, 610 ; on a desert island and with thieves, 613-14 ; rescued by Saracen king of Grenade, 619 ; declines to marry him, 620 ; saved by Sir Peter of Aragon, and taken to Tarragona, 624 ; meets Florence, who loves her, 625 ; disguises her history, 626 ; is hated by Florence's father, king of Aragon, 630 ; is to be drowned by his orders, 631 ; saved by Sir Peter, 640 ; imprisoned in same tower as Florence, 652 ; escapes, 653 ; joins Florence in forest, *ib.* ; flies with Florence, and taken by Sorbare, 666 ; brought back to Courtois by Huon, 685 ; marries Florence, 686 ; has a child Ide, 690, and dies, 691.

CLARIMODES, fairy boatman, 597.

CLARISSE, another name of Clariet (*q. v.*), xxxiv ; *chanson* about, *ib.*

CLEOPATRE, sister of Julius Cæsar, married Marcus Antonius, 411.

CLUNY, abbot of, accompanies Huon to Paris, 18—26 ; charges Amaury with lying, 36 ; bids Huon accept Amaury's challenge, 37 ; goes with Huon to Cluny, 51-2 ; receives infant Clariet, 403 ; prepares attack on messenger of German Emperor, 530 ; welcomes Huon's return, 549 ; is one hundred and fourteen years old, 552 ; eats Huon's apple of youth and becomes a man of thirty, 554 ; attacks German Emperor in error with 20,000 men,

576; entertains Emperor, 577; guardian of Clariet, 607; calls her suitors together at Blaye, 616.

COLOGNE, provost of, leads burghers to battle for Emperor, 299; attacks Huon after truce, 804; begs pardon of Huon, 306.

CONSTANTYNE, Emperor, nominated the patriarch of Jerusalem, 500.

COURTAYN, a sword, 182.

CRASSYN POLYNGER, bearer of German Emperor's banner, killed by Huon, 297.

CROISSANT, son of Olive and Ide, born, 730; regent of Emperor Ide, 733; reigns alone, 737; charitable, 738; flees from Rome, 739; at Nice, 741; welcomed by Earl Remon, 742; excels at the quintain, 744; attacks Saracen besiegers of Nice, 746-8; is to marry Remon's daughter, 745, 753; is attacked by Remon's son, 754; kills the son, 755; flees from Nice, 758; reaches Florence, 760; falls among thieves, 761; kills them, 763; at Rome, 765; lives in retirement there, 766; no one aids him, 767; sees miraculous treasure in old palace, 771; picks up three besants and gives them to Emperor Guymart, 775; marries Guymart's daughter, 778; seizes Oberon's treasure in old palace, 780.

DENIS, St., 27, 28.

DOON DE MAIENCE, the head of a family of romance heroes, *xiv n.*

DORBRYE, DORBREY, a giant, admiral of, fights against Huon, 507; is slain, 510-11.

DURENDAL, Roland's sword, xii, 182. [See *Chanson de Roland*, l. 926, and M. Leon Gautier's note in his edition, pp. 90-1.]

ELINAS, a Saracen captain, converted, 422.

EMERY, Sir, knight of abbot of Cluny, 545.

EMPEROR. See CHARLEMAGNE, OTHO, and THIERRY.

ENGLAND, king of, Clariet's suitor, 607; *chanson* about, xxxiv.

ERNST VON BAIERN, romance of, 797.

ESCLARAMONDE (Huon's wife), daughter of Gaudys of Babylon, 50, 119; thrice kissed by Huon, 120; grieves for Huon in prison, 125; visits him and confesses her love, *ib.*; grows angry on being told she is a Saracen, 126; keeps Huon without food, *ib.*; consents to turn Christian, 127; plans Huon's escape, 128; tells Gerames all, 133; plots her father's death, 139; arranges for

Huon to fight Agrapart, 143 ; is converted, 154 ; goes with Huon to Rome, 155 ; yields to temptation, 156 ; shipwrecked, 157 ; threatened by pirates in her father's service, 158 ; pleads for Huon, 159 ; is carried off to sea, 161 ; freed by Galafer, 162 ; is loved by him, *ib.* ; begs to be delivered to Ivoryn, 183 ; visited by Gerames, 193 ; swears loyalty to Huon, whom she thinks dead, 194 ; desires to enter a convent, 195 ; meets Huon at Anfalerne, 200 ; leaves for France, 213 ; comforts Garyn's widow, 215 ; baptized by Pope at Rome, 217 ; married to Huon, *ib.* ; fears for Huon, 227 ; her horse stumbles, *ib.* ; bound to a horse by Gerard, 231 ; in prison at Bordeaux, 232 ; before Charlemagne, 243 ; bewails Huon's fate, 253 ; visited by three pilgrims at Bordeaux, 275 ; entreats Huon to stay, 280 ; with child, 281 ; loved by Ravall, 283 ; hears from Huon of his adventures, 307 ; bids Huon get aid from her brother Salybraunt, 310, 324, 349 ; gives birth to Clariet, 312 ; urges Huon to go to the East, 353 ; grieves for Huon, 387, and for Gerames' death, 397 ; is afraid, 399 ; bids Barnard take Clariet to Cluny, *ib.* ; begs mercy of Thierry, 400 ; is promised life, 401 ; imprisoned at Mayence, 406 ; appears in vision to Huon, 520 ; led to stake, 532 ; saved by Oberon, 538 ; treated well by Emperor, 543 ; meets Huon, 570 ; goes with him to Cluny and Bordeaux, 572 ; in fairyland, 597 ; crowned queen there, 601 ; with Huon at Courtois, 682.

FERUMBRAS (SIR), an English romance, xviii n.

FIERABRAS, a romance, xiii, xviii n., xix.

FLANDERS, earl of, 252.

FLORENCE or FLORENT, *chanson* about, xxxiv ; son of king of Aragon, Clariet's suitor, 607, 616 ; meets Clariet at Tarragon, 626 ; does not know who she is, 627 ; wants to marry her, 628 ; offends his father, 630 ; will not fight Navarre unless he marry Clariet, 633 ; leaves for battle on receiving promise, 636 ; captures king of Navarre, 644 ; is told by his father that Clariet is drowned, 645 ; invites his prisoners to avenge Clariet and kill his father, 647 ; is imprisoned by his father, 650 ; meets Clariet in prison, 652 ; escapes with her, 656 ; to Africa, 663 ; attacked by Saracens, 665 ; delivered to Sorbare, a secret Christian, 666 ; at Courtois

with Clariet, 684 ; marries Clariet, 686 ; becomes king of Aragon, 690 ; loses wife, 691 ; loves his own daughter Ide, 692 ; angry at her escape, 701 ; sends for Ide, 731 ; resigns his rule, 737.

FLOREMONT OF ALBANY, 72 ; son of duke of Albany, 265.

FROISSART, translated by Lord Berners, xliii.

GALAFFER, admiral of Anfalerne, 161 ; frees Esclaramonde from pirates, 162 ; loves her, *ib.* ; will not deliver her to Ivoryn, 164 ; threatens Ivoryn, 165 ; sees Ivoryn's army upon him, 183 ; deplores death of his nephew Sorbryn, 187 ; retires before Ivoryn and Huon, 188 ; receives Gerames kindly, 192 ; tells them of Esclaramonde, *ib.*, and of Ivoryn, 193 ; learns history of Huon, 201 ; submits to Ivoryn, 202 ; aided by Ivoryn against Huon, 203 ; encourages Ivoryn, 207 ; angry at Huon's flight, 213 ; enters Anfalerne, 214.

GALANS, forger of swords, 182.

GALERAN, cousin of Duke Raoull, slain by Huon, 290.

GALLERANCE, a knight of Huon, 323.

GANELON, traitor of Roncesvalles, xxii, 3.

GAREYN, 217 ; the baptismal name of Mouflet (*q. v.*).

GARIN DE MONGLAINE, the head of a family of romance heroes, xiv *n.*

GARYN, Guaryn of St. Omer, brother of the Pope, 54, 55 ; receives Huon, 56 ; accompanies him, 58-9 ; killed in fight with Saracens at Anfalerne, 206 ; his wife told by Huon of his death, 214.

GARYN, GUARYN, king of Aragon, 666 ; will not consent to marriage of Florence and Clariet, 630 ; orders her to be drowned, 631 ; deceives Florence, *ib.* ; imprisons Clariet, 640, and Florence, 650 ; will not pardon the watchman who releases them, 658 ; attacked by king of Navarre, 661 ; besieged by Navarre at Courtois, 676 ; accepts Huon's intervention, 682 ; makes peace with Navarre, 685 ; dies, 690.

GAUDYS, admiral of Babylon, 50, 64, 71, 668 ; gave ring to Angolaffer, 106 ; hears Huon's horn, 118 ; orders his arrest, 120 ; sees ring and welcomes Huon, 120 ; refuses to turn Christian, 121 ; sends Huon to prison, 124 ; receives Gerames disguised, 131 ; insulted by giant Agrapart, 141 ; promises his daughter's hand to

any one who fights giant, 142 ; invites Huon, 144 ; receives Agra-part's homage, 150 ; will not turn Christian, 152 ; is delivered to Huon by Oberon, 153, and is slain by Huon, *ib.*

GEFFREY, a French knight in Macaire's service, 90 ; protects Huon, 91 ; drives Macaire from his castle, 92 ; is given Tormont by Huon, 97.

GERAMES meets Huon, 60 ; his history, 61 ; directs Huon to Babylon, 63-4 ; accompanies Huon, 65 ; warns Huon of Oberon, 67-9 ; fears Oberon's banquet, 75 ; buys food for Huon's supper at tournament, 86 ; warns Huon of Macaire, 89 ; dissuades Huon from going to Dunotter, 97 ; remains with Huon's company at Dunotter after Huon leaves it, 110 ; waits for Huon's return, 129 ; sees a ship approach the shore, 129 ; kills the pagan sailors, 129 ; embarks with his companions in the ship to seek Huon, 130 ; arrives at Babylon, 130 ; enters the admiral's palace, 131 ; gives the name of Jeracle, Ivoryn's son, 132 ; pretends that his companions are his prisoners, 132 ; is told that Huon is dead, *ib.* ; learns the truth from Esclaramonde, 133 ; suspects her, *ib.* ; sends her companions to Huon's prison, 134 ; takes food to them, 136 ; allows Esclaramonde to visit Huon, 137 ; sees Huon daily, 138-9 ; keeps Huon's trophies in his side, 153 ; bids Huon obey Oberon, 155 ; is defied by Huon, 156 ; enters a little boat with his company and leaves Huon, *ib.* ; reaches Anfalerne, 191 ; is well received by Galaffer, 192 ; offers to aid him against Ivoryn, 193 ; visits Esclaramonde, *ib.* ; arms for the fight, 197 ; is attacked by Huon, 198 ; throws him to the ground and recognizes him, 199 ; pretends to take Huon prisoner, in order to bring him to Esclaramonde, 199 ; brings Huon and his company to Anfalerne, 200 ; shuts out the admiral and all his men, and kills all in the town, 200 ; fights with Huon before the castle against the Saracens, 206 ; recognizes his brother in Guyer of Bordeaux, 211 ; has been sixty years away from France, 212 ; leaves for France with Huon, 213 ; at Brandys, 214 ; at Rome, 215 ; warns Huon against journeying too early, 228 ; advises Huon to conciliate Gerard, 229 ; is robbed of the objects of Huon's mission by Gerard, 230 ; is allowed to live, 231 ; is brought into Bordeaux tied to a horse, *ib.* ; cast into prison,

232; before the Emperor at Bordeaux, 243; shows the wound made in his side by Gerard, 248; with Huon at Coleyn, 295; fights with vigour against the Germans, 299; promises to aid Huon against the German Emperor, 317; is taken prisoner, 321; is condemned to be hanged, 326; mounts the scaffold, but is released, 331; promises to protect Esclaramonde in Huon's absence, 355; consoles Esclaramonde, 387; fights bravely, 389; advises a night attack, 392; leads the force, 394; is attacked fiercely by Savary, 395; is slain by the Emperor, 396.

GERARD, Thierry's bastard son, slain by Huon, 347.

GERARD, GERARDE, GERARDYN, Huon's brother, 5, 118; goes with Huon to Paris, 15; has an evil dream, 16; is attacked by Charlot, 20; is wounded, 21; at Paris, 26; entrusted with Huon's lands in his absence, 51; gives Huon a Judas kiss, 52; petitions to be a peer of France, 52; at Bordeaux, *ib.*; marries a daughter of Gilbert of Cecyll, 53; grows wicked, 210; learns of Huon's return, 220; takes counsel with his father-in-law, 221; treacherously visits Huon at the abbey of Mauryse, 223; desires Guyer's death, 226; urges Huon to set out for Bordeaux at cock-crow, 227; complains that Huon's return makes him penniless, 228; asks for some land, 229; seizes the objects of Huon's mission, 230; kills the abbot of Mauryse and seizes Huon's treasure, 233; sends a third part to Paris, 235; gives some of it to Charlemagne at Paris, and declares that he has imprisoned Huon because the mission has failed, 237; goes with Charlemagne to Bordeaux, 241; challenged by Huon, 248; forced by Oberon to confess all, 261-2; charges Gybouars with suggesting the plot, 263; is hanged, 265.

GERARD OF ROUSILLON, son of duke of Bourgogne, 530. [Hero of a popular chanson, *Gerart de Rousillon*, one of the peers of France. See Gaston Paris' translation of poem, 1884.]

GILBERT, *v.* GYBOUARS.

GIRARDE DE VIANE, a chanson quoted, xiv n.

GLORIADAS, a fairy living in Adamant castle, 412.

GLORIANDE, GLORIENT, GLORYAUNT, a fairy, 65, 267, 278; intercedes for Huon with Oberon, 70, 167; sent to save Esclaramonde, 537; delivers Oberon's message to Emperor of Germany, 540; receives

- Huon at Momur, 598 ; sent by Huon to make peace between kings of Aragon and Navarre, 677.
- GODFREY OF BOUILLON, buried at Calvary, 59.
- GODIN, chanson about (a son of Huon), xxxv.
- GODUN, a German knight, proposes to slay Huon in an ambush, 294.
- GONDER, Christian provost of Tormont, 83 ; receives Huon, 84 ; tries to make peace between Huon and Macaire, 93 ; restores Huon's horn, 94.
- GRENADE, Saracen king of, I., rescues Clariet and offers her marriage, 619 ; ill-treats her, 620 ; is killed at Tours by Sir Peter of Aragon, 623.
- GRENADE, Saracen king of, II., besieges Nice, 740 ; killed by Croissant, 749.
- GUALTER, a peer of France, urges Huon's death, 251.
- GUARYN. See GARYN.
- GUEVARA, ANTONIO DE, the Spanish author, 786, 788.
- GUITALIN, a chanson de geste, xiii.
- GUY DE BOURGOGNE, a chanson de geste, xiii.
- GUY OF WARWICKE, a romance, xlvii.
- GUYCHARD, Huon's companion, 54, 55 ; refuses to leave him, 59.
- GUYER, GUYRE, provost of Bordeaux, 15, 62 ; pilgrim to Holy Sepulchre, 209 ; a hundred years old, 209 ; tells Huon of his family, 210 ; Gerames' brother, 211 ; with Huon at Rome, 215 ; at Bordeaux, 218 ; hated by Gerard, 226.
- GUYMART OF PUYLLE (Apulia), becomes Emperor of Rome in Croissant's absence, 740 ; learns of Croissant's return, 768 ; takes food to Croissant, 770 ; sees treasure at the old palace, 771 ; is bidden to distribute three besants to poor, 772-3 ; restores crown to Croissant and dies, 775, 782.
- GUYNEMER, earl of St. Omer, 100.
- GWYN-ARAUN, a Welsh fairy, xxx.
- GYBOUARS, 219 ; Gylberde, duke of Cecyll [Sicily], a traitor, 53 ; promises to outwit Huon, 221 ; lays ambush for Huon, 223 ; binds Huon, 229 ; kills abbot of Mauryse, 233 ; seizes Huon's treasure, 234 ; makes his cousin abbot of Mauryse, *ib.* ; with Gerard at

Paris, 235 ; confirms Gerard's lies, 239 ; proved guilty by Gerard's confession, 263 ; is hanged, 265.

GYRARD. See GERARD.

HABOUREY, Huon's messenger, 342-3.

HARRY OF ST. OMER, a peer of France, 251.

HASTINGS, Lord George, earl of Huntingdon, encourages Lord Berners to translate *Huon*, liv.

HELYE. See SEBYLLE.

HENRY VIII., patron of Lord Berners, xli, xlii.

HILDEBERT, a German duke, protects Esclaramonde, 533.

HUNGARY, king of, Clariet's suitor, 607.

HUON OF BORDEAUX, son of Sevin and Aclis (*q. v.*), *chanson de geste* about, xxiv ; historical foundation for his story, xxviii ; growth of romance, xxxii ; its supplements, xxxiii ; printed in French prose, xxxvii ; French play about, xxxviii ; first English translation, xxxix ; its popularity, xlviii, xlix ; English play of, xlix ; bibliography of Lord Berners' romance about, liii, 791 ;—owns Bordeaux, but does no homage to the Emperor, 5 ; summoned to Paris, 5 ; starts for Paris, 15 ; comes upon Charlot, 19 ; sees Gerard fall, 20 ; challenges Charlot, 23 ; kills Charlot, 24 ; sets Gerard on Charlot's horse, 24 ; goes to the Emperor's court, 25 ; tells of Charlot's treachery, 26—30 ; defends himself from Amaury's charge of murder, 34 ; accepts Amaury's challenge, 37 ; swears on relics before fighting, 39 ; fights and slays Amaury, 42-4 ; is sentenced to banishment by Charlemagne, 45 ; complains of this injustice, 46 ; is ordered to go on a perilous mission to Babylon, 49 ; sets out on his journey, 51 ; arrives at Rome, 54 ; at Brandys, 56 ; is joined there by Garyn, 58 ; visits Jerusalem and Calvary, 59 ; meets Gerames, 60 ; sees Oberon, 65 ; refuses to speak to him, 67 ; runs from him, 69 ; marvels at his beauty, 71 ; speaks to him, 72 ; receives of Oberon a rich banquet, 74-5 ; drinks of Oberon's magic cup, 77 ; is given the cup and the ivory horn, 77 ; mistrusts their magic power, 79 ; blows the horn recklessly, 80 ; is cursed and forgiven by Oberon, 81 ; at Tormont, 82 ; lodges with the provost, 84 ; gives a great supper to 4000 poor men, 84-6 ; his cup works a miracle, 86 ; invites Macaire to supper, 88 ; goes with Macaire to

his castle, 90; is saved from Macaire's murderous plot, 90-1; is besieged by Macaire, 92-3; sounds his horn, 94; kills Macaire, 95; is aided by Oberon, 95; leaves Tormont, 97; approaches the tower of Dunother, 98; rouses the giant, 103; tells him his history, 104; dons the giant's magic armour, 106; fights with the giant, 108; kills him and takes his tower, 109; leaves his company there, 110; carried by Malabron up the Nile, 112; reaches Babylon, 113; tells a lie, 114; reaches the admiral's garden, 116; blows his horn, 118; kills a paynim king, 120; shows Gaudys a ring, *ib.*; is well received and thrice kisses Esclaramonde, *ib.*; informs Gaudys of his mission, 122; fights with his men, *ib.*; kills his nephew, 123; is seized, *ib.*; is sent to prison, 124; is visited by Esclaramonde, 126; reproaches her with being a Saracen, *ib.*; is kept without food, *ib.*; is reconciled to Esclaramonde, 127; is reported to be dead, 128; overhears his companions talk in the prison, 134; reveals himself to them, 135; sees Gerames daily, 138-9; is invited to fight the giant Agrapart, 144; agrees to do so, 145; defies Agrapart, 147; conquers him, 148; invites Gaudys to become a Christian, 151; summons Oberon, 152; kills Gaudys, 153; obtains trophies from Gaudys, *ib.*; is warned by Oberon against intercourse with Esclaramonde before marriage at Rome, 154; sets out with Esclaramonde for Rome, 155; cannot resist temptation, *ib.*; is wrecked alone with Esclaramonde on an island, 157; begs bread of pirates, 158; is threatened by them, 159; is left alone by them, bound hand and foot, 160; is on the isle of Noisant, 166; is helped by Malabron, 168; is carried by him to the mainland, 169; meets Mouflet, a minstrel, who gives him food and clothes, 170; gives a lying account of himself, 171; calls himself Salater, 172; becomes servant of Mouflet, 173; goes to Mombraunt, 174; is asked by Ivoryn what he can do, 177, 178; is challenged to play chess with Ivoryn's daughter, 178; is loved by her, 179; wins the game, 180; refuses the advantage of his victory, *ib.*; begs for horse and armour to fight for Ivoryn, 181; obtains a magic sword and a poor horse, 182; accepts Sorbryn's challenge, 185; kills Sorbryn and seizes his horse Blanch-

ardin, 187; helps Ivoryn to defeat Galaffer, 188; is feasted by Ivoryn, 189; leads a second attack on Galaffer, 196; attacks Gerames fighting on the other side, 198; is forced to the ground, 199; recognizes Gerames, *ib.*; meets Esclaramonde, 200; is attacked by Ivoryn and Galaffer in concert, 203; hears Mouflet call on his aid from the gallows, 205; with his companions dashes out of the castle and kills the hangman, 205; fights valiantly against the Saracen, 206; receives French pilgrims at Anfalerne, 208; learns from Guyer of his family, 210; purposes to return to France in the pilgrims' ship, 212; with all his company sets sail for France and arrives at Brendys, 213; goes to church, 214; tells the wife of Garyn of St. Omers of her husband's death, 214; at Rome, 215; welcomed by the Pope, 216; is married to Esclaramonde, 217; leaves Rome for Bordeaux, 218; sees Gerard, his brother, 223; tells him of his trophies and treasures, 224; regrets that his brother should have Gybouars for father-in-law, 225; sleeps with Gerard, 226; is roused by Gerard at cock-crow to go on to Bordeaux, 227; resolves to visit the Emperor, 228; promises Gerard half of his treasure, 229; is wrathful with his brother because he wants more, *ib.*; conciliates Gerard, 230; is attacked by Gybouars in ambush, *ib.*; is bound, *ib.*; is brought to Bordeaux, 231; cast into prison, 232; is brought before the Emperor, who visits Bordeaux, 243; accuses his brother of treachery, 244; tells the story of his journey, 244-5; and of his return, 246-8; challenges Gerard and Gybouars, 248; learns of Oberon's intervention, 258; drinks from Oberon's enchanted cup, 260; pleads for his brother's life, 264; is promised by Oberon the kingdom of the fairies, 266; receives his lords' homage, 274; hangs Angelars, who defies him, 275; is envied by Raoul of Austrich, 279; learns of Raoul's plots against his life from an old servant, 279; sets out to Mayence to slay the traitor, 280; receives Raoul in disguise, 282; comes to Coleyn for a tournament, 284; leaves his escort behind and rides to Mayence, 285; visits the Emperor and Raoul in the palace, 286; puts his case without mentioning names to the Emperor, 287; kills Raoul in the Emperor's presence, 288; resists the attempt of the

Germans to arrest him, 289-90; strikes down the Emperor, 292; escapes, 293; meets his company at Coleyn, 295; has 13,000 men with him, 296; prepares for battle in a wood near Coleyn, 297; fights valiantly, *ib.*; meets the Emperor, and reproaches him, 299; overcomes the Emperor in a duel, 300-1; grants six months' truce, 303; is attacked in mistake by the burghers of Coleyn, 304; pardons the provost of Coleyn, 307; returns to Bordeaux, *ib.*; relates his adventures to his wife, 307-9; declines to seek aid of Salybraunt, 311; complains of Oberon's neglect, 313; summons his men, 316; begs Gerames' aid, 317; prepares a sortie, 319; fights valiantly, 320; attacks the Emperor, 323; retires to Bordeaux, 323; sees the gallows set up for Gerames, 327; prepares a rescue, 328; sees Gerames on the scaffold, 331; slays the hangman, 332; rescues Gerames, 333; spares Sir Otho, 334; repulses the Germans, 334, 338-9; pursued by Germans, who enter Bordeaux, 335; spares the lives of 500 prisoners, 336; finds his force dwindles, 341; sues for peace in vain, 342; makes sudden sortie, 344; strikes the Emperor, 346; loses more men, 348; despairs, 349; resolves to seek aid in the East, 350; seizes the German herds, 351; will slay Esclaramonde's brother if he will not be christened, 353; is confessed by the bishop of Bordeaux, and receives a hallowed stool, 355; takes his knights with him, *ib.*; sails down the Garonne, 356; takes ship for Anfamie, 358; encounters storms, 359; approaches the gulf of hell, 361; prepares for death, 362; speaks with Judas, 364-7; hurries from the gulf of hell, 367; approaches the rock Adamant, 368; longs to attack the castle, 371; is warned of its dangers, 372; desires to fight with the serpent in the castle, 375; attacked by Saracens, 376; loses many knights, 378; slays many Saracens, 378; alone of his company survives famine, 379; visits the Adamant castle, 380; slays the serpent, 382; marvels at the castle's splendour, 383; and eats fruit in the garden, 385; finds feeble sustenance there, 407; discovers a marvellous cellar, 408; sees four fairies, 409; obtains from them meat and drink, 410; enjoys every luxury, 412; sees Moorish ship on Adamant rock, 414; promises Moors safety, if converted to Christianity, 417; receives

the bishop of Lisbon, an old friend, 419 ; grows weary of inactivity, 425 ; perceives the griffin, 426 ; confessed by the bishop of Lisbon, 428 ; is carried off by the griffin, pretending to be dead, 429 ; at the white rock, 430 ; attacks and slays the griffin and her young, 431-3 ; bathes in the fountain of youth, 434 ; eats of the apples of youth, *ib.* ; is bidden by an angel to gather these apples, 436 ; learns of the fate of Bordeaux from the angel, 436-7 ; leaves the rock, 439 ; finds a rich ship, *ib.* ; passes through a dark passage in the rocks, 441 ; lands at Tauris in Persia, 443 ; meets Barnard, 447 ; finds the ballast of his ship to be precious stones, 448 ; well received by the admiral of Tauris, 456 ; gives the admiral an apple of youth, 465 ; is promised the aid of the admiral of Tauris, 470 ; leaves Tauris with the admiral, 471 ; at Angore, 472 ; fights against the men of the city, 475 ; kills the admiral, 476 ; conquers the city, 477 ; coasts by Abylaunte, 478 ; reaches an evil port, 480 ; ascends a mountain above, 483 ; meets Cain, 484 ; learns Cain's history, and abandons him, 487 ; meets an awful fiend, 489 ; pretends to be Cain, 491 ; is treated well by the fiend, *ib.* ; at Colanders, 492 ; meets the admiral of Tauris and Barnard again, 495 ; travels to Antioch, 498 ; and Damascus, 499 ; and goes on to Jerusalem, 500 ; advises a forward attack on the Saracens at Rames, 503 ; kills five kings and two admirals, 508 ; kills the admiral of Dorbrys, 511 ; attacks the sultan Saphadim, 514 ; is hard beset, and is rescued, 516 ; returns to Acre, 519 ; has a vision of trouble at Mayence, 520 ; anxious to go to Esclaramonde, 522 ; advises a return of the admiral of Tauris' troops, 523 ; resolves to return to Europe, 525 ; at Marseilles, 528 ; visits Cluny disguised as a pilgrim from Jerusalem, 547 ; sees Clariet, 548 ; reveals himself, to the joy of all, and tells his adventures, 551 ; offers the abbot an apple of youth, 553 ; brings his men and wealth from Tournois to Cluny, 557 ; goes with Barnard to Mayence, 559 ; is the first pilgrim to approach the Emperor on Good Friday, 560 ; gives him a precious stone, 561 ; is promised the release of Esclaramonde, 565 ; tells his adventures, 566 ; gives the Emperor an apple of youth, 568 ; and meets Esclaramonde, 570 ; with his wife and Emperor goes to Cluny,

572; beats back abbot's men, 576; and enters Bordeaux, 578; sends the griffin's foot to King Louis, 583; sets out for fairyland, 583; driven into Spanish Sea, 585; shipwrecked near a beautiful castle, where monks live who are evil angels, 588; is preserved by magic stones, 593; carried by a monk to a high rock, 595; reaches Oberon's city of Momur, 597; is crowned king of fairyland by Oberon, 600; threatens to enforce obedience on King Arthur, 602; gives Arthur parts of his realm, 603; attends Oberon's funeral, 606; comes with fairy army to Courtois to arrange dispute between the kings of Navarre and Arragon, and to marry Florence to his daughter Clariet, 676-82; meets Clariet, 684; makes good all damage done by war, 687; returns to Momur, 689.

IDE, daughter of Florence and Clariet, born, 690; of great beauty, 692; sought in marriage by Florence, her own father, 694; escapes in man's apparel, 697; helped by Sorbare, 700; goes to Germany, 702; attacked by thieves, 705; at Rome salutes Emperor, 708; mistaken for a man, 709; attends Emperor's daughter Olive, 710; is knighted, 712; leads Emperor's army against Spaniards, 714; does deadly slaughter, 716; takes king of Spain prisoner, 718; pleads for his life, 719; declines to marry Olive, 721; yields to threats, 722; married to Olive, 724; sex discovered, and sent to stake, 728; sex miraculously changed, 729; crowned Emperor, 730; visits Florence at Courtois, 737; helps Florence to rule, 737.

ISOUDE, xxvii, loved by Tristram, 157.

IVORYN OF MOMBRAUNTE, 131; uncle of Esclaramonde, 161; learns of her and of her father's fortune, 163; sends to take Esclaramonde from Galaffer, 164; is defied, and prepares for war upon Galaffer, 165; summons his men of war, 174; swears vengeance, 175; receives Mouflet the minstrel, and Huon his servant, 176; asks Huon what is his capacity, 177; makes trial of his knowledge of chess by bidding him play with his daughter, 178; leads his troops to Anfalerne, 183; applauds Huon for slaying Sorbryn, 187; defeats Galaffer, 188; honours and feasts Huon, 189; leads second attack on Anfalerne, 197; sees Huon follow Gerames into Anfalerne, 199; urges his men to rescue Huon, 200; receives

- Galaffer's submission, 201; fights with Galaffer against Huon, 203; condemns Mouflet to death, 204; learns of Huon's flight, 213; enters the castle of Anfalerne, 214.
- IVORYN's daughter loves Huon, 179; plays chess with him, 180; watches the fight, 196.
- IYACARS, son of Earl Remon of St. Giles, plots to murder Croissant, 745, 754; is killed, 756.
- JAMES, St., 28.
- JERACLE, son of Ivoryn, 132.
- JOHN, St., feast of, 124, 132.
- JOYEUSE, Charlemagne's sword, xii.
- JOZERANE, German knight killed by Huon, 322.
- JUDAS ISCARIOT, 459; kisses Jesus, 52, 223; floats on canvas by gulf of hell, 363; recounts his history, 364-5; cannot die, 366; once gave away piece of canvas in charity, *ib.*; warns Huon of peril, 367.
- JULIUS CÆSAR. *See* CÆSAR.
- KATHARINE, Guymart's daughter, marries Croissant, 782.
- LEMPATRIX, a fairy, 66.
- LEWIS, LOYS, LOWIS, Charlemagne's younger son, 4; succeeds as Emperor, 388; receives griffin's foot from Huon, 583.
- LISBON, bishop of, wrecked on Adamant rock, 416; recognizes Huon, 419; is free from sin, 421; eats at pleasure in Adamant castle, 422; baptizes Saracens, *ib.*; warns Huon of griffin, 428.
- LOHERAINS, *LES*, a romance where Huon mentioned, xxviii.
- LYLY, JOHN, and Euphuism, 785.
- MACAIRE, MACAYR, Huon's uncle, brother of Sevin, tyrant of Tor-mont, 81; is a pagan, 83; longs for Huon's magic cup, 87; threatens Huon, *ib.*; recognizes him as his nephew, 89; invites him to his castle, *ib.*; plots to murder Huon, 90-1; is driven from castle, and besieges Huon there, 92. [There is a *chanson* named *Macaire* (twelfth cent.), whose hero charges Charlemagne's queen Blanche fleur with adultery.]
- MAHOUNDE, 133, *et passim*; Macomyte, 477; Mahomet, 500.
- MALABRON, MALLABRON, a man transformed by Oberon into a sea beast, 111; bears Huon up the Nile, 112; begs Oberon to let him
- CHARL. RÔM. XII.

aid Huon, 167; condemned to be sea monster twenty-eight years longer, 167-8; swims to Huon at Noisaunt, and brings him to mainland, 169; at Bordeaux, 267; accompanies fairy Gloriande, 598, 677.

MÆCUS AURELIUS, *Book of*, translated by Lord Berners, xlv, 784.

MARGALE, a fairy, 65.

MARKHAM, GERVASE, quoted, xlix, 790.

MAURYSE, abbot of, welcomes Huon, 219; invites Huon and Gerard to supper, 225; keeps Huon's treasure, *ib.*; is killed by Gerard and Gybouars while guarding the treasure, 233.

MERES, FRANCIS, quoted, xlviii.

MERLIN, MARLYN, son of Ogier the Dane, accompanies King Arthur to Oberon's court, 601.

MORGAN LE FAY at Oberon's court, 536; sister of King Arthur, 601, 684.

MOUFLET, a minstrel, 170; helps Huon, 171; served Gaudys, 172; takes Huon as his servant, 173; at Mombraunt, 174; tells Ivoryn of Gaudys' death, 175; plays the viol before Ivoryn, *ib.*; is well rewarded, 176; celebrates Huon's victories, 190; is condemned to be hanged for befriending Huon, 204; is saved by Huon, 205; plays before Huon, 207; in France, 213; baptized by Pope, 217; is called Garyn, *ib.*

NAIMES, NAYMES, Duke of Bavaria. [A character invariably introduced into Charlemagne romances. According to *Aubri le Bourgoing*, he is son of Gasselin, king of Bavaria; is protected from an usurper, Cassile or Tassillon, by Charlemagne; in *Roland*, *Aspremont*, and *Acquin* he plays great part as friend of the Emperor; in the *Voyage à Jerusalem* he first appears as one of 'les douze pairs'; in the *Anseis de Carthage* (late poem) his death is recounted. He is the Nestor of the Charlemagne cycle; cp. *Aspremont*, 'Tel conseiller n'orent ongues li Franc.'] Survivor of Roncesvalles, 2; chief of Charlemagne's council, 3; complains of Amaury's guile, 6, 12; seeks to comfort Charlemagne, 32; prepares duel between Huon and Amaury, 38; reproaches Emperor, 41; intercedes for Huon, 47; with Huon at Troyes, 52; declines Gerard's offer of treasure, 235; suspects Gerard, 238; denounces him, 239;

urges Emperor to send for Huon, 249; declares Huon cannot be tried at Bordeaux, 255; drinks from Oberon's enchanted cup, 261.

NAVARRÉ, king of, fights against king of Aragon, 633; taken by Florence, 644; released, 647; enters Tarragon, 660; besieges king of Arragon at Courtois, 676; accepts Huon's intervention, 681; makes peace, 685; visits Florence, 701.

NEPTANABUS, father of Alexander the Great, 73.

NORTH, *Sir Thomas, and Euphuism*, 785-8.

OBERON, king of fairyland, his literary history traced, xxix; compared with Welsh Gwyn and German Alberich, xxx; his genealogy criticized, xxxi; *Le Roman d'Auberon*, xxxiii; Wieland's poem of, xxxviii; in *Midsummer Night's Dream*, 1; Weber's opera about, li;—besets the road to Babylon, 63; the dwarf king of fairyland, *ib.*; is seen by Huon, 65; blows his magic horn, 66, 70; speaks to Huon, 67; raises a storm, 67, 69; attacks him, 70; recites Huon's adventures, 71; tells his history, 72-3; king of Momur, 74; gives Huon a magic banquet, 74-5; his magic cup, 76; gives Huon the cup and horn, 77-8; makes a path through water for Huon, 78; is recklessly summoned by Huon, 80; curses him, *ib.*; forgives him, 81; foretells peril for Huon, and bids him farewell, 82, 96, 154, 267; comes to Tormont, to protect Huon, 94; is angry with Huon, 118; comes to Huon's aid in killing the Admiral Gaudys, 152; places Huon's trophies gained from Gaudys in Gerames' side, 153; warns Huon against having intercourse with Esclaramonde till their marriage at Rome, 154; gives him a ship, *ib.*; laments Huon's misfortunes, 166; bids Malabron fetch him Huon's horn, cup, and harness, 169; pities Huon's misfortunes in France, 257; appears before Charlemagne with 100,000 men, 258-9; wills the fetters to fall from Huon, 259; offers the king his enchanted cup, 260; charges Charlemagne with crime, *ib.*; rebukes the Emperor, 261; bids Gerard appear, *ib.*; orders the objects of Huon's mission to appear before Charlemagne, 264; is mistaken by Charlemagne for God. 265; recites his history, *ib.*; bids Huon come to Momur in four years' time, 266; promises him the kingdom of fairyland, *ib.*; tells of his going to Paradise, 267; laments over Huon, 273-4;

- grieves for his father Julius Cæsar's death, 412; will never come to castle of Adamant afterwards, *ib.*; sends Gloriande and Malabron to save Esclaramonde, 536-8; sick at Momur, 597; receives Huon as his successor, 598; crowns Huon king and Esclaramonde queen of fairyland, 600; welcomes King Arthur, 601; makes peace between Huon and Arthur, 602; dies, 605; is carried to Paradise, is buried in a new abbey, 606; sets treasure in old palace at Rome for Croissant, 780.
- OGIER THE DANE, subject of *chanson de geste*, xiii *n.*, xv *n.*; father of Baudouyn, 4; kills Bertrand, Naymes' son, 33; destroyed city of Colanders, 489; father of Merlin, 601.
- OLIVE, Roman Emperor's daughter, falls in love with Ide, 709; is betrothed to Ide, 721; married, 724; discovers Ide's sex, 726; is delivered of son, Croissant, 730.
- OLIVER, xii; death of, 2.
- OLYFARNE, king of, killed by Huon, 511.
- ORCANEEY, admiral of, brother of the Sowdone, killed by Huon, 511.
- ORTNIT, a German Emperor, xxx, xxxi.
- ORYANE, a fairy, 684.
- OTHO, Emperor of Germany at Rome, 702; accepts Ide's service, 709; knights Ide, 712; applauds Ide's prowess, 717; spares king of Spain, 718; insists on Ide's marriage to Olive, 721; learns Ide's sex, 727; orders Ide to be burned, 728; dies, 729.
- OTHON, a German knight, ordered to hang Gerames and French prisoners, and pleads for delay, 329; rebukes the hangman for insulting Gerames, 331; is spared by Huon, 333; agrees to serve Huon, *ib.*; fights well, 334; supports Gerames, 393.
- OTINEL, or OTUEL, a *chanson de geste*, xviii *n.*, xix, xx.
- PETER, St., church of, at Rome, 54.
- PETER (Sir) of Aragon, 621; rescues Clariet at Tours, 622; kills king of Grenade, 623; brings Clariet to Tarragona, 624; leads men against king of Navarre, 634; rescues Clariet from drowning, 640; threatens king of Aragon, 642; pleads for watchman who released Clariet and Florence, 655.
- PHILIP, king of France, hangs up Huon's griffin's foot in a chapel, 583.

- POMPEY, fights with Cæsar, 73, 265 ; vanquished by Cæsar, 411.
- POPE OF ROME, Huon's uncle, receives Huon, 54, 216 ; baptizes Esclaramonde and Mouflet, 216 ; marries Huon and Esclaramonde, 217.
- PTOLEMY kings of Egypt attack Cæsar at Adamant : their treasure, 411.
- RAOUL, duke of Austria, hears of Esclaramonde's beauty, 276-7 ; nephew of German Emperor, 278 ; begs his uncle to announce tournament, 278 ; plots Huon's death, 279 ; visits Bordeaux disguised as pilgrim, 281 ; lies to Huon, 282 ; deeply in love with Esclaramonde, 283 ; at Mayence, *ib.* ; is abused by Huon of coveting his wife, 288 ; is slain by Huon, 289.
- RAUF COILZEAR, an English poem, xix, xx.
- REMON, Earl of St. Giles, besieged at Nice by kings of Grenade and Belmarye, 741 ; accepts Croissant's help, 742 ; offers his daughter to Croissant, 745, 753 ; threatens to murder Croissant, 759.
- RENAUD DE MONTAUBAN, a chanson de geste, xiii, xix *n.*, xx.
- REYNAULTE OF BEAULAND takes Sorbare, 668.
- REYNGAULTE OF MOUNTABAN wins and loses Angore, 472-3.
- RICHAR, a knight of Huon, 341.
- ROLAND, *chanson of*, x ; its authorship, xvii, xxi ; death of, 2.
- ROLAND AND VERNAGU, xviii, xx.
- ROUSILLON, GERARD of. *See* GERARD.
- ROWLANDE'S SONG, an English poem, xix.
- SALAMON, temple of, 500.
- SALATER, false name assumed by Huon, 172.
- SALMET, JOHAN, an incredulous monk, 553 ; sent to prison, and is pardoned, 555.
- SALYBRAUNT, king of Bougye, brother of Esclaramonde, offers Huon aid, 310.
- SAPHADIN, Sowdan of Babylon and Egypt, 500.
- SAVARY, Earl, killed by Huon, 298.
- SAVARY OR SAVORY, duke, father of Raoull, 315 ; brother of Emperor of Germany weeps over his son's death, 315 ; before Bordeaux, 319 ; fights with Huon, 321 ; is defeated, 322 ; retreats from an

- ttack, 339; believes Bordeaux impregnable, 340; urges Thierry o persist with siege, 390; falls on Gerames, 395.
- SEBYLLE meets Huon at Dunother, 98; daughter of Guynemer of St. Omer, and niece of Duke Sevin, 100; her history, *ib.*; directs Huon to the giant's chamber, 102; is married to a converted admiral of Babylon, 154.
- SEGE OF MELAYNE, an English romance, xviii.
- SEVIN or SÉGUIN, duke, his historical origin, xxviii, xxix; in romance, xxxvii; Huon's father, 5, 12, 13, 17, 23, 59, 61.
- SEYNE, Earl of, slain by Huon, 291.
- SEZAR, 73. *See* CÆSAR, JULIUS.
- SORBARE, Saracen ruler and reputed Christian, takes care of Florence and Clariet, 666; once king of Belmaryn, 668; offers to become Christian, 669; welcomes French pilgrims, 670; attacked by Saracens, 673; overcomes them, 674; advises Florence, 693; helps Ide to escape, 700.
- SORBRYN, nephew of Angolaffer, 184; challenges Ivoryn's bravest soldier, 185; is defied by Huon, 186; and killed, 187.
- SOWDONE, *i. e.* Sultan. *See* GAUDYS and SAPHADIN.
- SOWDONE OF BABYLON, an English romance, xviii n.
- SPAIN, king of, fights against Emperor of Rome, 714; is captured by Ide, 718; his life spared, 719.
- SPERGUER, Sir Hans, a German knight, 291.
- SYMCAH, temple of, 500.
- TAURIS, admiral of, welcomes Huon, 456; has served Charlemagne, 459; consents to turn Christian, 463; eats apple of youth, and grows young, 465; hallowed by bishop of Greece, 466; offers Huon his daughters in marriage, 467; promises to help in rescue of Esclaramonde, 469; with Huon against the admiral of Angore, 475; gets the admiral's horse, 477; is left by Huon, 480; at Colanders, 489; besieges the city, 493; conquers it, and finds Huon, 495; at Antioch, 498; marches to Jerusalem, 499; defeats Saracens there, 505-18; raises siege of Acre, 525; offers army to Huon against German Emperor, 525.
- THIERRY, Duke, 23.
- THIERRY, TYRREY, Emperor of Germany, declares tournaments at

Mayence, 278, 284 ; appealed to by Huon, 287 ; sees Huon murder Raoull, 288 ; pursues him, 291 ; is struck by him, 292 ; swears to take Bordeaux, 293 ; leads his army against Huon, 297 ; challenges Huon, 300 ; is defeated and rescued, 301 ; begs six months' truce, 302 ; at Cologne, 303 ; censures the provost for ignoring truce, 305 ; collects army at Mayence, 314 ; ravages land about Bordeaux, 317 ; before the city, 318 ; promises Esclaramonde to the slayer of Huon, 320 ; wounded by Huon, 323 ; orders Gerames to be hanged, 326 ; orders another attack on city, 338 ; declines peace, 343 ; attacks Bordeaux, 389 ; runs Gerames through the body, 396 ; enters Bordeaux, 398 ; forbids outrage, *ib.* ; speaks with Esclaramonde, 400 ; imprisons her at Mayence, 406 ; grieves for his nephew, 532 ; prepares to burn Esclaramonde, *ib.* ; spares her by Oberon's order, 542 ; treats her well, 543 ; receives precious stone from Huon, 561 ; releases Esclaramonde, 565 ; eats Huon's apple and becomes young, 568 ; at Cluny met Huon, 572 ; entertained at Bordeaux, 578.

THOLOMEUS, 411. *See* PTOLEMY.

THYBAULT, THYBAULTE, king of Jerusalem, 500, 502.

TRAMPOYNGFLE, TRAMPONGNIFLE, TRAMPOIGNIFLE ['the which is as moch to say as Balaach Balak'], messenger from the Sowdan at Jerusalem, 500 ; is hanged, 520.

TRANSLYNE, TRANSELYNE, a fairy, 66, 601, 602, 603, 606, 684 ; her gift to Oberon, 73 ; niece of Morgan le Fay, 536.

TROYES, CHRETIEN DE, poet, xiv.

TRYSTRAM, xxvii ; died of love, 157.

TURPIN, his *Latin chronicle*, viii n., xx.

VERGIER, lord of, 530 ; kills the German Emperor's nephew, 531.

X. GLOSSARY.¹

THE following words occurring in the text are clearly typographical errors:—

- p. 28, l. 13, *puysson read punysyon, i. e. punishment.*
 p. 81, l. 16, *reuynsyd read renynsyd, i. e. renounced.*
 p. 223, l. 7, *ewiunyd read eniunyd, i. e. enjoined.*
 p. 305, l. 4, *asyse read aryse.*
 p. 430, l. 30, *repenissshed read replenissshed.*
 p. 596, l. 26, *stone read shone.*

A bought, *adv.* about, 372.
 A bowndance, *sb.* abundance, 367.
 A brode, *adv.* abroad, *sprede* abroad
 = spread out, 170.
 A hye, *adv.* aloud, 197.
 A pon, *prep.* upon, 5.
 A tournyd, *perf.* have turned, 149.
 Aboue, *adv.* on shore, 160. Cf. *Tor.*
of Portugal: 'Ffast from the land
 row they began, *Above* they left
 that gentilman, With wild bestis
 to have hyde.'
 Abusshement, *sb.* ambush, 225.
 Abye, *vb.* [buy], atone for, suffer for,
 542. [O.E. *a*, out, *byegan*, to buy.]
 Aduertysyd, *pp.* informed, 71. [Fr.
avertir.]
 Affectuosly, *adv.* earnestly, 9. [O.
 Fr. *affectueux*.]
 Afrayed, *ppl.* alarmed, 40.
 Al to brast, burst utterly asunder,
 300; al = utterly, entirely to
 brast, *pt. ppl.* = burst asunder,
 from *tobresten* [A.S. *toberstan*];
 to is a prefix signifying 'in pieces'
 or 'asunder.' Cf. *Judges* ix. 53:
 'all to brake' = utterly brake in
 pieces.
 All wheres, *adv.* everywhere, 136.

Almayne, *sb.* Germany, 296. [O.Fr.
alemaigne.]
 Almayns, *sb. pl.* Germans.
 Alonely, *adj.* solitary, single, 46.
 Alonlye, *adv.* solely, entirely;
 emph. for only, 9.
 Alow, *vb.* commend, approve of, 337.
 [O.Fr. *alouer*, from Lat. *allau-*
dare.]
 Alowed, *pt.* commended, praised,
 686.
 Amoures, *sb.* love, 155; in amoures
 = in love. [Fr. *amour*.]
 Amyte, *sb.* friendship, 8. [Fr. *amitié*.]
 Apareyled, *ppl.* attired, apparelled,
 15.
 Apayred, *ppl.* injured, weakened,
 340. [O.Fr. *empeirer*, from Lat.
em + *pejorare*, to worsen, make
 worse.]
 Apeace, *vb.* appease, allay, 14.
 Apealyde, *pt.* accused, impeached,
 22; v. APELE.
 Apeasyd, *ppl.* appeased, allayed, 16.
 Apeched, *ppl.* betrayed, informed
 against, 720. [O.F. *empechier*.]
 Apelo, *vb.* accuse, impeach, 25. [O.
 Fr. *appeler*.] 'appeler, . . . to
 accuse, appeach.'—*Cotgrave*.

¹ This part of the work is largely due to Mr. W. H. Utley of Owen's College, Manchester. Mr. Henry Bradley, co-editor of the Oxford *New Dictionary*, has kindly supplied a few notes.

Aperelyd, *ppl.* apparelled, 3.
 Aperteynynd, *vb.* belonged, 4.
 Apeychyd, *pt.* accused, impeached, 27.

Apon, *prep.* upon, 169.

Appellyd, *pp.* 44; v. APEALYDE.

Arson, *sb.* pounnell, saddle-bow, 700. [O.Fr. *arzon*.]

Assaye, *vb.* try, test, 178.

Assembeled, *pt.* attacked, assailed, 613. [O.Fr. *assembler*.] This meaning is very rare, and Murray's New English Dictionary cites this passage only in support of it. It occurs also on p. 659, l. 20.

Assoylled, *pt.* absolved, 217. [O. Fr. *a(s)soillir*, *a(s)soldre*.]

Asspyall, *sb.* [espial], a waylaying, 26. [O.Fr. *espier*.] 'espier, . . . to dog, lie for, waylay.'—*Cotgr.*

Astonnyd, *pp.* stunned, 42. [O.Fr. *estoner*, to stun.] 'He fell to the grounde *astonyed*.'—*Merlin*, x. 164.

Astaynst, *prep.* against, 108.

Atemperate, *adj.* temperate, 712. [O.Fr. *atempéré*.]

Atons, *adv.* at once, 431.

Auaunsyd, *pt.* advanced, 308.

Auaunt, *sb.* boast, 308; he made his avaunt = he boasted. [O.Fr. *avaunter*, to boast.]

Auayle, *vb.* lower, 359. [O.Fr. *avalier*, from phr. *à val*, Lat. *ad vallem*.] 'Drawe vp your ankers and *auayle* your sayles.'—*Lord Berners*, *Froiss.* I. ccclxxiv., 619.

Auctoryte, *sb.* authority, power, 581. [O.Fr. *auctorité*.]

Auow, *sb.* vow, 183.

Auoyd, *vb.* depart, 48. ' . . . he commanded them to *auoid*.'—G. Sandys, *Trav.*, 72.

Avoydyd, *pp.* emptied, cleared, 40. ' . . . commanded the chambre to be *avoided*.'—*Elyot*, *Gov.*, II. vii. 105.

Balays, *vb.* balance, steady, 460; i. e. ballast. [*Balays* is an intermediate form between *balance*, Fr. *balancer* and *ballast*, O.Sw.

barlast, due to confusion between the two.]

Baptyme, *sb.* baptism, 95. [Fr. *baptême*.]

Bassade, *sb.* embassy, 466. [O.Fr. *embassade*.]

Bayne, *sb.* bath, 698. [O.Fr. *baigne*.]

Baynyd, *pt.* bathed, 427.

Beofes, *sb.* beeves, cattle, 183. [O. Fr. *boef*.]

Besant, *sb.* 772. 'A gold coin, first struck at *Byzantium*, and seemingly equivalent to the Roman *solidus* or *aureus*, but afterwards varying in value between the English sovereign and half-sovereign. It was current in Europe from the 9th cent., and in England till superseded by the noble, *temp.* Edw. III. Used by Wyclif to translate both *talentum* and *drachma*.'—Murray.

Besene, *adj.* clad, furnished, 119, 680.

Bet, *pt.* beat, hammered, 86.

Borow, *sb.* town, borough, 336. [A.S. *burh*.]

Bountye, *sb.* goodness, generosity, 146. [Fr. *bonté*.]

Brast, *pt.* broke, burst, 103. [A.S. *brestan*.]

Brent, *pp.* burnt, 192. [brennen, Chaucer, C.T., 2333. A.S. *byrnan*.]

Brest, *vb.* burst, 117. [A.S. *berstan*.] 'So wolde God myn herte wolde brest.'—*Chaucer*, C. T., 6685.

Bresten, *pp.* burst, bursten, 69.

Bretherne, *sb. pl.* brethren, 56.

Brochyd, *pt.* spurred, 22. [O.F. *brocher*, to spur.] 'Ther lances alle forth laid and ilk man *broched* his stede.'—*Robert of Brunne*, p. 305.

Brother-germayn, a full brother; i. e. with same father and mother, 511. [O.Fr. *germaine*.]

Brunt, *sb.* attack, onset, 305. [Icel. *bruna*.]

Brute, *sb.* tumult, noise, 181. [Fr. *bruit*.]

Brydale, *sb.* bridal, wedding, 613. [M.E. *bride ale*, bride feast.]

Brydes, *sb. pl.* newly married couple, 217. [Here *bryde* = spouse.]

Brynynge, *prp.* burning, 103.
 Burden, *sb.* bundle, 760. [*I. e.* as much as can be borne.]
 Bushment, *sb.* ambuscade, ambush, 14.
 By cause, *conj.* because, 19.
 Camesyd, *adj.* flattened, 103; came-syd nose = a pug-nose. [*Fr. camus. Ital. camuso.*] 'And though my nose be *camused*, my lips thick.'—*Ben Jonson, Sad Shep.*, ii. 1. 'Round was his face & *camois* was his nose.'—*Chaucer, C. T.*, 3932.
 Carnall, *adj.* pertaining to the flesh, hence related, connected by birth, 333. 'Thei were noble knyghtes . . . and many of hem *carnell* frendes.'—*Merlin*, I. ii. 117.
 Caryag, *sb.* [carriage], things carried, baggage, accoutrements, 498. [*O. Fr. cariage.*] '*cariage* . . . all the necessary provision of an army, baggage.'—*Cotgrave*.
 Cassydony, *sb.* chalcedony, 440. [*Low Lat. cacedonius.*]
 Caytyfe, *sb.* [caitiff], prisoner, mean person, 645. [*O. Fr. caitif.*]
 Chameney, *sb.* [chimney], fire-place, 383. [*O. Fr. cheminée.*]
 Chatelyne, *sb.* castellan, governor of a castle or town, 493. [*Fr. châtelain.*]
 Chaumberer, *sb.* maid-servant, 623. [*O. Fr. chambrière.*]
 Chere, *sb.* face, countenance, 57. [*O. Fr. chere.*] 'The lady is rody in the *chere*.'—*Alisaunder*.
 Chorlysshely, *adv.* churlishly, 757.
 Chyualrey, *sb.* collective for a body or number of knights, 2.
 Clame, *pt.* of climb, 652.
 Clees, *sb. pl.* claws, 430. [*A.S. clá.*]
 Clene, *adv.* completely, 197.
 Clerke, *sb.* scholar, man of letters, 274.
 Clocher, *sb.* belfry, 68. [*Fr. clocher.*]
 Clypped, *pt.* embraced, 635. [*A.S. clýppen.*] ' . . . then again worries he his daughter, with *clipping* her.'—*Shakspeare, Winter's T.*, V. ii.

Colyke, *sb.* colic, 194.
 Comoned, *pt.* [communed], conversed, 195. [*O. Fr. communier.*]
 Companye, *vb.* associate, consort, 17. [*O. Fr. compaigner.*]
 Comunalte, *sb.* common people, 401. [*O. Fr. communaulté.*]
 Condempne, *pr.* condemn, 167.
 Condute, *vb.* conduct, 18.
 Connynge, *adj.* skilful, 172. [*A.S. cunnan.*]
 Contynew, *sb.* contents, 57. [*Fr. contenu.*]
 Conuersante, *adj.* resident, having one's abode, 592.
 Conynges, *sb.* skill, dexterity, 730.
 Corante, *adj.* current, in circulation, 364. [*O. Fr. curant.*]
 Coraunt, 52; v. CORANTE.
 Cordiners, *sb. pl.* shoemakers [= cordwainers, from *cordwain*, a kind of Spanish leather made at Cordova], 764.
 Cordyall, *adj.* affectionate, cordial, 721.
 Cosyn, *sb.* kinsman, cousin, 52.
 Coude, *vb.* could, 499.
 Couerte, *sb.* a covered place, hiding place, 636; by couerte = under cover, hiding. [*O. Fr. covert.*]
 Couetys, *sb.* covetousness, 251. [*O. Fr. covetise.*]
 Counsell, *vb.* to take counsel, consult, 3.
 Courteys, *adj.* courteous, 171. [*O. Fr. curteis.*]
 Couyn, *sb.* trick, artifice, 50. [*O. Fr. covine.*] 'They ne knewe his sleight and his *covyne*.'—*Chaucer, C. T.*, 605.
 Couytes, 320; v. COUETYS.
 Cōyfe, *sb.* [coif], a cap worn under the helmet, 715; a close fitting helmet, 24. [*O. Fr. coiffe.*]
 Creature, *sb.* creator, 436.
 Credens, *sb.* credit, 609. Cf. 'letters of credence.' [*O. Fr. credence.*]
 Crope, *sb.* [crop], back, *lit.* top, or that which sticks out, 169. [*A.S. crophe. Cf. Icel. kroppr*, a hump. Dan. *krop*, the trunk of the body.]
 Crye, *sb.* proclamation, 296.
 Crysten, *adj.* Christian, 83.

- Damoselles, *sb. pl.* maids, 540. [O. Fr. *damoisele*.]
 Dampned, *pp.* damned, 283; v. CONDEMPNED.
 Decessyd, *pp.* [deceased], dead, 54. [O. Fr. *decea*.]
 Dedes, *sb. pl.* deeds, 171.
 Defende, *vb.* forbid, 46. [Fr. *dé-fendre*.]
 Defowlyd, *pt.* [defiled], trod under foot, trampled on, 433. [O. Fr. *defouler*, to trample under foot.] '... defouled hym under hym myd honde and myd fote.'—*Rob. of Glouc.*
 Dele, *sb.* part, portion, 554. [A.S. *dæl*.]
 Denyd, *pp.* dined, 190. [Fr. *diner*.]
 Departed, *pp.* separated, 336. [O. Fr. *departir*, to distribute, separate.]
 Deuore, *sb.* duty, 46. [Fr. *devoir*.]
 Deuyses, *sb. pl.* conversation, 58. [Fr. *deviser*, to converse, chat.]
 Deuysyd, *pp.* proposed, planned, 7; conversed, 273.
 Deuysynge, *pp.* conversing, communing, 13; v. DEUYSES.
 Devours, *sb. pl.* duties, 300. [Fr. *devoirs*.]
 Dismay, *vb. reflex.* to be dismayed, 17; dismay you not = be not dismayed.
 Dolent, *adj.* sorrowful, 356. [Fr. *dolent*, doleful.]
 Dolour, *sb.* pain, suffering, 23. [O. Fr. *doleur*.]
 Damage, *sb.* misfortune, injury, 146. [Fr. *dommage*.]
 Doubled, *sb.* doublet, 757.
 Dought, *sb.* [doubt], fear, 9; v. DOUGHTED.
 Doughted, *sb.* [doubted], feared, 197. [In M.E. usually spelt *douted*, from Lat. *debitare*. Not connected with *doughty*, which is from A.S. *dyhtig*, valiant.]
 Douted, 335; v. DOUGHTED.
 Drams, *sb. pl.* drachmæ, 142.
 Dressed up, erected, set up, 744. [Fr. *dresser*, to erect, set up.]
 Durynge, *pp.* [during], enduring, 232. [Fr. *durer*, to endure, suffer.]
 Dymes, *sb. pl.* [dimes], tithes, *i. e.* offerings, 485. [O. Fr. *disme*; Lat. *decimus*.] 'He gaue hym dymes of alle thingis.'—*Wycliffe, Gen. xiv.* 20.
 Dyn, *pp.* [done], used for, 502; past tense, = did.
 Dysces, *sb.* decease, death, 603.
 Dysconfyt, *vb.* [discomfit], vanquish, 47. [O. Fr. *desconfire*.]
 Dyscounfyture, *sb.* discomfiture, defeat, 2. [O. Fr. *desconfiture*.]
 Dyscryue, *vb.* [describe], describe, 140. [O. Fr. *descrire*.]
 Dyshordenate, *adj.* [disordinate], unlawful, intemperate, 700. [Fr. *désordonné*.]
 Dysordynate, 696; v. DYSHORDENATE.
 Dysparasyon, *sb.* desperation, despair, 364.
 Dyspence, *sb.* expense, 718. [O. Fr. *despence*.]
 Dyssayue, *vb.* deceive, 69. [O. Fr. *decever*.]
 Dysspyse, *vb.* [despise], to make despicable, *i. e.* to curse, 42.
 Dyssymell, *vb.* [dissimule], to disguise, conceal, 254. [Fr. *dis-simuler*.]
 Dystroyed, *pp.* killed, 46.
 Enbassed, *sb.* [embassade], embassy, 740.
 Enbassetours, *sb. pl.* ambassadors, 740.
 Enbusshid, *pp.* ambushed, 222.
 Endroctryned, *pp.* [endocrined], educated, taught, 576.
 Enherytor, *sb.* [enheritor], heir, 4. [Fr. *héritier*.]
 Ensampl, *sb.* example, 12. [O. Fr. *ensample*.]
 Entarmedled, *pt.* mingled, 337. [O. Fr. *entremedler*.] 'Entremedled with tydynges.'—*Chaucer, House of Fame*, iii. 1031.
 Entraylyd, *pp.* interwoven, variegated, 384. [O. Fr. *entreiller*.]
 Entreated, *pp.* used, treated, 642. [O. Fr. *entraiter*.]
 Erytage, *sb.* heritage, inheritance, 143.
 Escryed, *pt.* cried out, called, 185. [O. F. *escrier*, to exclaim, call out.]
 Excusyd, *pp.* accused, 26.

- Extorsyon, *sb.* [extortion], forcible exaction, 47.
 Eyen, *sb. pl.* eyes, 13.
 Fal, *vb.* [fall], to become, to happen; fal aquaynted = become acquainted, 629.
 Falshede, *sb.* falsehood, 253. [O.Fr. *fals*.]
 Fardell, *sb.* bundle, 172. [O.Fr. *fardel*; Low Lat. *fardellus*.] '... sittynge with hise *fardels* in the street.'—*Wycliffe*, *Judges* xix. 17.
 Fause, *adj.* forced [of a gallop], 335.
 Faye, *sb.* fairy, 536; the Fr. *le* is here used for *the*. [O.Fr. *fae*.]
 Fayrye, *sb.* the nation of Fairies; Fairyland, also magic, enchantment, 305. [O.Fr. *faerie*.] 'The contree of *Faerie*.'—*Chaucer*, *C. T.*, 13731.
 Faysable, *adj.* feasible, possible, 731. [O.Fr. *faisable*.]
 Feactes, *sb. pl.* [feats], deeds, actions, 15. [O.Fr. *faictes*.]
 Fell, *adj.* fierce, 120. [A.S. *fel*.]
 Fellest, *adj. superl.* cruellest, 210. [A.S. *fel*, fierce.]
 Felon, *adj.* malicious, wicked, 5. [O.Fr. *felon*; Low Lat. *felo*, a traitor.]
 Felony, *sb.* treachery, perfidy, 4; v. FELON.
 Fersly, *adv.* fiercely, 23. [O.Fr. *fers*.]
 Fleynge, *pp.* fleeing, 181.
 Florence, *sb.* a gold coin, value 6s., 276.
 Folye, *pp.* foiled, defeated, 302. [O.Fr. *fouler*, to trample on.]
 Fordo, *vb.* undo, 487. [A.S. *fordan*.]
 Fournyshe, *vb.* [furnish], perform, 51. [Fr. *fournir*; O.H.G. *frumjan*, to perform.]
 Fre, *adj.* [free], noble, 273.
 Frendis, *sb. pl.* friends, 37.
 Fresshyng, *sb.* relief, 488.
 Fret, *adj.* adorned, ornamented, 259. [A.S. *frætwan*, to adorn.] 'Alle hir fyue fyngres were *fretted* with rynges.'—*P. Plowman*, A. ii. 11.
 Frusshe, *sb.* encounter, 474. [O.Fr. *fruisse*.] 'Felle was the *frusshe*, fey were there mony.'—*Destr. of Troy*, 5931.
 Funt, *sb.* font, 216.
 Fyaunce, *vb.* [fiance], betrothe, affianced, 50. [O.Fr. *fiauncer*.]
 Gables, *sb. pl.* imposts, customs, 210. [O.Fr. *gabelle*.] 'gabelle, (any kind of) impost, imposition, custom.'—*Cotgrave*.
 Gader, *vb.* gather, 305. [A.S. *gaderian*.]
 Gambaud, *vb.* gambol, 187. [Fr. *gambaud*.]
 Goodes, *sb. pl.* services, good deeds, 752.
 Goth, *vb.* goeth, 83. [3rd sing. prec. of *go*.]
 Grees, *sb. pl.* [degrees], steps, stairs, 373. [O.Fr. *gré*; Lat. *gradus*.]
 Grese, *sb. pl.* 119; v. GREES.
 Gruged, *pt.* [grudged], angered, 374. [O.Fr. *gruger*, to murmur.]
 Habandon, *vb.* abandon, give up, 190.
 Hache, *sb.* axe, 510. [Fr. *hache*.]
 Hast, *vb.* ask, 222.
 Haunt, *vb.* frequent, 10. [O.Fr. *hauter*.]
 Hayers, *sb. pl.* heirs, 720.
 Herber, *sb.* an arbour, a retreat formed by the branches of trees, 704. [There is some doubt whether this word is a corruption of *harbour*, O.E. *herberze*, O.Fr. *herberge*, a lodging (Skeat), or of M.E. *herbere*, O.Fr. *herbier*, a garden of herbs (Stratman).]
 Herbyger, *sb.* [harbinger], one who looks out for a lodging for another, 504. [O.Fr. *herberge*, a lodging.]
 Herytes, *sb.* heiress, 642.
 Heuynes, *sb.* heaviness, 544.
 Hole, *adj.* [whole], healthy, well, 28. [A.S. *hælan*.]
 Honeste, *sb.* chastity, 624. [O.Fr. *honestet*.]
 Hore, *adj.* [hoar], white, 224. [A.S. *hār*.]
 Hostrye, *sb.* hostelry, 235.
 Howdeous, *adj.* hideous, 489.
 Hyely, *adv.* nobly, 684.]

- Hyssed, *pt.* hoisted, 478. [Fr. *hausser*.]
- Ianglers, *sb. pl.* quarrelsome fellows, 10. [O.F. *jangler*, to talk loudly, to quarrel.]
- Iapery, *sb.* jesting, 85; in iapery = in jest. [Fr. *gaber*.]
- Ientylmen, *sb. pl.* gentlemen, 247.
- Ill, *adj.* evil, wicked, 4.
- Imagenyd, *pt.* devised, 221.
- Impe, *sb.* a graft or shoot, 12. [Low Lat. *impotus*, a graft.] 'Of feble trees ther comen wretched *imps*.' *Chaucer, C. T.*, 13962.
- Inbushyd, *pp.* ambushed, 25.
- Incombraunce, *sb.* trouble, 23.
- Incontynent, *adv.* immediately, forthwith, 7. [Fr. *incontinent*.]
- In portables, *adj. pl.* intolerable, 544. [O.Fr. *importable*.] '*importable*, intollerable, insupportable, not to be borne,'—*Cotgrave*. The *s* is added by anal. with *tr. pl.*
- Inpossessyons, *sb. pl.* impositions, taxes, 210.
- Intreated, *pp.* treated, used, 365; yll intreated = ill used. [O.Fr. *entraite*.]
- Jurnay, *sb.* journey, 275. [Fr. *journée*.]
- Justed, *pp.* jousted, fought, 186. [O.Fr. *jouster*.]
- Knowlege, *vb.* confess, acknowledge, 44.
- Knowlegying, *prp.* 504; v. KNOW-LEGE.
- Kyne, *sb.* king, 692.
- Kyrtyl, *sb.* kirtle, 520. [A.S. *cyrtel*.]
- Langusshe, *vb.* linger in pain, languish, 408. [O.Fr. *languir*.]
- Large, *adj.* liberal, generous, 546. [Fr. *large*; Lat. *largus*, liberal.]
- Larges, *sb.* [largess], liberality, 496. [Fr. *largesse*.]
- Larum, *sb.* noise, abbrev. for alarum, 472. [Fr. *alarme*, to call to arms.]
- Lenger, *adv.* longer, 48.
- Lesyng, *sb.* [loosing], forfeit, 37.
- Let, *vb.* to delay, be slow, also to hinder, 37. [A.S. *læt*, slow, whence *late* is also derived.]
- Leuys, *sb. pl.* levers, bars, 380. [O. Fr. *levier*.]
- Loge, *sb.* lodge, 56. [Fr. *loge*; It. *loggia*.]
- Logyng, *sb.* [lodging], dwelling-place, 31.
- Longed, *vb.* belonged, 155. [A.S. *lengian*.] 'That apperteineth and longeth all only to the judges.'—*Chaucer, Tale of Melibeus*.
- Lothely, *adj.* loathsome, 533. [A.S. *lað*.]
- Lowe, *vb.* lower, abase, 628.
- Lybardes, *sb. pl.* [libbards], leopards, 16.
- Lyege, *adj.* bound by feudal tenure, 236. [Etym. doubtful] lyege man, [liegeman] = subject, vassal. '... liegemen to the Dane.'—*Shaks., Hamlet*.
- Lyger, *adj.* nimble, 382. [O.Fr. *legier*.] '*legier*, quick, nimble, active,'—*Cotgrave*.
- Male, *sb.* bag, wallet, 170. [O.Fr. *male*; mod. Fr. *malle*.] This word still survives in the word *mail*, in the sense of letters, &c., carried by post, from the bag (*mail-bag*) in which they are carried.
- Malle, *sb.* mallet, hammer, 484. [O.Fr. *mail*; Lat. *malleus*.]
- Mantell tree, *sb.* the shelf over a fire-place, 383. [O.Fr. *mantel*, and *tree*, prob. in sense of a piece of wood, a beam.] 'Upon the *mantle tree* . . . stood a pot of lambative electuary.'—*Tatler*, No. 266.
- Mastres, *sb.* mistress, governess, 696. [O.Fr. *maistresse*.]
- Medelyd, *pp.* [meddled], mixed, mingled, 442. [O.Fr. *medler*, to mix, jumble.]
- Meny, *sb.* retinue, company, 499. [O.Fr. *mesnie*.] 'The kyng and his *meyne* went to burgh Konan.'—*Robert of Brunne*, p. 15.
- Meruayll, *sb.* wonder, astonishment, 321. [O.Fr. *merveille*.]
- Mew, a sparrowhawk, 177. (1) moult

- a sparrowhawk, (2) cage a sparrowhawk.
- Mew, *vb.* to confine, to keep in a cage, a term in falconry, 177. Cf. Baret's *Alvearie*: 'A mue for haukes, cauea vel cauceola accipitrum; tomuen a hauke, in caueam, &c., compingere accipitrem.' — *Baret*.
- Minysshed, *vb.* diminished, 341. [O. Fr. *menuisier*, to lessen.]
- Mo, *adj.* and *adv.* more, 64. [A.S. *mā*.]
- Monysayons, *sb. pl.* munitions, 58.
- Moo, *adv.* [mo], more, 36.
- Mossell, *sb.* muzzle, snout, 140. [O. Fr. *musel*.]
- Motons, *sb. pl.* sheep. [Fr. *moutons*.]
- Moyte, *sb.* half, 467. [Fr. *moitié*.]
- Mulet, *sb.* mule, 52.
- Muryed, *pp.* immured, 650. [Fr. *murer*.]
- Mygh, *vb.* [might], could, 67. [A.S. *mugan*, to be able.]
- Nerehand, *adv.* nearly, almost, 40.
- Noblesse, *sb.* nobles collectively, company of lords and ladies, 314. [Fr. *noblesse*.]
- Nones, [nonce], for the nones, 133; [= orig. *for then anes*] = for the once, for the occasion or purpose.
- Nother, *conj.* neither, 5.
- Nowell, *sb.* [noel], a cry of joy, orig. a Christmas carol, 578. [Fr. *noël*, Christmas.]
- Noyfull, *adj.* irksome, painful, 440. [O. Fr. *ausi*, mod. Fr. *ennui*, annoyance.]
- Oboute, *prep.* about, 13.
- Or, *adv.* ere, before, 11. [A.S. *ær*.]
- Or it be longe, before long, 273.
- Orpheline, *sb.* orphan, 695. [Fr. *orpheline*.]
- Orphelyns, *sb. pl.* orphans, 210.
- Orroure, *sb.* horror, 122.
- Orryble, *adj.* horrible, 101.
- Oueragis, *sb. pl.* works, ornaments, 380. [Fr. *ouvrage*.]
- Pagany, *sb.* heathendom, country of the pagans, 170.
- Parage, *sb.* lineage, birth, 693. [Fr. *parage*.] 'Ye are a man in this town of greate *parage*.' — *Berners*, *Froiss.*, ii. 52.
- Parelles, *sb. pl.* perils, 56.
- Parentes, *sb. pl.* cousins, kindred, 2. [Fr. *parent*, a cousin or kinsman.]
- Parfayte, *adj.* complete, 66. [O. Fr. *parfaite*.]
- Parforce, *adv.* by force, 275. [Fr. *par-* and *force*.]
- Parfyte, *adj.* perfect, complete, 294.
- Pariuryd, *pp.* perjured, 487.
- Parteynynge, *pr. p.* belonging, 8. [O. Fr. *partenir*.]
- Pastours = pastures, 477.
- Patrone, *sb.* captain, 212. 'Patrone of a galley, *patro de galee*.' — *Palsgrave*.
- Paynynms, *sb. pl.* pagans, heathens, 81. [Fr. *païenisme*.]
- Pelot, *sb.* pilot, 358. [O. Fr. *pilot*.]
- Persuaunt, *vb.* pursue, 81.
- Perteyse, *sb. pl.* parties, 507.
- Petuously, *adv.* piteously, 35, 715. [O. Fr. *piteus*.]
- Playse, *vb.* please, 36. [O. Fr. *plaisir*, to please.]
- Plee, *sb.* a suit, trial, 26. [O. Fr. *plai*.]
- Portables; v. IN PORTABLES.
- Porte, *sb.* gate, 56. [Fr. *porte*.]
- Poynt, *sb.* condition in good point = in good condition, trans. of Fr. *embonpoint* [en bon point], 307.
- Praysyd, *vb.* esteemed, valued, 39. [O. Fr. *preiser*.] 'She praiseth not his playing worth a bene.' — *Chaucer*, *C. T.*, 9728.
- Proues, *sb.* prowess, valour, 1. [O. Fr. *prouesse*.]
- Pryce, to 'blow the pryce' means to 'blow a blast to celebrate the capture of an animal.' The phrase occurs several times in Middle English; v. *Sir Gauvain*, 1362, also *Bk. of St. Albans*, and *MS. Cotton Vesp. B. xii.*, quoted by the editors of *Sir Tristrem*. 'The pryce' was blown when the hunting party arrived at the door of the hall on their return. In *Sir Tristrem* the same thing is called the 'tokening' in l. 518, but in

- 2749/50 we have, 'He blewe priis as he can pre mot oper mare.' The word is probably to be identified with Fr. *prise*.
- Pryuey, *adj.* privy, intimately conversant with, 13. [O.Fr. *prive*.]
- Purchace, *vb.* procure, 12. [O.Fr. *purchacer*.]
- Purcoloys, *sb.* portcullis, 335. [O.Fr. *porte coulisse*.]
- Puruey, *vb.* provide, 599. [O.Fr. *porvoir*.]
- Pusant, *adj.* puissant, powerful, 47. [Fr. *puissant*.]
- Puyssance, *sb.* puissance, might, 39.
- Pyght, *pp.* pitched, 285. 'the kynge then pyght his pauylions.' —*Sabyan*, ii. ann. 1272.
- Pylled, *pp.* hairless, bald. [Lat. *pilo*, to make bald.] Cf. pill-pate, a shaven head.
- Pyllynge, [pillling], pillaging, 401. [Fr. *pillier*, to pillage.]
- Pyraottes, *sb. pl.* pirates, 375.
- Quarter, *sb.* portion, 13.
- Queyntance, *sb.* acquaintance, 92. [O.Fr. *coint*.]
- Rased, *pp.* torn, lit. scraped, 145. [Fr. *raser*, to scrape.]
- Recountre, blow, attack, 431. [Fr. *rencontre*.]
- Reculyd, *pt.* recoiled, 42. [Fr. *reculer*.]
- Reculynge, *pr. p.* recoiling, retreating, 317.
- Regardyd, *pp.* looked, 17. [Fr. *regarder*, to look.]
- Releue, *vb.* a feudal term, signifying to recognise with the usual formalities that a fief is held from the feudal lord, 5. [Fr. *relever*.] In 511/4, releue = to rise up again.
- Releuyd, *pt.* rose up, 147. [Fr. *relever*.]
- Rengyd, *pp.* ranged, 494. [O.Fr. *renger*.]
- Renoume, *sb.* renown, fame, 2. [Fr. *renom*, *renommée*.] '... O thou far renowned sonne.' —*Spenser*, *F. Q.*, i. 6.
- Renyed, *pp.* denied, 89. [Fr. *renier*, to deny.]
- Renynsyd, *pt.* renounced, 81. [Fr. *renoncer*.]
- Repenissed, for replenished = filled again, 430.
- Requere, *vb.* require, ask, 3. [O.Fr. *requerir*.]
- Requyre, *vb.* require, ask, 264; requyre me of = ask me for, prob. for Fr. *requerir de*.
- Resorte, *sb.* refuge, resource, 752. [Fr. *ressort*.]
- Retourned, turned, 637.
- Rude, *adj.* coarse, rough, 300. [Fr. *rude*.]
- Rybault, *sb.* [ribald], a low fellow, 85. [O.Fr. *ribaud*.]
- Rybawdis, *sb. pl.* [ribalds], brutal wretches, 538. [O.Fr. *ribaud*, *ribaud*.]
- Ryghtwysly, *adv.* righteously, 251. [A.S. *rihtwis*, wise as to what is right.]
- Ryuyled, riveled, *pp.* wrinkled, shrunk, 568. 'I'll give thee tackling made of riveld gold, Wound on the barks of odoriferous trees.' —*Marlowe's Dido*, 1594.
- Sage, *adj.* wise, discerning, 214. [Fr. *sage*.]
- Saruage, *sb.* [serfage], slavery, servitude, 468. '... Doth in lordship and seruage.' —*Chaucer*, *C. T.*, 11106.
- Saue coundyte, *sb.* safe conduct, 719.
- Sawyde, *pp.* saved, 477. [M.E. *sawuen* for *sauwen*, Fr. *sauver*.]
- Sclaue, *sb.* slave, 161. [Fr. *esclave*.]
- Scole, *sb.* school, 419. [A.S. *scōla*.]
- Scot, *sb.* share, a contribution towards the general fund, 704. [O.Fr. *escot*.] This is the original meaning, but here it seems to mean rather that for which the share is paid, not the share itself. Cf. '... we may fortune to mete with suche that shall pay for our scotte.' —*Berners*, *Froiss.*, i. 207.
- Sease, *vb.* cease, 14.
- Seen, *conj.* since, 26.
- Semblant, *sb.* [semblance], appearance, 26. [O.Fr. *semblance*.]
- Semblaunt, made semblaunt = pretended, 205; v. *SEMBLANT*.

- Semylytude, *sb.* [similitude], likelihood, 41.
- Sennys, *conj.* since, 71.
- Sercles, *sb. pl.* [circles], 715; v. SERKELL.
- Serkell, *sb.* [circle], a band worn round the helmet, 24. [O.Fr. *sercle*.]
- Sertes, *sb. pl.* servants, 138.
- Set, *pp.* put, placed, 189.
- Sew, *conj.* since, 49.
- Seygnoryes, *sb. pl.* [seignories], domains, 140. [O.F. *seigneurie*.]
- Sher thursdaye, Shrove thursday, 560.
- Sirode, *sb.* sea-road, 359.
- Skapyd, *pt.* escaped, 16.
- Skaut, *adv.* [scout], scarcely, 559. [Icel. *skampt*.]
- Sle, *vb.* slew, 40.
- Slee, *vb.* slay, 43.
- Sleuers, *sb. pl.* slivers, fragments, 42. [A.S. *sligan*, to cleave.]
- Smoke, *sb.* smock, 699. [A.S. *smoc*.]
- Solas, *sb.* [solace], comfort, 606. [O.Fr. *solaz*.]
- Solempne, *adj.* solemn, 36.
- Somer, *sb.* pack-horse, sumpter horse, 144. [O.Fr. *somier*, a pack-horse.] v. SOMPTERHORS.
- Sommer, *sb.* 52; v. SOMER.
- Sompterhors, *sb.* [sumpterhorse], pack-horse, 702. [O.Fr. *sommetier*, from O.Fr. *somme*, a pack, burden.]
- Soort, *sb.* [sort], lot, company, 38. [Fr. *sorte*.]
- Soppe, *sb.* sup, drink, 38. [Fr. *souper*; A.S. *supan*.]
- Sot, *sb.* fool, 47. [Fr. *sot*, a fool.]
- Sowdeours, *sb. pl.* soldiers, 314. '... he had of suche *sowdyours* to defende hym.'—*Fabyan, Chron.* c. 82.
- Sowned, *pt.* [sound], swooned, 300. 'Sound' is common in Shakspeare in this sense.
- Sparhawke, *sb.* sparrowhawk, 7.
- Sperclyd, *pt.* spread, scattered, 476.
- Sporres, *sb. pl.* spurs, 291; on the spores = in great haste; equiv. to modern phr. 'with whip and spur.'
- Spryngynge tyme, spring time, 525.
- Stalle, *pt.* stole, 310.
- Stethy, *sb.* anvil, 380. [Icel. *steði*, an anvil.]
- Stradiot, *sb.* a kind of soldier, 761. [O.Fr. *estradiot*.] 'Among the Frenchmen were certaine light horsmen called *stradiotes*.'—*Hall, Henry VIII.*, f. 28.
- Stuyd, *pp.* [stewed], bathed, washed, 543. [O.Fr. *estuver*, to bathe.] 'estuver, to stue, soake, bathe.'—*Cotgrave*.
- Swerde, *sb.* sword, 182. [A.S. *sweorde*.]
- Swounyd, *pt.* swooned, fainted, 24.
- Sygned, *pp.* assigned, appointed, 473. [O.Fr. *signer*.] *Chaucer, Ct. of Love*, l. 642.
- Syn, *conj.* since, 5. [A.S. *sithen*.]
- Syngnory, *sb.* seignory, kingdom, dominion, 4. [Fr. *seigneurie*.]
- Synse, *conj.* since, as, 36.
- Syt, *vb.* to lean on, rest on, 43.
- Tale, *sb.* number, 328. [A.S. *talū*.]
- Taylles, *sb. pl.* tolls, taxes, 210. [O.Fr. *tailles*.]
- Temperours, for themperours, the emperor's, 13.
- Than, then, 15. [A.S. *thænne*.]
- Thedyr, *adv.* thither, 60. [A.S. *þider*.]
- Thentent, for 'the entent' = the intent, 'for thentent' = with the intention, 60.
- Thought, *sb.* [thought], care, trouble, 3. '... the old man for very thought and grief of heart pined away.'—*Holland*.
- Thrusty, *adj.* thirsty, 66. [A.S. *thurst*.]
- Tonne, *sb.* tun, barrel, 484. [A.S. *tunne*, a barrel.]
- Tornoys, *sb. pl.* tourneys, tournaments, 62. [O.Fr. *tournei*.]
- Tournyd, *pt.* returned, 210. 'Ere from this war thou *turn* a conqueror.'—*Shakspeare*.
- Traytour, *adj.* faithless, traitourous, 41. [O.Fr. *traiteur*.]
- Treason, *sb.* treachery, 44.
- Trepasyd, *pt.* [trespassed], departed, 17. [O.Fr. *trespasser*, to go beyond, depart.] 'Robert de Bruce

- ... *trespassed* out of this uncertain world.—*Berners, Froiss.*
- Trewe, *sb.* truce, 304. [O.Fr. *trues*.]
- Trone, *sb.* throne, 216. [O.Fr. *throne*.]
- Trought, *pt.* believed, 44. [From M.E. *trouwen*, mod. E. *trou*, A.S. *trēdrian*.]
- Truage, *sb.* orig. meaning is homage, fealty, 334. Here it seems to be collective for those who do homage, i. e. prisoners.
- Truss, *vb.* to pack, bind up, 173. [O.Fr. *trusser*.]
- Trybutayr, *adj.* tributary, subject, 105. [O.Fr. *tributaire*.]
- Tryumphe, *sb.* glory, 41.
- Tuo, *num.* two, 252.
- Vance, a vance for avaunt, *q. v.*, 69.
- Vauerynge, *sb.* wavering, 712.
- Vaylable, *adj.* [valuable], profitable, 12. [O.Fr. *valer*, to be of use.]
- Vayleth, *vb.* avaieth, 254.
- Veleny, *sb.* villainy, 20.
- Vertu, *sb.* strength, 24. [Fr. *vertu*; Lat. *virtus*.]
- Very, *adj.* true, 168. [O.Fr. *verai*.]
- Ungarcyous, *adj.* ungracious, 631.
- Vttranse, *sb.* [utterance], extremity, 47. [O.Fr. *outrance*; mod. Fr. *outrance*: in phrase *à outrance*.] 'to the utterance.'—*Macb.*, III. i. 72.
- Vttraunce, 196; v. VTTRANSE.
- Wan, *vb.* won, 184.
- Wanhope, *sb.* delusion, false hope, 364. [A.S. *wan*, deficient.] 'The foolish *wanhope* of some usurer.'—*Chaloner*.
- Warde, to her warde = toward her, 254. Cf. 'to you *ward*.'—2 *Cor.* xiii. 12.
- Wassale, *sb.* [vassal], wretch, villain, 23. 'O, *vassal*! miscreant!'—*K. Lear*, I. i.
- Wayter, *sb.* boarhound, 50. [Fr. *vautre*. Ital. *veltro*.]
- Went, *pp.* thought, 233. [*pt.* of *wenen*, to suppose, ween. A.S. *wēnen*.] 'She had *went* it had bene hir husbunde.'—*Chaucer, The Mylner of Abingdon*.
- Wenyng, *pr. p.* [weening], thinking, 21; v. WENT.
- Wesshyde, *pp.* washed, 537. [M.E. *weschen*.]
- Wheareas, *adv.* where, 744.
- Whereas, *adv.* where.
- Wight, *adj.* [wight], stout, strong, 96. [Icel. *vigr*, serviceable for war.]
- Witsonday, *sb.* Whit-Sunday, 731. [White Sunday, perhaps from white garments worn on that day. Vigfusson.]
- Wode, *adj.* violent, raging, 479. [A.S. *wód*, mad, raging.] 'What shulde he studie and make himselfen *wood*.'—*Chaucer, C. T.*, 184. '... *wode* within this wood.'—*Shakspeare, Mid. N. Dr.*, II. i. 192.
- Wold, *pp.* willed, wished, 304. [A.S. *willen*, *pt.* l. *wolde*.]
- Woll, *vb.* wishes to, would, 87.
- Wyage, *sb.* voyage, 16. [O.Fr. *veiage*.]
- Wynnyng, *sb.* [winning], gain, 13. [A.S. *winnan*.]
- Yentyll, *adj.* [gentle], noble, gallant, 20. [O.Fr. *gentil*.] 'gentil, ... gallant, noble.'—*Cotgrave*.
- Yll, *adj.* [ill], wicked, 37.
- Ylnes, *sb.* [illness], wickedness, 43. 'She that is vnchaste is a sea and treasure of all *ilnesse*.'—*Vives*.
- Ymagenyde, *pp.* imagined, planned, 2.
- Ynow, *adj. pl.* enough, 84. [A.S. *genoh*.]
- Yode, *pt.* rode, 636.
- Yought, *sb.* youth, 65. [A.S. *geodguð*.]

Early English Text Society.


THE Early English Text Society was started by Dr. Furnivall in 1864 for the purpose of bringing the mass of Old English Literature within the reach of the ordinary student, and of wiping away the reproach under which England had long rested, of having felt little interest in the monuments of her early life and language.

The E. E. T. Soc. desires to print in its Original Series the whole of our unprinted MS. literature; and in its Extra Series to reprint in careful editions all that is most valuable of printed MSS. and early printed books.

The Society has issued to its subscribers 122 Texts, most of them of great interest; so much so indeed that the publications of its first two years have been reprinted, and those for its third year, 1866, will follow.

The Subscription to the Early English Text Society, which constitutes Membership, is £1 1s. a year [and £1 1s. (Large Paper, £2 12s. 6d.) additional for the Extra Series], due in advance on the 1st of January, and should be paid either to the Society's Account at the Head Office of the Union Bank, Princes St., London, E.C., or by Money Order (made payable at the Chief Office, London, and crossed 'Union Bank'), or by Cheques or Postal Orders, to the Hon. Secretary, WM. A. DALZIEL, Esq., 67, Victoria Road, Finsbury Park, London, N. All Members who subscribe through other channels than the Hon. Sec. are asked to send their names to him, in order to insure an early insertion of them in the List of Members.

Those Members in the United States of America who want their Texts posted to them, must add to their prepaid subscriptions 1s. 4d. yearly for the Original Series, and 1s. for the Extra Series.

 The Director regrets that the issues of the Extra Series are in arrear. The issue for 1883 will be at once completed by Part I of Prof. Zupitza's edition of the earliest English version of *Guy of Warwick*, that in the Auchinleck and Caius MSS. The issue for 1884 will consist of such two of the following Texts, all now at press, as can be got out; and the next two will form the issue for 1885:—

Charlemagne Romances: Huon of Bordeaux, by Lord Berners, ab. 1532, ed. S. L. Lee, B.A. Part III.

Charlemagne Romances: The Four Sons of Aymon, by Caxton, ab. 1489, ed. Miss O. Richardson. Part I.

Bp. Fisher's English Works, ed. Rev. Ronald Bayne, B.A. Part II.

Hoccleve's Minor Poems, ed. Dr. F. J. Furnivall.

Complaint,
Alexander and Dindimus, ed. Prof. Skeat and J. H. Hessels, M.A.

The Original-Series issue for 1884 has just been completed by the concluding part of Prof. Skeat's Notes and Glossary to **Piers Plowman**. The issue for 1885 will be chosen from

- The Oldest English Texts**, to the time of King Alfred, edited by H. Sweet, M.A. [*All printed but the Introduction and Grammar.*]
Thomas Robinson's Life and Death of Mary Magdalene, ab. 1620 A.D., edited by Oskar Sommer. [*All in type.*]
Aelfric's Metrical Homilies, Part II, with a modern Englishing, edited by the Rev. Prof. Skeat, M.A., LL.D. [*At Press.*]

For the Original Series, the following Texts are also preparing :

- Aelfric's Metrical Lives of Saints**, in MS. Cott. Jul. E 7., ed. Rev. Prof. Skeat, M.A., LL.D. Part II. [*At Press.*]
Q. Elizabeth's Translations, from Boethius, &c., edited from the unique MS. by Walford D. Selby. [*At Press.*]
Treatise on the Virtues, ab. 1200 A.D., edited from the unique MS. by P. Z. Round, B.A.
Early English Deeds and Documents, from unique MSS., ed. Dr. Lorenz Morsbach.
Merlin, Part IV, containing Preface, Index, and Glossary. Edited by H. B. Wheatley.
Gawayne Poems, ed. F. J. Vipan, M.A.
Beowulf, a critical Text, &c., ed. Prof. Zupitza, with Dissertations by Prof. Müllenhoff.
William of Nassington's Mirror of Life, ed. S. J. Herrtage, B.A.
All the Early English Verse Lives of Saints, ed. Dr. C. Horstmann.
Pilgrimage of the Lyf of Manhode, in the Northern Dialect, ed. S. J. Herrtage, B.A.
Anglo-Saxon and Early English Psalters, ed. W. Aldis Wright, M.A., Ph.D.
Early English Homilies, 13th century, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris.
The Rule of St. Benet: 5 Texts, Anglo-Saxon, Early English, Caxton, &c., ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris.
Gospel of Nicodemus, the Anglo-Saxon and Early-English versions, ed. Prof. Wülker.

In the Extra Series, these Texts are also in preparation :

- Another Alliterative Romance of Alexander**, ed. Rev. Prof. Skeat, M.A., LL.D., and J. H. Hessels, Esq. [*At Press.*]
Barbour's Bruce, ed. Rev. Prof. W. W. Skeat. Part IV.
Guy of Warwick: 2 texts (Auchinleck MS. and Caius MS.), ed. Prof. Zupitza. Part I. [*At Press.*]
Sir Bevis of Hamton, from the Auchinleck and other MSS., ed. Dr. E. Kölbing. [*At Press.*]
Lonelich's Holy Grail, ed. Dr. F. J. Furnivall. Part V.

LIST OF THE SOCIETY'S BOOKS.

ORIGINAL SERIES.

The Publications for 1866 (except Nos. 19, 20 and 21) are out of print. Subscribers who desire the issue for 1866 should send their guineas at once to the Hon. Secretary, in order that other Texts for 1866 may be sent to press.

The Publications for 1864 (one guinea) are :—

1. Early English Alliterative Poems, ab. 1360 A.D., ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 16s.
2. Arthur, ab. 1440, ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A. 4s.
3. Lauder on the Dewtie of Kyngis, &c., 1556, ed. F. Hall, D.C.L. 4s.
4. Sir Gawayne and the Green Knight, ab. 1360, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 10s.

The Publications for 1865 (one guinea) are :—

5. Hume's Orthographie and Congruitie of the Britan Tongue, ab. 1617, ed. H. B. Wheatley. 4s.
6. Lancelot of the Laik, ab. 1500, ed. Rev. Prof. W. W. Skeat. 8s.
7. Genesis and Exodus, ab. 1250, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 8s.
8. Morte Arthure, ab. 1440, ed. E. Brock. 7s.
9. Thynne on Chaucer's Works, ab. 1598, ed. Dr. Kingsley and F. J. Furnivall, M.A. 10s.
10. Merlin, ab. 1440, Part I., ed. H. B. Wheatley. 2s. 6d.
11. Sir D. Lyndesay's Works: The Monarchie, ed. J. Small, M.A. Part I. 3s.
12. The Wright's Chaste Wife, ab. 1462, ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A. 1s.

The Publications for 1866 (two guineas,—only Nos. 19, 20 and 21 in print : the rest will be reprinted slowly) are :—

13. Sainte Marherete, 1200-1330, ed. Rev. O. Cockayne.
14. Kyng Horn, Floris and Blanchefleur, &c., ed. Rev. Prof. J. R. Lumby.
15. Political, Religious, and Love Poems, ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A.
16. The Book of Quinte Essence, ab. 1460-70, ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A.
17. Parallel Extracts from Twenty-nine MSS. of Piers the Plowman, ed. Rev. Prof. W. W. Skeat.
18. Hali Meidenhad, ab. 1200, ed. Rev. O. Cockayne.
19. Lyndesay's Monarchie, &c., Part II., ed. J. Small, M.A. 3s. 6d.
20. Hampole's English Prose Treatises, ed. Rev. G. G. Perry. 1s.
21. Merlin, Part II., ed. H. B. Wheatley. 4s.
22. Partenay or Lusignen, ed. Rev. Prof. W. W. Skeat.
23. Dan Michel's Ayenbite of Inwyrt, 1340, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 10s. 6d.

The Publications for 1867 (one guinea,—Nos. 24 and 26 out of print) are :—

24. Hymns to the Virgin and Christ; the Parliament of Devils, &c., ab. 1490, ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A. 3s.
25. The Stations of Rome, the Pilgrims' Sea-voyage, with Glene Maydenhod, ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A. 1s.
26. Religious Pieces in Prose and Verse, from R. Thornton's MS. (ab. 1440), ed. Rev. G. G. Perry. 2s.
27. Levins's Manipulus Vocabulorum, 1570, ed. H. B. Wheatley. 12s.
28. William's Vision of Piers the Plowman, 1362 A.D. The earliest or Vernon Text; Text A. Part I. Edited by Rev. Prof. W. W. Skeat. 6s.
29. Early English Homilies (ab. 1220-30 A.D.) from unique MSS. in the Lambeth and other Libraries. Part I. Edited by Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 7s.
30. Pierce the Plowman's Crede, ed. Rev. Prof. W. W. Skeat. 2s.

The Publications for 1868 (one guinea) are :—

31. Myro's Duties of a Pariah Priest, in Verse, ab. 1420 A.D., ed. E. Peacock. 4s.
32. Early English Meals and Manners, ed. from Harleian and other MSS. by F. J. Furnivall, M.A. 12s.
33. The Knight De La Tour Landry (from French of A.D. 1372), ab. 1440 A.D. A Father's Book for his Daughters, ed. from Harl. MS. 1764 and Caxton's version, by Thomas Wright, M.A. 8s.
34. Early English Homilies (before 1300 A.D.) from unique MSS. in the Lambeth and other Libraries. Part II. Edited by Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 8s.
35. Lyndesay's Works, Part III.: The Historie and Testament of Squyer Meldrum, ed. F. Hall, D.C.L. 2s.

The Publications for 1869 (one guinea) are :—

36. Merlin, Part III. Edited by H. B. Wheatley, Esq.; with an Essay on Arthurian Localities, by J. S. Stuart Glennie, Esq. 12s.
37. Lyndesay's Works, containing Ane Satyre of the Three Estaitis. Part IV. Edited by F. Hall, D.C.L. 4s.
38. William's Vision of Piers the Plowman, Text B. Part II. Edited from the MSS. by the Rev. Prof. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 10s. 6d.
39. The Alliterative Romance of the Destruction of Troy, translated from Guido de Colonna, Part I. Edited by D. Donaldson, Esq., and the Rev. G. A. Fanton. 10s. 6d.

The Publications for 1870 (one guinea) are :—

40. *English Gilds, their Statutes and Customs. 1389 A.D.* Edited by the late Toulmin Smith, Esq., and Miss Lucy Toulmin Smith, with a Preliminary Essay, in 5 parts, on 'The History and Development of Gilds, and the Origin of Trades-Unions,' by Dr Lujó Brentano. 21s.
41. *William Lander's Minor Poems.* Edited by F. J. Furnivall, M.A. 3s.
42. *Bernardus De Cura Rei Familiaris*, with some Early Scottish Prophecies, &c. From a MS. KK. 1. 5, in the Cambridge University Library. Edited by Rev. Prof. J. R. Lumby, M.A. 2s.
43. *Ratis Having, and other Moral and Religious Pieces in Prose and Verse.* Edited from the Camb. Univ. MS. KK. 1. 5, by Rev. Prof. J. R. Lumby, M.A. 3s.

The Publications for 1871 (one guinea) are :—

44. *The Alliterative Romance of Joseph of Arimathea, or The Holy Grail: a fragment from the Vernon MS.; with Wynkyn de Worde's and Pynson's (A.D. 1526 and 1520) Lives of Joseph;* edited by the Rev. Prof. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 5s.
45. *King Alfred's West-Saxon Version of Gregory's Pastoral Care*, edited from 2 MSS., with an English translation, Part I., by Henry Sweet, M.A., Balliol College, Oxford. 10s.
46. *Legends of the Holy Rood, Symbols of the Passion and Cross. Poems in Old English of the 11th, 14th, and 15th centuries.* Edited from MSS. by the Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 10s.
47. *Lyndesay's Works*, containing his Minor Poems, Part V., edited by Dr. James A. H. Murray, with a critical Essay by Professor Nichol of Glasgow. 3s.
48. *The Times' Whistle, and other Poems*, by R. C., 1616; edited by J. M. Cowper, Esq. 6s.

The Publications for 1872 (one guinea) are :—

49. *An Old English Miscellany*, containing a Bestiary, Kentish Sermons, Proverbs of Alfred, Religious Poems of the 13th century, edited from the MSS. by the Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 10s.
50. *King Alfred's West-Saxon Version of Gregory's Pastoral Care*, edited from 2 MSS., with an English translation, Part II., by Henry Sweet, M.A., Balliol College, Oxford. 10s.
51. *The Life of St Juliana*, 3 versions (1230 A.D.), with translations; edited from the MSS. by the Rev. T. O. Cockayne and Mr. E. Brock. 2s.
52. *Palladius on Husbandrie*, from the unique MS., ab. 1420 A.D., Part I., ed. Rev. B. Lodge. 10s.

The Publications for 1873 (one guinea) are :—

53. *Old English Homilies, Series II.*, from the unique 13th-century MS. in Trinity Coll. Cambridge, with a photolithograph; three Hymns to the Virgin and God, from a unique 13th-century MS. at Oxford, a photolithograph of the music to two of them, and transcriptions of it in modern notation by Dr. Rimbault, and A. J. Ellis, Esq., F.R.S.; the whole edited by the Rev. Dr. Richard Morris. 8s.
54. *The Vision of Piers Plowman, Text C* (completing the 3 versions of this great poem), with an Autotype; and two unique alliterative poems: *Richard the Redeles* (by William, the author of the *Vision*); and *The Crowned King*; edited by the Rev. Prof. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 18s.
55. *Generydes, a Romance*, edited from the unique MS., ab. 1440 A.D., in Trin. Coll. Cambridge, Part I., by W. Aldis Wright, M.A., Trin. Coll. Cambr. 3s.

The Publications for 1874 (one guinea) are :—

56. *The Gest Hystoriale of the Destruction of Troy, in alliterative verse; Part II.*, ed. by D. Donaldson, Esq., and the late Rev. G. A. Panton. 10s. 6d.
57. *The Early English Version of the "Cursor Mundi"*: in four Texts, Part I., edited by the Rev. Dr. R. Morris. With 2 photolithographic facsimiles. 10s. 6d.
58. *The Blickling Homilies, 971 A.D., Part I.*, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 8s.

The Publications for 1875 (one guinea) are :—

59. *The "Cursor Mundi," in four Texts, Part II.*, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 15s.
60. *Meditacyons on the Soper of Our Lorde* (perhaps by Robert of Brunne), edited from the MSS. by J. M. Cowper, Esq. 2s. 6d.
61. *The Romance and Prophecies of Thomas of Ercealdoune*, printed from five MSS.; edited by Dr. James A. H. Murray. 10s. 6d.

The Publications for 1876 (one guinea) are :—

62. *The "Cursor Mundi," in four Texts, Part III.*, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 18s.
63. *The Blickling Homilies, 971 A.D., Part II.*, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 4s.
64. *Francis Thynne's Emblemes and Epigrams, A.D. 1600*, ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A. 4s.
65. *Be Domes Dæge (Bede's De Die Judicii), &c.*, ed. Rev. Prof. J. R. Lumby. 2s.

The Publications for 1877 (one guinea) are :—

66. *The "Cursor Mundi," in four Texts, Part IV.*, with 2 autotypes, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 10s.
67. *Notes on Piers Plowman, Part I.*, by the Rev. Prof. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 21s.

The Publications for 1878 (one guinea) are :—

68. *The "Cursor Mundi," in 4 Texts, Part V.*, ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 25s.
69. *Adam Davie's 5 Dreams about Edward II., &c.*, ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A. 5s.
70. *Generydes, a Romance, Part II.*, ed. W. Aldis Wright, M.A. 4s.

The Publications for 1879 (one guinea) are :—

71. *The Lay Folk's Mass-Book*, 4 Texts, ed. Rev. Canon Simmons. 25s.
72. *Palladius on Husbandrie*, englisht (ab. 1420 A.D.). Part II. Ed. S. J. Herrtage, B.A. 5s.

The Publications for 1880 (one guinea) are :—

73. *The Blickling Homilies*, 971 A.D., Part III., ed. Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 8s.
74. *Wycliffe's English Works* (those hitherto unprinted), ed. F. D. Matthew. 20s.

The Publications for 1881 (one guinea) are :—

75. *Catholicon Anglicum*, an English-Latin Word-book, A.D. 1483, ed. S. J. Herrtage, B.A. 20s.
76. *Aelfric's Metrical Homilies*, Part I., with a modern englishing, ed. Rev. Prof. Skeat. 10s.

The Publications for 1882 (one guinea) are :

77. *Beowulf*, the unique MS. autotyped and transliterated, edited by Prof. Zupitza, Ph.D. 25s.
78. *The Fifty Earliest English Wills in the Court of Probate, 1387-1439*, ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A. 7s.

The Publications for 1883 (one guinea) are :—

79. *King Alfred's Orosius*, from Lord Tollemache's 9th cent. MS., Part I, ed. H. Sweet, M.A. 13s.
- Extra Volume.* Facsimile of the *Epinal Glossary*, 8th century, ed. H. Sweet, M.A. 15s.

The Publications for 1884 (one guinea) are :—

80. *The Anglo-Saxon Life of St. Katherine and its Latin Original*, ed. Dr. Eichenkel, M.A. 12s.
81. *Piers Plowman*: Notes, Glossary, &c. Part IV, ed. Rev. Prof. Skeat, M.A. 18s.

The Publications for 1885 will be chosen from :—

82. *Thomas Robinson's Life and Death of Mary Magdalene*, ab. 1620 A.D., ed. O. Sommer.
- The Oldest English Texts*, ed. Hy. Sweet, M.A. [At Press.]
- Aelfric's Metrical Homilies*, Part II, with a modern Englishing, ed. Prof. Skeat.

EXTRA SERIES (One guinea a year).

The Publications for 1867 (one guinea) are :—

- I. *William of Palerne*; or, *William and the Werwolf*. Re-edited from the unique MS. in King's College, Cambridge, by the Rev. Prof. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 13s.
- II. *Early English Pronunciation*, with especial reference to Shakspeare and Chaucer, Part I., by A. J. Ellis, F.R.S. 10s.

The Publications for 1868 (one guinea) are :—

- III. *Oxton's Book of Curtesye*, in 3 Versions: 1, from the unique print in the Camb. Univ. Libr.; 2, the Oriel MS. 79; 3, the Balliol MS. 354. Ed. by F. J. Furnivall, M.A. 5s.
- IV. *Havelok the Dane*. Re-edited from the unique MS. by the Rev. Prof. W. W. Skeat, M.A., with the sanction and aid of the original editor, Sir Frederic Madden. 10s.
- V. *Chaucer's Boethius*. Edited from the two best MSS. by the Rev. Dr. R. Morris. 12s.
- VI. *Chevalere Assigne*. Re-edited from the unique MS. by H. H. Gibbs, M.A. 3s.

The Publications for 1869 (one guinea) are :—

- VII. *Early English Pronunciation*, with especial reference to Shakspeare and Chaucer, Part II., by A. J. Ellis, F.R.S. 10s.
- VIII. *Queen Elizabeth's Academy, a Book of Precedence, &c.* Edited by F. J. Furnivall, M.A., with Essays on early Italian and German Books of Courtesy, by W. M. Rossetti, Esq., and Dr. E. Oswald, Esq. 13s.
- IX. *Awdley's Fraternity of Vacabondes, Harman's Caveat, &c.* Edited by E. Viles, Esq., and F. J. Furnivall, M.A. 7s. 6d.

The Publications for 1870 (one guinea) are :—

- X. *Andrew Boorde's Introduction of Knowledge, 1547, and Dystery of Malice, 1548*; with Barnes in the Defence of the Berde, 1548-3. Edited, with a Life of BOORDE, and an account of his Works, by F. J. Furnivall, M.A. 18s.
- XI. *Barbour's Bruce*, Part I. Edited from the MSS. and early printed editions, by the Rev. Prof. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 12s.

The Publications for 1871 (one guinea) are :—

- XII. *England in Henry VIII.'s Time: a Dialogue between Cardinal Pole and Lupset*, mainly on the Condition of England, written by Thomas Starkey, Chaplain to Henry VIII. Part II. Edited by J. M. Cowper, Esq. 12s. (Part I., *Starkey's Life and Letters*, is No. XXXII.)
- XIII. *A Supplication of the Beggars*, by Simon Fish, 1528-9 A.D., edited by F. J. Furnivall, M.A.; with *A Supplication to our Moste Soueraigne Lorde*; *A Supplication of the Poore Commons*; and *The Decaye of England by the Great Multitude of Sheep*, edited by J. M. Cowper, Esq. 6s.
- XIV. *Early English Pronunciation*, with especial reference to Shakspeare and Chaucer, Part III. by A. J. Ellis, Esq., F.R.S. 10s.

The Publications for 1872 (one guinea) are :—

- XV. Robert Crowley's *Thirty-one Epigrams, Voyces of The Last Trumpet, Way to Wealth, &c.*, 1550-1 A.D., edited by J. M. Cowper, Esq. 12s.
 XVI. Chaucer's *Treatise on the Astrolabe*, 1391 A.D. Ed. from MSS. by Rev. Prof. W. Skeat, M.A. 10s.
 XVII. *The Complaynt of Scotlande*, 1549 A.D., with an Appendix of four Contemporary English Tracts (1542-49 A.D.). Part I., edited by Dr. J. A. H. Murray. 10s.

The Publications for 1873 (one guinea) are :—

- XVIII. *The Complaynt of Scotlande*, 1549 A.D., with an Appendix of four contemporary English Tracts (1542-49), Part II., edited by Dr. J. A. H. Murray. 8s.
 XIX. *Our Ladyes Myroure*, A.D. 1530, edited by the Rev. J. H. Blunt, M.A., with four full-page photolithographic facsimiles by Cooke and Fotheringham. 24s.

The Publications for 1874 (one guinea) are :—

- XX. *Lonelich's History of the Holy Grail* (ab. 1450 A.D.), from the French of Sires Robiers de Borron, Part I., ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A. 8s.
 XXI. *Barbour's Bruce*, Part II., ed. Rev. Prof. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 4s.
 XXII. *Henry Brinklow's Complaynt of Roderyok Mors* (ab. 1542); and *The Lamentacion of a Christian against the Citty of London*, made by Roderigo Mors, A.D. 1545. Ed. J. M. Cowper. 9s.
 XXIII. *Early English Pronunciation*, Part IV., by A. J. Ellis, F.R.S. 10s.

The Publications for 1875 (one guinea) are :—

- XXIV. *Lonelich's History of the Holy Grail*, Part II., ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A. 10s.
 XXV. *Guy of Warwick*, 15th-century Version, Part I., ed. Prof. Zupitza. 20s.

The Publications for 1876 (one guinea) are :—

- XXVI. *Guy of Warwick*, 15th-century Version, Part II., ed. Prof. Zupitza. 14s.
 XXVII. *The English Works of John Fisher*. Bishop of Rochester (died 1535), Part I, the Text, edited by Rev. Prof. J. E. B. Mayor, M.A. 16s.

The Publications for 1877 (one guinea) are :—

- XXVIII. *Lonelich's Holy Grail*, Part III., ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A. 10s.
 XXIX. *Barbour's Bruce*. Part III., ed. Rev. Prof. W. W. Skeat, M.A. 21s. (large paper, 42s.).

The Publications for 1878 (one guinea) are :—

- XXX. *Lonelich's Holy Grail*, Part IV., ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A. 15s.
 XXXI. *The Alliterative Romance of Alexander and Dindimus*, ed. Rev. Prof. W. W. Skeat. 6s.
 XXXII. *Starkey's "England in Henry VIII's time": Starkey's Life and Letters*; Part I., ed. S. J. Hertridge, B.A. 8s.

The Publications for 1879 (one guinea) are :—

- XXXIII. *Gesta Romanorum* (englisht ab. 1440): the *Early English Versions*, edited from the MSS. and black-letter editions, by S. J. Hertridge, B.A. 15s.
 XXXIV. *Charlemagne Romances*: No. I. *Sir Ferumbras*; edited from the unique Ashmole MS., by S. J. Hertridge, B.A. 15s.

The Publications for 1880 (one guinea) are :—

- XXXV. *Charlemagne Romances*: No. II. *The Sege off Melayne*, ed. by S. J. Hertridge, B.A. 12s.
 XXXVI. *Charlemagne Romances*: No. III. *The Lyf of Charles the Grete*, englisht by Caxton, A.D. 1485, Part I., ed. by S. J. Hertridge, B.A. 16s.

The Publications for 1881 (one guinea) are :—

- XXXVII. *Charlemagne Romances*: No. IV. *The Lyf of Charles the Grete*, englisht by Caxton, A.D. 1485, Part II., ed. by S. J. Hertridge, B.A. 15s.
 XXXVIII. *Charlemagne Romances*: No. V. *The Romance of the Sowdons of Babylone*, ed. Dr. E. Hausknecht. 16s.

The Publications for 1882 (one guinea) are :—

- XXXIX. *Charlemagne Romances*:—6. *Rauf Collyear, Roland, Otuel, &c.*, ed. S. J. Hertridge, B.A. 15s.
 XL. *Charlemagne Romances*:—7. *Huon of Burdeux*, by Lord Berners, ed. S. L. Lee, B.A. Part I. 15s.

The Publications for 1883 (one guinea) are :

- XLI. *Charlemagne Romances*:—8. *Huon of Burdeux*, by Lord Berners, ed. S. L. Lee, B.A. Pt II. 15s.
 XLII. *Guy of Warwick*, the Auchinleck and Caius MSS., Part I, ed. Prof. Zupitza. 15s.

The Publications for 1884 and 1885 will be chosen from :—

- Charlemagne Romances*:—9. *Huon of Burdeux*, by Lord Berners, ed. S. L. Lee, B.A. Pt III. [At Press.
 " " 10. *The Four Sons of Aymon*, by Caxton, ed. Miss O. Richardson. Part I. [At Press.

Bp. Fisher's *English Works*, ed. Rev. Ronald Bayne, B.A. Part II. [At Press.

Hoocleve's Minor Poems, ed. F. J. Furnivall, M.A., Ph. D. [At Press:

Complaint,

Alexander and Dindimus, ed. Rev. Prof. Skeat and J. H. Hessler, M.A.

LONDON: TRÜBNER & CO., 57 & 59, LUDGATE HILL.

BERLIN: ASHER & CO., 53 MOHRENSTRASSE.

Income and Expenditure of the EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY for the Year ended December 31, 1879.

Treasurer's Cash Account for 1879.

7

RECEIPTS.				PAYMENTS.			
	£	s.	d.		£	s.	d.
BALANCES, 1 January, 1879:—				PRINTING ACCOUNT:—			
Cash at Bank	100 14 11				
Cash in hand	7 4				
			110 2 3				
MEMBERS' SUBSCRIPTIONS:—				Original Series.			
Original Series	53 16 6	No. 71. The Lay Folks Mass Book	...	279	8 0
{ For back years	352 13 0	No. 72. Palladius on Husbandrie, Part II	...	92	12 6
{ For 1879	16 6 9	Beowulf Autotypes [on account]	...	135	8 6
Extra Series	38 19 1			507	9 0
{ For back years	228 1 1	Extra Series.			
{ For 1879	4 15 9	XXXIII. Gesta Romanorum [on account]	...	150	0 0
{ For 1880, &c.	5 18 8				
Reprints	699 18 10	COPYING, COLLATING, AND INDEXING:—			
				Original Series	...	42	11 4
				Extra Series	...	39	13 0
						82	4 4
				GENERAL ACCOUNT:—			
				Binding	...	24	7 5
				Editor's journey to Cheltenham	...	5	0 0
				Postage, Carriage, and Stationery	...	8	1 5
				Clerk	...	10	0 0
				Insurance	...	2	10 0
						49	18 10
				BALANCE AT BANK, 31 December, 1879	...	20	8 11

Examined with the Vouchers, and found correct.

FRED. D. MATTHEW.
ARTHUR G. SNELGROVE,

{ AUDITORS.

HENRY B. WHEATLEY, TREASURER.
W. A. DALZIEL, HON. SEC.

£810 1 1

£810 1 1

Income and Expenditure of the EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY for the Year ended 31 December, 1880.

RECEIPTS.			PAYMENTS.		
	£	s. d.		£	s. d.
BALANCE AT BANK 1st January, 1880	...	...	PRINTING ACCOUNT :—		
MEMBERS' SUBSCRIPTIONS :—			Original Series.		
For back years...	...	...	No. 73. Blüchling Homilies, Part III.	61	10 11
For 1880...	...	...	No. 74. Wyeliff (on account)	200	0 0
For 1881, &c. ...	...	...	Messrs. Clay and Taylor (on account)	7	12 0
Original Series	73	19 0		268	2 11
Less returned Subscription & commission on Sales	394	8 1	Extra Series.		
	6	6 0	XXXIII. Gesta Romanorum [balance]	55	16 1
	474	8 1	XXXIV. Sir Perembras	113	13 4
	20	2 0	Reprints, &c.		
For back years	17	4 0	No. 8. Morle Arthur	14	0 0
For 1880	244	16 9	Brownulf Autotypes (on account)	135	12 0
For 1881, &c. ...	8	8 0	Photographs, &c., of Siege off Malaya	23	2 0
Less returned Subscription & commission on Sales	265	3 9	The Society's 11th Report, &c.	33	7 9
	12	19 0		205	1 9
Reprints	...	...	COPYING AND COLLATING :—		
	...	...	Original Series	20	8 9
	...	...	Extra Series	12	7 0
	...	...		32	15 9
	...	...	GENERAL ACCOUNT :—		
	...	...	Binding	1	10 6
	...	...	Postage, Carriage, Stationery, &c.	7	9 8
	...	...	Clerk	10	0 0
	...	...	Insurance	2	10 0
	...	...	Warehousing Stock of Books, 1879	5	0 0
	...	...		26	10 8
	...	...	BALANCE AT BANK, 31st December, 1880	29	3 1
	...	...	Petty Cash	1	8
	...	...		20	4 9
	...	...		£738	4 9

Examined with the Vouchers and found correct.

February 8, 1881.

FRED. D. MATTHEW, }
ARTHUR G. SNELGROVE, } AUDITORS.

HENRY B. WHEATLEY, TREASURER.
W. A. DALZIEL, HON. SEC.

Income and Expenditure of the EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY for the Year ended 31 December, 1881.

RECEIPTS.			PAYMENTS.		
	£	s. d.		£	s. d.
BALANCE AT BANK 1st January, 1881:	29	3 1	PRINTING ACCOUNT:—		
Cash in hand ..	..	..	
	29	4 9			
MEMBERS' SUBSCRIPTIONS:—					
{ For back years	65	14 0	<i>Original Series.</i>		
{ For 1881	324	13 0	No. 74. Wyelf (balance) ..	42	0 0
{ For 1882	2	2 0	No. 75. Catholicon Anglicum facsimiles ..	195	19 7
	..	..	No. 76. Aelfric's Met. Homilies. Part I. (on account) ..	18	18 0
Extra Series	53	9 11		30	0 0
{ For back years	208	16 8		286	17 7
{ For 1881	3	3 0			
{ For 1882	..	..	<i>Extra Series.</i>		
	264	9 7	XXXV. Siege of Melayne ..	81	16 0
			XXXVI. Charles the Grete, Pt I. (balance) ..	63	2 6
			Part II. ..	31	13 6
			XXXVII. Sowdone of Babyloine ..	73	3 9
			XXXVIII. To Messrs. Clay and Taylor, on account ..	15	9 0
				285	4 9
			<i>Reprints.</i>		
			No. 38. Piers Plowman, B ..	23	6 6
			No. I. William of Palerne ..	23	2 3
			Printing Sundries ..	17	18 6
				64	7 3
			GENERAL ACCOUNT:—		
			Binding ..	18	1 7
			Warehousing Stock of Books, 1880—81 ..	10	0 0
			Insurance of Stock of Books, 1881 ..	2	10 0
			Clerk ..	10	0 0
			Collating ..	1	9 0
			Postage, Stationery, &c. ..	5	0 0
				47	0 7
			BALANCE AT BANK, 31st December, 1881	22	12 2
	£686	2 4		£686	2 4

Examined with the Vouchers and found correct.

FRED D. MATTHEW } AUDITORS.
A. GRANGER HUTT }

HENRY B. WHEATLEY, TREASURER.
W. A. DALZIEL, HON. SEC.

Treasurer's Cash Account for 1882.

Income and Expenditure of the EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY for the Year ended December 31, 1882.

RECEIPTS.		PAYMENTS.	
£	s. d.	£	s. d.
BALANCE AT BANK, 1st January, 1882	23 12 3		
MEMBERS' SUBSCRIPTIONS :—			
Original Series	63 6 0		
{ For back years ...	344 8 11		
{ For 1882 ...	3 2 0		
{ For 1883 ...	409 16 11		
Less Returned Subscription and Commission on Sales	21 10 0		
Extra Series	38 6 4		
{ For back years ...	247 11 3		
{ For 1882 ...	285 17 7		
Less Commission on Sales	12 6 0		
Reprints ...	273 11 7		
	3 3 0		
PRINTING ACCOUNT :—			
Original Series.			
No. 76. Aelric's Lives of Saints (balance)	89 1 3		
No. 77. Beowulf ...	78 3 8		
No. 78. English Wills ...	87 7 9		
	384 19 8		
Extra Series.			
III. Cartton's Book of Curtesye, 1688	3 6 6		
XXIX. R. of Collyear (balance)	41 10 6		
XL. Huon of Burdeur, Part I (on account)	131 18 6		
Sundries	...		
	176 15 0		
	4 6 7		
COPYING AND COLLATING :—			
Original Series	...		
Extra Series	...		
	4 7 0		
	36 1 9		
GENERAL ACCOUNT :—			
Editor's Journeys	...		
Clerk	...		
Binding	...		
Insurance	...		
Postage, Carriage, Stationery, &c.	...		
Warehousing Stock, 1883	...		
	29 4 1		
BALANCE AT BANK, 31st December, 1882	181 14 6		
Petty Cash	0 11 7		
	182 6 1		
	2387 13 8		

Examined with the Vouchers and found correct.

FRED. D. MATTHEW } AUDITORS.
A. GRANGER HUTT }

HENRY B. WHEATLEY, TREASURER.
W. A. DALZIEL, HON. SEC.

Income and Expenditure of the EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY for the Year ended December 31, 1883.

RECEIPTS.			PAYMENTS.		
	£	s. d.		£	s. d.
BALANCE AT BANK, 1st January, 1883	181	14 6	PRINTING ACCOUNT:—		
Cash in hand	0	11 7	Original Series:		
MEMBERS' SUBSCRIPTIONS:—			No. 77. Mounting Beowulf Autotypes	25	0 0
{ For back years	123	16 6	No. 78. English Wills (balance)	1	14 0
{ For 1883	252	10 7	No. 79. Orosius, Part I	126	1 5
{ For 1884	2	13 0	Epinal MS. 44s copies	80	0 0
Less Commission on Sales	409	0 1	No. 80. St. Katherine (on account)	100	0 0
{ For back years	19	2 0	Extra Series:		
{ For 1883	70	3 8	XL. Huon of Burdeaux, Part I (balance)	5	6 0
Extra Series	178	18 1	XLI. Huon of Burdeaux, Part II	138	4 6
Reprints	249	1 9	XLI. Photo Intaglio plate of Lord Berners	13	9 6
Less Commission on Sales	13	15 0	On account	24	1 9
	...	...	Reprints:		
	235	6 9	No. 11. Lyndesay's Monarchie, Part I	34	4 9
	1	18 4	No. 19. Lyndesay's Monarchie, Part II	61	11 6
			No. 37. Lyndesay's Satyre	19	17 6
			COPYING AND COLLATING:—		
			Original Series	11	8 3
			Extra Series	42	8 6
			GENERAL ACCOUNT:—		
			Binding	12	17 1
			Insurance	2	10 0
			Clerk	10	0 0
			Postage, Carriage, &c.	7	5 0
			Warehousing Stock, 1883	5	0 0
			BALANCE AT BANK, 31st December, 1883	91	19 0
			Petty Cash	6	10 6
				2909	9 3

Examined with the Vouchers and found correct.

FRED. D. MATTHEW } AUDITORS.
A. GRANGER HUTT }

HENRY B. WHEATLEY, TREASURER.
W. A. DALZIEL, HON. SEC.

LIST OF MEMBERS.

COMMITTEE OF MANAGEMENT.

DIRECTOR: FREDERICK J. FURNIVALL, M.A., Ph.D.

TREASURER: HENRY B. WHEATLEY, ESQ.

HON. SEC.: W. A. DALZIEL, ESQ., 67 VICTORIA ROAD,
FINSBURY PARK, LONDON, N.

HON. SEC. for America: PROF. F. J. CHILD, HARVARD COLLEGE,
CAMBRIDGE, MASS., U. S. A.

J. MEADOWS COWPER, ESQ.
ALEXANDER J. ELLIS, B.A.,
F.R.S.

HENRY HUCKS GIBBS, M.A.
SIDNEY J. HERRTAGE, B.A.
REV. PROF. LUMBY, B.D.
F. D. MATTHEW, ESQ.,
REV. DR. RICHARD MORRIS.

REV. PROF. J. E. B. MAYOR,
M.A.

DR. J. A. H. MURRAY.
EDWARD B. PEACOCK, ESQ.
REV. PROF. SKEAT, M.A., LL.D.
HENRY SWEET, M.A.
W. ALDIS WRIGHT, M.A., LL.D.
PROF. ZUPITZA, Ph.D.

(With power to add Workers to their number.)

BANKERS:

THE UNION BANK OF LONDON, PRINCES STREET, E.C.

PUBLISHERS: TRÜBNER & CO., 57 & 59, LUDGATE HILL, E.C.

*A star or dagger is prefixed to the names of those who subscribe to the Extra Series:
a star (*) for the small paper, and a dagger (†) for the large paper.*

AINSWORTH, Dr. R. F., Cliff Point, Lower Broughton, Manchester.

ALDERSON, Rev. H. E., St. Paul's College, Stoney Stratford.

ALEXANDER, George Russell, 42, Sardinia Terrace, Hillhead, Glasgow.

†ALEXANDER, John, 68, Regent Street West, Glasgow.

ALEXANDER, Walter, 4 Burnbank Gardens, Glasgow.

*ALLON, Rev. Dr. Henry, 10, St. Mary's Road, Canonbury, N.

*ALLSOPP, A. P., Hindlip Hall, Worcester.

ALLYN, J. (Bookseller), Boston, U. S. A. (by Trübner & Co.).

AMERY, J. Sparke, Druid House, Ashburton, Devon.

*AMHERST COLLEGE LIBRARY, Amherst, Mass., U. S. A. (by Allen).

AMHURST, Wm. A. Tyssen, Didlington Hall, Brandon, Norfolk.

ANGUS, Rev. Joseph, D.D., Regent's Park College, N.W.

*ASHER & Co., Messrs., 13, Bedford Street, Covent Garden, W.C. (3 sets).

14 *List of Members of the E. E. Text Soc., 1885.*

- *ASTOR LIBRARY, New York, U. S. A. (by Stevens).
- *ATHENÆUM CLUB, Pall Mall, S.W.
- *ATKINSON, Rev. E., D.D., Clare College Lodge, Cambridge.
- *ATKINSON, Rev. J. C., Danby Parsonage, Grosmont, Yorkshire.
- AUSTIN, Stephen, Hertford.
- AVERY, Arthur R., 40, Belsize Park, Hampstead, N.W.
- *BAER, Messrs. J. & Co., Frankfort (by Trübner & Co.).
- BALLIOL COLLEGE, OXFORD.
- *BARWELL, Thomas, The Woodlands, Kirby Muxloe, Leicester.
- *BERLIN UNIVERSITY LIBRARY (by Asher and Co.).
- *BINNS, Rev. William, Stourton Lodge, Arno Road, Oxtou, Birkenhead.
- *BIRMINGHAM CENTRAL FREE LIBRARY, Eden Place, Birmingham.
- *BIRMINGHAM LIBRARY, C. E. Scarse, Esq., Union Street, Birmingham.
- *BLACKMAN, Frederick, 4, York Road, Lambeth, S.E.
- *BOARDMAN, Rev. Charles, D.D., St. Wilfrid's Presbytery, Longridge, Preston.
- BOMBAY ASIATIC SOCIETY (by Trübner and Co.).
- BOND, Dr. E. A., C.B., Chief Librarian, British Museum, W.C.
- *BOSTON ATHENÆUM LIBRARY, U. S. A. (by Allen).
- BOSTON PUBLIC LIBRARY, Boston, Mass., U. S. A. (by Trübner & Co.).
- BOTTOMLEY, Edward, Greenfield, Manchester (by Trübner & Co.).
- BOWEN, H. Courthope, 3, York St., Portman Sq., W.
- BRACKETT, Dr. J. R. Montpelier, Vermont, U. S. A.
- *BRESLAU UNIVERSITY LIBRARY (by Asher & Co.).
- *BRISTOL MUSEUM AND LIBRARY, Queen's Road, Bristol.
- *BROOKE, Col. Thomas, Armitage Bridge, Huddersfield.
- *BROOKLYN MERCANTILE LIBRARY, New York, U. S. A. (by Allen).
- BROWN, Arthur Henry, Brentwood (by Trübner & Co.).
- *BROWN, Prof., Canterbury College, Christchurch, New Zealand (by Trübner & Co.).
- *BRUSHFIELD, Dr. T. N., The Cliff, Budleigh-Salterton, Devon.
- *BUCKLEY, Rev. Wm. Edw., Rectory, Middleton Cheney, Banbury.
- BURNS, James T., Kirliston, Edinburgh.
- BURNSIDE, W., Pembroke College, Cambridge.
- *BURTON ON TRENT INSTITUTE, Union St., Burton-on-Trent.
- *CARLINGFORD, Right Hon. Lord, Carlton Gardens, S.W.
- CARPENTER, J. Estlin, Leathes House, Fitzjohn's Avenue, Hampstead, N.W.
- *CHAMBERLAIN, Arthur, Elm House, Arthur Road, Edgbaston, Birmingham.
- CHANCE, Dr. F., Burleigh House, Sydenham Hill, S.E.
- CHAPPELL, William, F.S.A., Strafford Lodge, Otlands Park, Weybridge Station.
- CHELTENHAM COLLEGE LIBRARY, Cheltenham.
- CHELTENHAM LIBRARY, 5, Royal Crescent, Cheltenham.
- *CHETHAM'S LIBRARY, Hunt's Bank, Manchester.
- *CHICAGO PUBLIC LIBRARY, Chicago, U. S. A. (by Stevens).
- CHICHESTER, Lord Bishop of, The Palace, Chichester.
- *CHORLTON, Thomas, 32, Brazennose Street, Manchester.
- CHRISTIAN, Rev. George, Redgate, Uppingham, Rutland.
- *CHRISTIANIA UNIVERSITY LIBRARY, Norway (care of Mr. T. Bennett, Christiania).
- *CHRIST'S COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE.
- CHURCHILL, Miss Caroline, Drayton House, Grosvenor Road, Weymouth.
- *CINCINNATI PUBLIC AND SCHOOL LIBRARY, Cincinnati, U. S. A. (by Stevens).
- CLINTON, H. R., Hollywood, Forest Hill, S.E.
- *CLINTON HALL ASSOCIATION, New York, U. S. A. (by Trübner & Co.).
- COHEN, Arthur, 6, King's Bench Walk, Temple, E.C.

- †COLERIDGE, The Right Hon. Lord, 1, Sussex Square, Hyde Park, W.
COLERIDGE, Miss Edith, Eldon Lodge, Torquay.
- *COMPTON, Rev. Lord Alwyne, Castle Ashby, Northampton.
- CORNELL UNIVERSITY, ITHACA, New York, U. S. A. (by Allen).
- *COWPER, Joseph Meadows, Watling Street, Canterbury.
- COX, Rev. Thomas, The Crescent, Hipperholme, Halifax.
- CRAIG, Dr. W. J., 8, Grenville St., Brunswick Sq., W.C. (by Trübner & Co.).
- CROSSLEY, James, Stocks House, Cheetham, Manchester.
- CULLEY, M. T., Coupland Castle, Wooler, Northumberland (*Extra Series only*).
- CUTHBERT, A., Glasgow (by Mr. Maclehorse).
- *DABIS, Miss, 1, Crofton Cottages, Cambridge.
- *DALZIEL, W. A., 67, Victoria Road, Finsbury Park, London, N. (*Hon. Sec.*).
- DARBISHIRE, R. D., 26, George Street, Manchester (by Trübner & Co.).
- *DARTREY, The Earl of, 3, Curzon Street, W.
- DAVIES, Rev. J., 16, Belsize Sq., South Hampstead, N.W. (by Trübner & Co.).
- DAWES, Rev. Dr. J. S., Newton House, Surbiton, Surrey.
- DEIGHTON, BELL, & Co., 13, Trinity St., Cambridge.
- DENTON, Rev. W., 22, Westbourne Square, W.
- DERBY, Earl of, 23, St. James's Square, S.W.
- †DEVONSHIRE, The Duke of, Devonshire House, Piccadilly, W.
DICKSON, Thomas, H. M. General Register House, Edinburgh.
- *DOWDEN, Prof. Edward, Winstead, Temple Road, Rathmines, Dublin.
- *DUBLIN, Archbishop of, Dublin (by Macmillan and Co.).
- DURHAM CATHEDRAL, THE LIBRARY OF THE DEAN AND CHAPTER.
- *DYKES, Frederick, Wakefield.
- *EARLE, Rev. Professor J., 15, Norham Road, Oxford.
EDINBURGH UNIVERSITY LIBRARY (by Williams & Norgate).
- ELWORTHY, Fredk. T., Foxdown, Wellington, Somerset.
- *EVANS, Sebastian, Heathfield, Alleyn Park, West Dulwich, S.E.
- *EVERARD, C. H., Eton College, Windsor.
- *EXETER COLLEGE, OXFORD.
FAUNTHORPE, Rev. John P., Whitelands Training College, 35, King's Road, Chelsea, S.W.
- FERRIS, O. A., Fairview, Dartmouth Park Avenue, Upper Holloway, N.
- *FINANCE, Rev. Gerard de, St. Pierre de l'Etang du Nord, Grindstone Island, Magdalen Islands, Brit. N. America.
- *FISHER, Right Rev. Mgr. J. H., St. Edward's College, Liverpool.
- *FORD, John Rawlinson, 25, Albion St., Leeds.
- *FOX, Francis F., Madeley House, 72, Pembroke Road, Clifton, Bristol.
- *FRY, Danby P., 138, Haverstock Hill, N.W.
- *FURNESS, Horace Howard, Philadelphia, U. S. A. (by Mr. A. R. Smith).
- *FURNIVALL, Dr. F. J., 3, St. George's Square, Primrose Hill, London, N.W. (*Director.*)
- GAISFORD, Rev. T. A., 2, Devonshire Pl., Bath (by Trübner & Co.).
- *GIBBS, Henry H., St. Dunstan's, Regent's Park, N.W.
- *GIBBS, Mrs. M. B., Tyntesfield, Bristol.
GILL, Thomas Richard, 39, Amersham Rd., New Cross, S.E.
- *GILMAN, Arthur, 11, Mason Street, Cambridge, Mass., U. S. A.
- *GISSING, Algernon F., 10, Barstow Sq., Wakefield.
- *GLASGOW UNIVERSITY LIBRARY (by Mr. Maclehorse).
- *GOODISON, John (by Asher & Co.).
GORDON, Rev. Robert, 6, Mayfield Street, Newington, Edinburgh (by Mr. Stevenson).
- GOULBOURN, Very Rev. Dr., Dean of Norwich, Norwich.

- GRAY, Arthur, Jesus College, Cambridge.
 *GREIFSWALD UNIVERSITY. (By Asher & Co.)
 GREVEL, H., 33, King St., Covent Garden, W.C.
 *GUILDHALL, LIBRARY OF THE CORPORATION OF LONDON, E.C.
 *HAILSTONE, Edward, Walton Hall, Wakefield (by Mr. J. Wilson).
 *HALES, Professor J. W., 1, Oppidan's Road, Primrose Hill, N.W.
 HALL, Joseph, Grammar School, Manchester.
 HAMBURG STADT BIBLIOTHEK.
 HANSON, Sir Reginald, 40, Boundary Road, St. John's Wood, N.W.
 *HARRIS, Mortimer, 10, Angell Park Gardens, Brixton, S.W.
 *HARRIS, William, 20, Elvetham Road, Edgbaston, Birmingham.
 HARRISON, Professor J., Washington and Lee University, Lexington, Virginia,
 U. S. A. (by Trübner & Co.).
 *HARVARD COLLEGE, Cambridge, Mass., U. S. A. (by Allen).
 HARVEY, W. Fred., 2, Temple Gardens, Temple, E.C.
 *HAY, C. A., 127, Harley Street, W.
 HEALES, Major Alfred (F.S.A.), The Chimes, Streatham Common, S.W.
 HELWICH, Professor H. R., 29, Neugasse, Oberdöbling, Vienna, Austria.
 *HENDERSON, T., County School, Bedford.
 HERTZ, Dr. W., Munich (by Trübner & Co.).
 HESSELS, J. H., Cambridge.
 HETHERINGTON, J. Newby, 62, Harley St., London, W.
 *HODGSON, Shadworth H., 45, Conduit Street, Regent Street, W.
 HOLME, J. Wilson, 34, Old Jewry, E.C.
 HOUGHTON, Lord, Travellers' Club, Pall Mall, S.W.
 *HOWARD, Henry, Stone House, Kidderminster.
 HULL SUBSCRIPTION LIBRARY, Albion Street, Hull.
 HULME, E. C., 18, Philbeach Gardens, South Kensington, S.W.
 HUTCHINSON, Edward, the Elms, Darlington.
 I'ANSON, James, jun., Fairfield House, Darlington.
 *JAMES, Colonel Edward C., Ogdenburg, St. Lawrence County, New York,
 U. S. A.
 *JENKINS, James, M.D., C.B., Nevinston, Mannamead, Plymouth.
 *JOHNS Hopkins Library, Baltimore, U. S. A. (by Allen).
 JOHNSON, G. J., 36, Waterloo St., Birmingham.
 JOHNSON, H., 21, Kildare Gardens, Westbourne Park, W. (by Trübner & Co.).
 JONES, Rev. James, 26, Upper Leeson Street, Dublin.
 *JONES, John Joseph, Pensax Court, Tenbury.
 *JUNIOR CARLTON CLUB, Pall Mall, S.W.
 *KER, William P., 203, Newport Road, Cardiff.
 *KERSLEY, Rev. Canon, LL.D., Congham Rectory, King's Lynn.
 *KETT, Rev. C. W., 2, Haverstock Ter., South Hampstead, N.W.
 *KING'S COLLEGE, Cambridge (by Deighton, Bell, & Co.).
 *KING'S INN LIBRARY, Henrietta Street, Dublin.
 *KINGSBURY, Rev. T. L., Cambridge (by Deighton, Bell, & Co.).
 *KLINKSIECK, F., Paris (by Trübner & Co.).
 LADIES' COLLEGE, Cheltenham.
 *LAFAYETTE COLLEGE, Easton, Penn. U. S. A.
 LAIDLAY, A., Seaclyffe House, North Berwick, N. B.
 *LAMBERT, Joshua C., Independent College, Taunton.
 *LEATHES, Frederick de M., 17, Tavistock Place, Tavistock Square, W.C.
 *LEEDS LIBRARY, Commercial St., Leeds.
 LEWIS, Rev. Henry, Principal, Culham College, Oxon.
 *LISTER, John, Shibden Hall, Halifax.

- *LITTLE, E. D., The Mount, Northallerton.
- LLOYD, Ridgway R., St. Peter's Street, St. Albans.
- LOCKWOOD & Co., 7, Stationers' Hall Court, E.C. (by Trübner & Co.).
- *LONDON INSTITUTION, Finsbury Circus, E.C.
- *LONDON LIBRARY, 12, St. James's Square, S.W.
- *LOUNSBURY, Prof. T. R., Yale College, New Haven, Conn., U. S. A.
- *Low, Messrs. S. & Co., 188, Fleet Street, E.C. (by Trübner & Co.).
- *LOWELL, His Excellency J. Russell, United States Legation, 31, Lowndes Sq., London, S.W.
- *LUARD, Rev. Henry Richards, 4, St. Peter's Terrace, Cambridge.
- *LUMBY, Rev. Prof. J. Rawson, St. Mary's Gate, Cambridge.
- LUPTON, Francis Martineau, Roundhay, Leeds.
- LUSHINGTON, Professor E. L., D.C.L.—Park House, Maidstone.
- McKENZIE, John Whitefoord, 16, Royal Circus, Edinburgh.
- MACKONCHIE, Rev. Alex. Heriot, St. Alban's Clergy House, Brooke Street, Holborn, E.C.
- *MACMILLAN, A., Bedford Street, Covent Garden, W.C.
- *MANCHESTER, The Duke of, Kimbolton Castle, St. Neot's.
- *MANCHESTER PUBLIC FREE LIBRARY, Manchester.
- MARBURG UNIVERSITY (Extra Series only) (by Williams & Norgate).
- MARKBY, Alfred, 9, New Square, Lincoln's Inn, W.C.
- *MARSHALL, John, 20, Holyrood Crescent, Glasgow (by Maclehose).
- *MARTINEAU, P. M., Littleworth, Esher, Surrey.
- MASON, C. P., 5, College Gardens, Dulwich, S.E.
- *MASON, M. Gustave, Harrow on the hill.
- MATTHEW, Fredk. D., Quarryton, Hayne Road, Beckenham, Kent.
- *MÄTZNER, Dr. (by Asher & Co.).
- *MAYOR, Rev. Prof. John E. B., St. John's College, Cambridge.
- *MELBOURNE PUBLIC LIBRARY (by S. Mullen).
- *MERCANTILE LIBRARY, St. Louis, Mo., U. S. A. (by B. F. Stevens).
- *MERTON COLLEGE, Oxford.
- *MICHIGAN, UNIVERSITY OF, Ann Arbor, Michigan, U. S. A.
- *MICKLETHWAITE, J. T., 6, Delahay Street, Westminster, S.W.
- MILL HILL SCHOOL, Hendon, N.W.
- *MITCHELL LIBRARY, Glasgow.
- MOHR, E., Heidelberg (by Trübner & Co.).
- MONSON, The Right Hon. Lord, 29, Belgrave Square, S.W.
- MOODIE, John, Elton House, Upton St., Stockport Road, Manchester.
- *MORISON, John, Messrs. W. Collins, Sons, & Co., Bridewell Place, E.C.
- MORLEY, Prof. Henry, 8, Upper Park Road, Haverstock Hill, N.W.
- *MORRIS, Rev. Dr. Richard, Lordship Lodge, Wood Green, N.
- MOULTON, Rev. Dr. Wm. F., The Leys, Cambridge.
- MÜLLER, Professor Max, 7, Norham Gardens, Oxford.
- MUNBY, Arthur J., 6, Fig-tree Court, Temple, E.C.
- *MURRAY, Dr. James A. H., Mill Hill School, Hendon, N.W.
- *NAPIER, George W., Merchistoun, Alderley Edge, Manchester.
- *NECK, M. G. van, Goes, Holland.
- *NEW JERSEY COLLEGE LIBRARY, New Jersey, U. S. A. (by H. Grevel).
- *NEW UNIVERSITY CLUB, St. James's Street, S.W.
- *NEWCASTLE-UPON-TYNE LITERARY AND PHILOSOPHICAL SOCIETY, Westgate Road.
- *NICHOLL, G. W., Ham, Cowbridge, Glamorganshire.
- NORFOLK AND NORWICH LITERARY INSTITUTION, St. Andrew's Broad Street, Norwich.

- *NORWICH FREE LIBRARY.
- *NORWICH, Dean and Chapter of (care of Archdeacon Nevill, The Close, Norwich).
- *NOTTINGHAM FREE PUBLIC LIBRARIES, Nottingham.
OLIPHANT, T. L. Kington, Combe House, Canterbury.
- *ORMEROD, Henry M., 5, Clarence Street, Manchester.
- *OUSELEY, Rev. Sir Frederick Gore, Bart., St. Michael's College, Tenbury, Herefordshire.
- *OWENS COLLEGE LIBRARY, Manchester.
- †PAINE, Cornelius, 9, Lewes Crescent, Kemp Town, Brighton.
- PALMER, Rev. A. Smythe, Leacroft, Staines, Middlesex.
- PARIS, La Faculté des Lettres de Paris, M. Thorin, Rue de Médecis (care of Dulau, 37, Soho Sq., W.).—*Extra Series only.*
- *PARKER & Co., Messrs. Jas., Broad Street, Oxford (2 sets).
- *PEABODY INSTITUTE, Baltimore, U. S. A. (by Allen).
- PEACOCK, Edward B., Bottesford Manor, Brigg, Lincolnshire.
- PEACOCK, William, 3, Sunnyside, Sunderland.
- *PEARSON, Professor Charles H., Haverhill, South Australia (care of Mr. Justice Pearson, Lincoln's Inn, W.C.).
- PEEL, George, Brookfield, Cheadle, Cheshire.
- PEILE, John, Christ's College, Cambridge.
- *PENZANCE LIBRARY, Penzance.
- *PESKETT, Arthur George, Magdalene College, Cambridge.
- PHILADELPHIA LIBRARY COMPANY, U. S. A. (by Stevens).
- *PHILADELPHIA MERCANTILE LIBRARY, U. S. A. (by Allen).
- PICTON, Sir James A., 11, Dale Street, Liverpool.
- *PLYMOUTH INSTITUTION, Athenæum, Plymouth.
- *PORTER, Rd. F., Boley Hill House, Rochester.
- PORTICO LIBRARY, 57, Mosley Street, Manchester.
- *PRIAULX, Osw. de Beauvoir, 8, Cavendish Square, W.
- *PRICE, W. E., M.P., Tibberton Court, Gloucester.
- PROCTER, Rev. Francis, Wilton Vicarage, North Walsham, Norfolk.
- *PUBLIC RECORD OFFICE, London, E.C. (by Trübner & Co.).
- QUEEN'S COLLEGE, Cork.
- QUEEN'S COLLEGE LIBRARY, Belfast.
- RAVEN, Rev. J. J., D.D., School House, Great Yarmouth.
- READ, Rev. Stephen G., Barton St. Mary, Brandon, Norfolk.
- REEKS, Joseph W., St. George's Cathedral, Southwark, S.E.
- REES, G., Overseers' Offices, 27, Bridge St., Birkenhead.
- *REEVE, Henry, C. B., 62, Rutland Gate, S.W.
- *REFORM CLUB, Pall Mall (by Mr. Ridgway).
- *REICHEL, H. R., University College of North Wales, Bangor.
- REILLY, Francis S., 21, Delahay Street, Westminster, S.W.
- REYNELL, Charles W., Forde House, Richmond Road, Putney, S.W.
- RILEY, Athelstan, 32, Queen's Gardens, Bayswater, W.
- ROBERTS, Robert, Queen's Terrace, Boston, Lincolnshire.
- ROCHDALE FREE PUBLIC LIBRARY, Rochdale.
- *RONKSLEY, James George, 12, East Parade, Sheffield.
- *ROTTON, J. F., 3, Boltons, West Brompton, S.W.
- *ROUND, P. Zillwood, 30, South St., Greenwich, S.E.
- *ROYAL INSTITUTION, Albemarle Street, W.
- ROYAL IRISH ACADEMY, 19, Dawson Street, Dublin.
- *ROYAL LIBRARY, Windsor Castle.
- ROYAL LIBRARY, Munich (by Trübner and Co.).

- *ROYAL LIBRARY, Stockholm (by Trübner & Co.).
- *ROYAL SOCIETY OF LITERATURE, 4, St. Martin's Place, Charing Cross, W.C.
- *RUSKIN, Prof. John, LL.D., Brantwood, Coniston.
- *RUSSELL, Thomas, Ascog Bute, Rothesay.
- *RUTGERS COLLEGE LIBRARY, New Brunswick, New Jersey, U. S. A.
- *ST. ANDREW'S UNIVERSITY LIBRARY, N. B.
- *ST. CATHERINE'S COLLEGE, Cambridge (by Deighton, Bell, & Co.).
- *ST. JOHN'S COLLEGE, Cambridge (by Deighton, Bell, & Co.).
- *ST. JOHN'S COLLEGE, Annapolis, Maryland, U. S. A. (by Stevens).
- *ST. LOUIS PUBLIC SCHOOL LIBRARY (by Stevens).
- *ST. MARY'S COLLEGE LIBRARY, Oscott, Birmingham.
- SALT, Samuel, Gateside, Silcroft, Cumberland.
- SAUNDERS, G. Symes, M.B., Devon County Lunatic Asylum, Exminster.
- SCHWARTZ, Miss L., Park Street, 43, Utrecht, Holland.
- *SCIENCE AND ART DEPARTMENT, Cromwell Road, South Kensington, S.W.
- SENIOR, John, Staunton, Coleford, Gloucestershire.
- *SHEFFIELD FREE LIBRARY, Surrey Street, Sheffield.
- *SHIMMIN, Charles F., Mount Vernon Street, Boston, U. S. A.
- *SIGNET LIBRARY, Edinburgh.
- *SIMONTON, J. W., Harrisburg, Pennsylvania, U. S. A.
- *SION COLLEGE, President and Fellows of, London Wall, E.C.
- *SKEAT, Rev. Prof. Walter W., M.A., LL.D., 2, Salisbury Villas, Cambridge.
- *SLATER, Joseph, Grammar School, Kirkby-Stephen.
- *SLATER, Walter Brindley, 249, Camden Road, London, N.
- SLATTER & ROSE, Messrs., Oxford.
- SMITH, Charles, 14, Market St., Faversham.
- *SNELGROVE, Arthur G., 6, Lady Somerset Road, Kentish Town, N.W.
- SNELL, Rev. W. M., Corpus Christi College, Cambridge.
- *SOCIETY OF ANTIQUARIES, Burlington House, Piccadilly, W.
- *SOTHERAN & Co. (by Trübner & Co.).
- *STEPHENS, Professor George, University of Copenhagen, Denmark.
- *STONYHURST COLLEGE, Blackburn.
- *STRASSBURG UNIVERSITY LIBRARY (by Trübner & Co.).
- *SULLIVAN, Right Hon. Edward, Master of the Rolls in Ireland, 32, Fitzwilliam Place, Dublin.
- SUNDERLAND SUBSCRIPTION LIBRARY, Fawcett Street, Sunderland.
- *SWAIN FREE SCHOOL, America (by H. Grevel).
- SWEET, Henry, Mansfield Cottage, Heath St., Hampstead, N.W.
- TANCOCK, Rev. O. W., The School House, The Close, Norwich.
- *TEN-BRINK, Professor Bernhard, Ph. Dr., Strassburg (by Trübner & Co.).
- TENNYSON, Lord, D.C.L., Farringford, Isle of Wight.
- *TERRY, Frank C. Birkbeck, The College, Dumfries Pl., Cardiff.
- *THOMPSON, Rev. W. H., D.D., Master of Trinity College, Cambridge.
- THRING, Rev. Edward, Uppingham Grammar School, Rutland. (*Extra Series only.*)
- *TINKLER, Rev. John, Arkengarth Dale Vicarage, Richmond, Yorkshire.
- TOOLE, The Very Rev. Canon Laurence, Bedford House, Hulme, Manchester.
- *TORONTO, University of, Canada (by Allen).
- *TORQUAY NATURAL HISTORY SOCIETY, Torquay, Devon.
- TOTTER, T. N., Norton Place, Fallowfield, Manchester.
- *TREVOR, Rev. G. A., 48, Queen's Gardens, Lancaster Gate, W.
- *TRINITY COLLEGE LIBRARY, CAMBRIDGE (by Deighton, Bell, & Co.).
- TRINITY COLLEGE LIBRARY, OXFORD.
- TÜBINGEN UNIVERSITY LIBRARY (by Trübner & Co.).

20 *List of Members of the E. E. Text Soc., 1885.*

- *TURNER, Robert S., A. 5, Albany, Piccadilly, W.
- UNGER, Professor C. R., Christiania, Norway.
- *UNIVERSITY COLLEGE, Aberystwyth.
- UNIVERSITY COLLEGE, Gower Street, LONDON, W.C.
- UNIVERSITY LIBRARY, Utrecht.
- *VAN NAME, Addison, New Haven, Connecticut, U. S. A. (by Allen).
- *VASSAR COLLEGE LIBRARY, Pokeepsie (by H. Grevel).
- *VICTORIAN PARLIAMENT, Library of, Melbourne (by Mr. Geo. S. Robertson, 17, Warwick Square, E.C.).
- *VILES, Edward, Pendryl Hall, Codsall Wood, near Wolverhampton.
- VIPAN, Frederick John, 31, Bedford Place, W.C. (*Extra Series only.*)
- VLOTEN, Dr. J. van, Haarlem, Holland.
- *WALMSLEY, G. G., 50, Lord St., Liverpool.
- *WALTON, Charles, 22, Newington Butts, Southwark, S.E.
- *WASHINGTON, LIBRARY OF CONGRESS, U. S. A. (by Allen).
- *WATKINSON LIBRARY, Hartford, Conn., U. S. A. (by Allen).
- *WATSON, Robert Spence, Moss Croft, Gateshead-on-Tyne.
- *WEDGWOOD, Hensleigh, 31, Queen Anne Street, W.
- *WEYMOUTH, Dr. R. F., Mill Hill School, Hendon, N.W.
- *WHEATLEY, Henry B., 12, Caroline St., Bedford Sq., W.C. (*Treasurer.*)
- *WHITAKER, J., 11, Warwick Lane, E.C. (by Trübner & Co.).
- *WHITE, George H., Glenthorne, St. Mary Church, Torquay.
- WHITNEY, Henry Austin, Boston, Massachusetts (by Trübner & Co.).
- *WILCOCKS, Horace Stone, 32, Wyndham Square, Plymouth.
- *WILKINSON, Miss Isabel E., 2, Park Side, Cambridge.
- WILLIAMS, Sydney, 14, Henrietta Street, Covent Garden, W.C.
- WILSON, Edmund, 8, Osborne Ter., Beech Grove, Leeds.
- *WILSON, Edward S., 6, Whitefriar Gate, Hull.
- WILSON, Richard M., Fountain Street, Manchester.
- WILSON, Wm., Hyde Hill, Berwick-on-Tweed.
- WINNER, Percy Jas., Woodland Terrace, Higher Broughton, Manchester.
- *WITTHOFT, Valentin, Berlin, W., An der Apostelkirche 2.
- *WOOD, Rev. J. S., D.D., The Rectory, Marston Moretryne, Ampthill, Beds.
- WOODHAMS, J. R., High St., Brackley, Northants.
- WORCESTER COLLEGE, OXFORD.
- *WREN, Walter, 8, Powis Square, Westbourne Park, W.
- *WRIGHT, Dr. W. Aldis, Trinity College, Cambridge.
- WÜLKER, Professor R. P. (by Mr. A. Twietmeyer, Leipzig).
- *WURZBURG LIBRARY (by Trübner & Co.).
- *YALE COLLEGE LIBRARY, New Haven, Conn., U. S. A. (by Allen).
- *YORK MINSTER LIBRARY, York.
- *ZUPITZA, Prof. Julius, Ph. D., Berlin (by Asher & Co.).

The Honorary Secretary of the *Chaucer Society* and the *Ballad Society* is W. A. Dalziel, Esq., 67, Victoria Rd., Finsbury Park, London, N.

The Hon. Sec. of the *New Shakspere Society* is Kenneth Grahame, Esq., 24, Bloomsbury St., Bedford Square, London, W.C.

The Hon. Sec. of the *Browning Society* is J. D. Campbell, Esq., 29, Albert Hall Mansions, London, S.W.

The Hon. Sec. of the *Wyclif Society* is J. W. Standerwick, Esq., General Post Office, London, E.C.



**DO NOT REMOVE
OR
MUTILATE CARD**

